Intensive Intermediate Latin

A Grammar and Workbook

Jean-François R. Mondon

INTENSIVE INTERMEDIATE LATIN

Intensive Intermediate Latin: A Grammar and Workbook comprises an accessible grammar and related exercises in a single volume. It outlines every major grammatical point usually taught in an intermediate college Latin course, as well as other grammatical topics which may be introduced in the first semester of reading prose or poetry.

Features include:

- Careful management and repetition of vocabulary used to encourage sole focus on the grammar
- A variety of exercises to enable students to recognize and isolate the grammatical structures in English, helping them to translate into Latin with greater ease
- Frequent Latin-to-English and full English-to-Latin translations
- Exercises requiring students to modify aspects of Latin sentences in order to enable improved grammar acquisition.

Written by an experienced instructor, *Intensive Intermediate Latin: A Grammar and Workbook* is an ideal resource for students who want to build on their foundations of Latin. The title can be used as a textbook, grammar reference and practice resource for students and independent learners with some knowledge of the language.

Intensive Intermediate Latin, with its sister volume *Intensive Basic Latin*, forms a compendium of essentials of Latin grammar.

Jean-François R. Mondon trained as an Indo-Europeanist/Historical Linguist at the University of Pennsylvania and received his PhD in 2009. He is currently an Assistant Professor of Foreign Languages (German and Latin) at Minot State University in North Dakota. His major research interests are tracing the phonological developments of Indo-European languages such as Classical Armenian as well as language pedagogy and vocabulary acquisition.

Other titles available in the Grammar Workbooks series are:

Basic Arabic

Basic Cantonese
Intermediate Cantonese

Basic Chinese
Intermediate Chinese

Basic German
Intermediate German

Basic Irish
Intermediate Irish

Basic Italian

Basic Japanese
Intermediate Japanese

Basic Korean
Intermediate Korean

Basic Latin

Basic Persian

Basic Polish
Intermediate Polish

Basic Portuguese

Basic Russian
Intermediate Russian

Basic Spanish
Intermediate Spanish

Basic Welsh
Intermediate Welsh

Basic Yiddish

INTENSIVE INTERMEDIATE LATIN: A GRAMMAR AND WORKBOOK

Jean-François R. Mondon

meō frātrī sorōrīque

This page intentionally left blank

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

This book is intended as a synopsis of every major grammatical point usually taught in the final semester or two of a Latin program before students begin taking courses on individual authors or works. This book could easily be extended throughout two 15-week semesters or within a single 20-week semester/term which meets for 5+ hours a week, covering two units per week.

The two overarching grammatical points which run throughout a large part of this book are the subjunctive mood and subordinate clauses. A mastery of both is essential in not only understanding the fine points of reading Latin authors but also in improving fluency in reading in general. This book shares many similarities with the first volume, *Intensive Basic Latin*, including each unit's focus on one grammatical topic. Units whose topics share similarities were grouped together, forming unofficial "superunits" which a teacher could certainly use as the foundations of a course. Not all units fit easily into "superunits," though the majority do and it seems useful to highlight the more natural classes here:

Units 1–2	verbs which break the normal mode of active/passive formation
Units 3–4	infinitives and their primary use
Units 5–8	present and imperfect subjunctives and two uses which require knowledge of only these two subjunctives
Units 9–14	perfect and pluperfect subjunctive and uses which require knowledge of all four subjunctives
Units 19–23	*cum* clauses and temporal clauses
Units 25–27	clauses whose introductory conjunctions are determined by the verb of the dominating clause
Units 28–30	gerunds, gerundives and their uses
Units 37–38	meter
Units 39–40	stages of Latin.

Most of units 1 through 36 contain ten excerpts from various Latin authors for translation. These very brief excerpts are intended to give students practice in reading a variety of authors. Many of the passages are left unedited, while others have been simplified by deleting subordinate clauses or other words from

the original which had no bearing on the grammatical construction being investigated in a given unit. When such simplifications have been introduced, I follow those emendations cited in either *Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar* or E. C. Woodcock's *A New Latin Syntax*.

Each unit also contains a prose excerpt from Vergil's *Aeneid*, the entirety of both books I and II being covered. In these excerpts the text stays as close as possible to the original in word choice and grammatical constructions, though it makes no attempt at keeping the meter or Vergil's word order. This was deemed necessary, since at this stage students are still grappling with syntactic and morphological constructions and it seemed an unnecessary burden for students to struggle with the looser word order and ellipses of poetry. Following each excerpt those words which occur for the first time in the Vergil reading are listed. While each unit's vocabulary list certainly takes up space and is encompassed by the book's Latin–English dictionary, it seemed better to keep these unit-specific lists so that students can focus the burden of their efforts on grammar and translating and not on looking up words. It is not essential that students memorize these words in order to move along in the book, since the book's primary focus is on acquisition of grammar and not vocabulary. Nonetheless, a course could very easily be adapted that highlighted each unit's vocabulary and made regular quizzes out of these lists.

Additionally, most units contain English-to-Latin translation exercises. Some units also have fabricated Latin sentences in which the unit's grammatical topic is highlighted. In both these types of sentences, the bulk of the vocabulary comes from that unit's *Aeneid* excerpt, giving the student more practice with new words and preparing them for that unit's *Aeneid* passage.

The book is rounded out by a key to the exercises, a Latin–English dictionary including every Latin word which occurs in exercises, readings, and examples illustrating grammatical points, and an English–Latin dictionary, used for the exercises in which students are asked to translate into Latin. In the answer key a literal translation has been preferred to a more natural sounding one. The logic behind this is twofold: first, to allow the reader to gain a better understanding and deeper appreciation for Latin phraseology, something which is lost with a natural translation, and second, to clarify more easily for the reader the precise grammatical role of each word. Only where a literal translation might impede comprehension or where a circumlocution of a construction introduced in *Intensive Basic Latin* might make a sentence too unwieldy has a natural translation been preferred. To give one such example, the dative of possession is often translated with forms of *have*.

The final four units are intended to round out a student's education in Latin and they can really be used at any time, especially the two units on poetry. The excerpts of Archaic Latin in Unit 39 come from Philip Baldi's *The Foundations of Latin* and the Late Latin ones in Unit 40 from Keith Sidwell's *Reading Medieval Latin* and *The Blackwell History of the Latin Language* by James Clackson and Geoffrey Horrocks.

Students who complete this book should be able to move on to reading a specific author or genre. Before they wade into the world of Loeb editions, I would recommend, however, one of the following books to build practice in reading: for Vergil's *Aeneid*: Clyde Pharr's edition of books I–VI; for Caesar: my own *Caesar's Dē Bellō Gallicō: A Syntactically Parsed Reader*; for poetry: Gavin Betts and Daniel Franklin's *Beginning Latin Poetry Reader*; for Catullus specifically: Daniel Garrison's *The Student's Catullus*. Beyond that, the *Perseus Digital Library* (http://www.perseus.tufts.edu/hopper/) is a fantastic resource, with texts in Latin, translations, notes, as well as a dictionary. Another outstanding free online dictionary is at the *Classics Technology Center* (http://ablemedia. com/ctcweb/showcase/wordsonline.html). For those who wish to continue working on grammar, I recommend *Bradley's Arnold Latin Prose Composition* and the answer key which is available separately. For additional practice on meter and scanning, the reader is encouraged to access the actual text of books I and II of the *Aeneid* and work through them. This would be a great way to reinforce what has been taught in terms of grammar as well as to see vocabulary again. An anonymous reader suggested incorporating such exercises into this book but, because of space limitations, they unfortunately had to be left out.

It has been my pleasure working with the outstanding staff at Routledge. In particular I would like to thank Andrea Hartill and Isabelle Cheng for showing interest in this book and making it a reality; and my Production Editor Ruth Berry. I would also like to express my gratitude to the anonymous reviewers as well as proofreader Donald Watt, for catching horrendous mistakes and suggesting necessary clarifications.

Finally, I dedicate this book to my siblings, (in chronological and alphabetical order) Laurent and Marielle. Their patience and belief in me, as well as their exhibition of and drive for their own particular passions have always produced more encouragement than they possibly know.

LATIN SOURCES

The abbreviations largely follow those used by the Perseus Digital Library
(www.perseus.tufts.edu).

Caesar *Civ*	*The Civil War*
Caesar *Gal*	*The Gallic War*
Catullus	*Carmina*
Cicero *ad Brut*	*Letters to and from Brutus*
Cicero *Amic*	*On Friendship*
Cicero *Arch*	*For Archias*
Cicero *Att*	*Letters to Atticus*
Cicero *Brut*	*Brutus*
Cicero *Caec*	*For Aulus Caecina*
Cicero *Cael*	*For Marcus Caelius*
Cicero *Catil*	*Against Catiline*
Cicero *Clu*	*For Aulus Cluentius*
Cicero *de Orat*	*Dē Ōrātōre*
Cicero *Deiot*	*For King Deiotarius*
Cicero *Dom*	*On his House*
Cicero *Fam*	*Epistulae ad Familiārēs*
Cicero *Fin*	*Dē Fīnibus Bonōrum et Malōrum*
Cicero *Flac*	*For Flaccus*
Cicero *Font*	*For Marcus Fonteius*
Cicero *Har*	*On the Responses of the Haruspices*
Cicero *Inv*	*Dē Inventiōne*
Cicero *Leg*	*Dē Lēgibus*
Cicero *Mil*	*For Milo*
Cicero *Mur*	*For Lucius Murena*
Cicero *N.D*	*Dē Nātūrā Deōrum*
Cicero *Off*	*Dē Officiīs*
Cicero *Phil*	*Philippics*
Cicero *Pis*	*Against Piso*
Cicero *Planc*	*For Plancius*
Cicero *Q. fr*	*Letters to and from Quintus*

Cicero *Q. Rosc*	*For Quintus Roscius the Actor*	
Cicero *Quinct*	*For Publius Quinctius*	
Cicero *Red. Sen*	*In the Senate after his Return*	
Cicero *Rep*	*Dē Rē Pūblicā*	
Cicero *S. Rosc*	*For Sextus Roscius of Ameria*	
Cicero *Sen*	*Dē Senectūte*	
Cicero *Sul*	*For Sulla*	
Cicero *Tul*	*For Marcus Tullius*	
Cicero *Tusc*	*Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs*	
Cicero *Vat*	*Against Vatinius*	
Cicero *Ver*	*Against Verres*	
Gellius	*Attic Nights*	
Horace *Ep*	*Epistles*	
Horace *Od*	*Carmina*	
Horace *S*	*Satyrārum Librī*	
Josephus *Ap*	*Against Apion*	
Juvenal	*Satires*	
Livy	*The History of Rome*	
Lucretius	*On the Nature of Things*	
Martial	*Epigrams*	
Nepos *Ag*	*Agēsilaus*	
Nepos *Att*	*Atticus*	
Nepos *Con*	*Conon*	
Nepos *Han*	*Hannibal*	
Nepos *Milt*	*Miltiades*	
Nepos *Them*	*Themistocles*	
Ovid *Am*	*Art of Love*	
Ovid *Ep*	*Epistles*	
Ovid *Met*	*Metamorphoses*	
Ovid *Tr*	*Tristia*	
Petronius	*Satyricon*	
Plautus *Am*	*Amphitruo*	
Plautus *As*	*Asinaria*	
Plautus *Aul*	*Aululāria*	
Plautus *Bac*	*Bacchidēs*	
Plautus *Capt*	*Captīvī*	
Plautus *Cur*	*Curculio*	
Plautus *Men*	*Menaechmī*	
Plautus *Mer*	*Mercātor*	
Plautus *Mil*	*Mīles Glōriōsus*	
Plautus *Mos*	*Mostellāria*	
Plautus *Per*	*Persa*	
Plautus *Poen*	*Poenulus*	
Plautus *Ps*	*Pseudolus*	

UNIT 1
Deponent verbs

Background

Recall that Latin verbs have two voices: the active and passive. In the former voice the subject of the sentence is identical to the agent of the action expressed in the verb.

The mailman walks down the street often.
[active, because the subject is doing the *walking*]

We saw the dog chasing the cat.
[active, because the subject did the *seeing*]

In the passive voice the subject does *not* correspond to the agent of the verbal action. Rather, the subject is the entity affected by the action expressed in the verb.

The street is newly paved every summer.
[passive, because the subject is not doing the *paving*]

The cat was seen by us.
[passive, because the subject did not do the *seeing*]

Latin structure

There is a large class of verbs in Latin which only take passive forms. Surprisingly and uniquely, however, these verbs are not translated as passive, but rather, as active. That is, they are *passive in form but active in meaning*. Such *deponent verbs* exist in all four conjugations.

- Deponent verbs have only 3 principal parts.

I	**mīror**	**mīrārī**	**mīrātus sum**	*to admire*
II	**polliceor**	**pollicērī**	**pollicitus sum**	*to promise*
III	**sequor**	**sequī**	**secūtus sum**	*to follow*
III-*iō*	**patior**	**patī**	**passus sum**	*to suffer*
IV	**orior**	**orīrī**	**ortus sum**	*to rise*

○ The first principal part is the 1st person sg. present.

  ■ **mīror** *I admire*, **polliceor** *I promise*, **sequor** *I follow*, **patior** *I suffer*, **orior** *I rise*

○ The second principal part is the present infinitive.

  ■ For the formation of passive infinitives see Unit 3

    □ **mīrārī** *to admire*, **pollicērī** *to promise*, **sequī** *to follow*, **patī** *to suffer*, **orīrī** *to rise*

○ The third principal part is the 1st person sg. masculine perfect.

  ■ **mīrātus sum** *I admired*, **pollicitus sum** *I promised*, **secūtus sum** *I followed*, **passus sum** *I suffered*, **ortus sum** *I rose*

• They take all the normal passive endings. **Mīror** can serve as an example:

○ The perfect forms below may also be translated as *I have admired*, *you have admired*, *s/he ~ it has admired*, etc.

Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*
mīror *I admire*	**mīrābar** *I was admiring*	**mīrābor** *I will admire*
mīrāris *you admire*	**mīrābāris** *you were admiring*	**mīrāberis** *you will admire*
mīrātur *s/he, it admires*	**mīrābātur** *s/he, it was admiring*	**mīrābitur** *s/he, it will admire*
mīrāmur *we admire*	**mīrābāmur** *we were admiring*	**mīrābimur** *we will admire*
mīrāminī *you admire*	**mīrābāminī** *you were admiring*	**mīrābiminī** *you will admire*
mīrantur *they admire*	**mīrābantur** *they were admiring*	**mīrabuntur** *they will admire*

Perfect	*Pluperfect*
mīrātus (-a, -um) sum *I admired*	**mīrātus (-a, -um) eram** *I had admired*
mīrātus (-a, -um) es *you admired*	**mīrātus (-a, -um) erās** *you had admired*
mīrātus (-a, -um) est *s/he, it admired*	**mīrātus (-a, -um) erat** *s/he, it had admired*
mīrātī (-ae, -a) sumus *we admired*	**mīrātī (-ae, -a) erāmus** *we had admired*
mīrātī (-ae, -a) estis *you admired*	**mīrātī (-ae, -a) erātis** *you had admired*
mīrātī (-ae, -a) sunt *they admired*	**mīrātī (-ae, -a) erant** *they had admired*

Future perfect

mīrātus (-a, -um) erō *I will have admired*
mīrātus (-a, -um) eris *you will have admired*
mīrātus (-a, -um) erit *s/he, it will have admired*

mīrātī (-ae, -a) erimus *we will have admired*
mīrātī (-ae, -a) eritis *you will have admired*
mīrātī (-ae, -a) erunt *they will have admired*

- Deponent verbs form all types of participles (see Unit 33 of *Intensive Basic Latin* (*IBL*)).

Present	**mīrāns**	*admiring*
Past	**mīrātus**	*having admired*
Future	**mīrātūrus**	*about to admire*

- All three participles have active meanings. Only the past participle, however, is truly a deponent form, since it alone is the only passive-looking form with active meaning. The present and future participles, on the other hand, are indistinguishable from the active forms used by non-deponent verbs.

Semi-deponent verbs

Some verbs are deponent only in the perfect system, their present system being non-deponent.

- These verbs also have only three principal parts

audeō, audēre, ausus sum	*to dare*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum [+ dat.]	*to trust*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum	*to rejoice*

- As an example:

  Present: **audeō** *I dare*, **audēs** *you dare*, **audet** *s/he dares*
  Imperfect: **audēbam** *I was daring*, **audēbās** *you were daring*, **audēbat** *s/he was daring*
  Future: **audēbō** *I will dare*, **audēbis** *you will dare*, **audēbit** *s/he will dare*

  Perfect: **ausus sum** *I (have) dared*, **ausus es** *you (have) dared*, **ausus est** *he (has) dared*
  Pluperfect: **ausus eram** *I had dared*, **ausus erās** *you had dared*, **ausus erat** *he had dared*
  F. Perfect: **ausus erō** *I will have dared*, **ausus eris** *you will have dared*, **ausus erit** *he will have dared*

Advanced topic

Some verbs appear in deponent and non-deponent forms. Historically, the deponent forms are more recent, used by later writers. As just one example, Plautus has the following line in which a non-deponent form of **proficīscor**, **proficīscī**, **profectus sum** *to set out* occurs.

Obsecrō licet complectī prius quam proficīscō
I implore (you) that it be permitted that (I) embrace (you) before I set out

• Note that **complectī** is itself a deponent verb from **complector**, **complectī**, **complexus sum** *to embrace*

Contrast this with the following Cicero excerpt which depicts the usual Classical Latin deponent form of this verb:

> **Proficīscor, ut cōnstitueram, lēgātus in Graeciam?**
> *Am I to set out, as I had planned, as a delegate to Greece?*

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	atque haec dīcere vix audeō	(Cicero *Pis.*)
2	cuius nōn audeō dīcere nōmen?	(Juvenal)
3	postera lūx orītur multō grātissima	(Horace *S.*)
4	magnusque utrimque clāmor oriēbātur	(Caesar *Gal.*)
5	sed ex eō mediō quasi collis oriēbātur	(Sallust *Jug.*)
6	nōs nostrīs exercitibus quid pollicēmur?	(Cicero *Phil.*)
7	atque ita fātur: "tendite in astra, virī	(Valerius Flaccus)
8	hūc ūna ex multīs capsula mē sequitur	(Catullus)
9	ego autem id ipsum tum eram secūtus	(Cicero *Q. fr.*)
10	vultūs puerōrum quī vēscuntur cibō rēgiō	(St. Jerome)

Exercise 2

Translate the following. The deponent and semi-deponent verbs come from this chapter. The remaining vocabulary, aside from prepositions and conjunctions, comes from this chapter's *Aeneid* excerpt.

1 Asprum aequor mīrantur colōnī Rōmae.
2 Tenēns prōgeniem saevī Paridis, profugus ausus erat rēgīnam etiam rapere.
3 Superba dea nōn fīsa est reliquiīs Rōmānīs.
4 Fāta vir īnsignior sequēbātur currō Rōmam errāns.
5 Ob excidium caelestis rēgnī populus nōn gāvīsus erit.
6 Cecinērunt omnēs mōlēs orītās ā marī.
7 Pollicētur rēgīna Rōmāna rēgnum repōnere.
8 Quantus asper dolor oriētur iniūriīs?
9 Populus, quem invīsa atque immītia fāta audiunt, patitur saevissimōs cāsūs.
10 Cāra dea iam, quam foveō, pollicita est urbem condere.

Exercise 3

Convert the subjects of main clauses from Exercise 2 to the opposite number. Make all appropriate changes.

Exercise 4

Translate into Latin.

1 Who was born at Rome?
2 The sun will rise and you (pl.) will rejoice.
3 She had followed the chariot from Carthage to Italy.
4 Wandering through wealthy towns, he suffered nothing.
5 Having suffered the destruction of war, the citizens trusted the heavenly gods.

Exercise 5

What is the only deponent verb listed in the vocabulary for this chapter's reading?

Reading

The *Aeneid* is an epic poem by the Roman poet Vergil which traces the origin of the Romans. It follows the trials and tribulations of Aeneas, exiled after the fall of Troy, as he leads his men towards a new land and a better life. Inspired by Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, this work was written between 29 and 19 BCE, commissioned by the emperor Augustus to reinstill in Roman citizens the qualities which had made Rome great but which had been lost after decades of turmoil which culminated in the Civil War and assassination of Julius Caesar. Chief among these qualities was *pietas*, a sense of duty and loyalty, which is beautifully exhibited by the protagonist. The *Aeneid* consists of 12 books, the first of which will comprise the reading sections of and the second those of .

Vergil is also remembered, aside from his *Aeneid*, for his *Bucolics* and *Georgics*. His influence on later poets, both Roman and non-Roman, cannot be overemphasized. He even makes a cameo appearance in Dante's magnum opus, *The Divine Comedy*, in which he serves as the guide through Purgatory and Hell.

Vergil's call to his muse and the wrath of Juno

Arma virumque canō. Prīmus erat vir, quī profugus ab ōrīs Trōiae ad Ītaliam Lāvīniaque lītora vēnit. **Multum** et terrīs et altō iactātus vī superōrum, ob īram saevae Iūnōnis multa in bellō passus erat, antequam urbem Rōmam condidit et

deōs Latiō intulit. Latīnum genus, Rōmānī patrēs, atque alta moenia Rōmae nāta sunt Trōiā.

Mūsa, mihi causās memorā, quibus rēgīna deōrum impulit virum īnsignem tot cāsūs volvere et tot labōrēs adīre. Ā quō illa laesa erat? Quid doluit? Quanta īra animīs calestibus est?

Urbs antīqua fuit Karthāgō, quam Tyriī colōnī tenuērunt. Contrā Ītaliam Tiberīnaque ōstia sita erat. Urbs dīves erat **studiīs** bellī asperrima. Iūnō fertur hanc ūnam coluisse magis terrīs omnibus, posthabitā **Samō**. Hīc illīus arma, hīc currus fuit. Eam dea iam tum fovet tenditque rēgnum gentibus omnibus esse, sī fāta **sinant**.

Prōgeniem sed enim audīverat, quae ā Trōiānō sanguine veniet et Tyriās arcēs vertet. Hinc audīverat populum regentem lātē, quī superbus bellō excidiō Karthāginis veniet. Sīc Parcae volvērant. **Id** metuēns memorque veteris bellī, quod prīma ad Trōiam prō cārīs Argīs gesserat, Iūnō accēnsa est. Necdum etiam causae īrārum saevīque dolōrēs exciderant animō. Manet in altā mente repositum iūdicium **Paridis** sprētaeque iniūria formae et **genus invīsum** et raptī **Ganymēdis** honōrēs. Hīs omnibus accēnsa est. Hīs **Trōas**, reliquiās Danaōrum atque immītis Achillī, iactātōs aequore tōtō, arcēbat longē Latiō. Multōs per annōs errābant āctī fātīs circum maria omnia. Tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam gentem condere.

Notes

multum – this is an adverbial accusative

studiīs – this is for expected singular **studiō**. The use of plurals in place of singulars is a frequent literary device.

Samō – an island where Juno was raised until puberty

sinant – this is a 3rd pl. present subjunctive (see Unit 5)

id = excidium

Paridis – he was the son of Priam, the king of Troy, who was given the task of determining the fairest goddess. His selecting Venus, as well as Venus' bribe of Helen, brought the wrath of Juno as well as precipitating the Trojan War.

genus invīsum – Trojans

Ganymēdis – cup-bearer of the gods, selected over Juno's daughter, Hebe.

Trōas – this is a Greek accusative plural (see Unit 36)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus *to enrage*
Achillēs, -is (m.) *Achilles (a Greek)*
adeō, adīre, adīvī, aditus *to encounter; approach*
aequor, aequoris (nt.) *sea*
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus *to drive; lead*
altum, -ī *deep sea*
altus, -a, -um *deep; high*
animus, -ī *soul, spirit; thought*
annus, -ī *year*

antequam *before*
antīquus, -a, -um *old, ancient*
arceō, -ēre, arcuī *to prevent, keep off; detain*
Argī, -ōrum *Argos (city in Greece)*
arma, -ōrum *weapons; forces*
arx, arcis (f.) *fortress; citadel*
asper, -a, -um *fierce*
atque *and*
audiō, -īre, audīvī, audītus *to hear*
bellum, -ī *war*
caelestis, caeleste *heavenly*
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus *to sing; prophesy*
cārus, -a, -um *dear*
cāsus, -ūs *misfortune*
causa, -ae *cause, reason*
colō, -ere, coluī, cultus *to cherish; cultivate*
colōnus, -ī *colonist*
condō, -ere, condidī, conditus *to establish; build; hide*
contrā [+ acc.] *opposite; in reply*
currus, -ī *chariot*
Danaus, -a, -um *Greek*
dea, -ae *goddess*
deus, -ī *god*
dīves, dīvitis *wealthy*
doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitus *to be angry at; suffer*
dolor, dolōris (m.) *pain, grief*
enim *indeed*
errō (1) *to wander*
et . . . et *both . . . and*
etiam *even*
excidium, -ī *destruction*
excidō, -ere, -cidī *to fall from*
fātum, -ī *fate; destiny*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus *to carry, bear; report*
forma, -ae *form, shape*
foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtus *to cherish*
Ganymēdēs, -is (m.) *Ganymede*
gēns, gentis (f.) *race*
genus, generis (nt.) *race*
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus *to wage (war); carry; wear*
hīc *here*
hinc *from here*
honor, honōris (m.) *honor*
iactō (1) *to toss*
iam *now, already*
immītis, immīte *fierce*
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus *to force; strike*
īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus *to bring in; install*

iniūria, -ae *insult, injustice*
īnsignis, īnsigne *distinguished*
invīsus, -a, -um *odious*
īra, -ae *anger*
Ītalia, -ae *Italy*
iūdicium, -ī *judgment*
Iūnō, Iūnōnis (f.) *Juno*
Karthāgō, Karthāginis (f.) *Carthage*
labor, labōris (m.) *task*
laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus *to offend*
lātē *extensively; far and wide*
Lātīnus, -a, -um *of Latium; Latin*
Latium, -ī *Latium (area around Rome)*
Lāvīnius, -a, -um *of Lavinium (city on future site of Rome), Lavinian*
lītus, lītoris (nt.) *shore*
longē *far off*
magis *more*
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus *to remain*
mare, maris (nt.) *sea*
memor, memoris *remembering, mindful*
memorō (1) *to recount*
mēns, mentis (f.) *mind*
metuō, -ere, metuī *to fear*
moenia, -ium *walls*
mōlēs, mōlis (f.) *difficulty; mass; size*
multus, -a, -um *much, many*
mūsa, -ae *muse*
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum *to be born*
necdum *not yet*
omnis, omne *all, every*
ōra, -ae *coast*
ōstium, -ī *mouth (of river)*
Parcae, -ārum *Fates*
Paris, Paridis (m.) *Paris*
populus, -ī *people*
posthabeō, -ēre, -habuī, -habitus *to hold after*
prīmus, -a, -um *first*
profugus, -a, -um *fugitive*
prōgeniēs, -ēī (f.) *offspring*
quantus, -a, -um *how great; how much*
-que *and*
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus *to snatch*
rēgīna, -ae *queen*
rēgnum, -ī *kingdom*
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus *to rule*
reliquiae, -ārum *remains*
repōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus *to (re)store*
Rōma, -ae *Rome*

Rōmānus, -a, -um *Roman*
saevus, -a, -um *cruel*
Samos, Samī (f.) *Island of Samos*
sanguis, sanguinis (m.) *blood*
sī *if*
sīc *in this way*
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs *to allow*
situs, -a, -um *situated*
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus *to reject*
studium, -ī *zeal*
superbus, -a, -um *haughty*
superus, -a, -um *above, upper*
tantus, -a, -um *so great*
tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus *to extend; aim*
teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus *to hold; keep from*
terra, -ae *land*
Tiberīnus, -a, -um *of the Tiber River*
tot *so many*
tōtus, -a, -um *all, entire*
Trōia, -ae *Troy*
Trōiānus, -a, -um *Trojan*
Trōs, Trōis (m.) *Trojan*
tum *then*
Tyrius, -a, -um *Tyrian, Carthaginian*
ūnus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**] *one; single; alone*
urbs, urbis (f.) *city*
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus *to come*
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus *to turn, overturn*
vetus, veteris *old*
vir, -ī *man*
vīs [pl: vīrēs] (f.) *force; (pl.) strength*
volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtus *to undergo; roll*

UNIT 2

Fīō

Latin structure

The last unit introduced deponent verbs – verbs that are passive in form but active in meaning. Latin possesses one verb which is effectively the exact opposite of a deponent verb: the verb **fīō** *I am made*; *I become*, which in the present system looks active but is translated as a passive.

   This verb is used as the passive to **faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus** *to do* and is characterized by the following.

- It takes active forms in the present system (i.e. present, imperfect, future) but has passive meanings.
- It takes passive forms with passive meanings in the perfect system.
- It has a passive present infinitive with a passive meaning.

The principal parts of the verb are:

   fīō, fierī, factus sum

and the various tenses are:

	Present	*Imperfect*
sg.	**fīō** *I am made; I become*	**fīēbam** *I was being made; I became*
	fīs *you are made; you become*	**fīēbās** *you were being made; you became*
	fit *s/he, it is made; s/he, it becomes*	**fīēbat** *s/he, it was being made; s/he, it became*
pl.	**fīmus** *we are made; we become*	**fīēbāmus** *we were being made; we became*
	fītis *you are made; you become*	**fīēbātis** *you were being made; you became*
	fīunt *they are made; they become*	**fīēbant** *they were being made; they became*
	Future	
sg.	**fīam** *I will be made; I will become*	
	fīēs *you will be made; you will become*	
	fīet *s/he, it will be made; s/he, it will become*	
pl.	**fīēmus** *we will be made; we will become*	
	fīētis *you will be made; you will become*	
	fīent *they will be made; they will become*	

Notes

- This verb does not shorten its stem vowel (**fī-**) before other vowels in the present system. This is rather unusual in Latin.
- It takes the form of a 3rd-*iō* conjugation verb.
- The present infinitive is passive in form as well as meaning: **fierī** (see Unit 3 on infinitives).

  ○ Observe that this form does have a short vowel in the stem: **fi-**.

The perfect system is both passive in form and passive in meaning. As a single example, observe the perfect passive:

Perfect	
factus (-a, -um) sum	*I was made; I became*
factus (-a, -um) es	*you were made; you became*
factus (-a, -um) est	*s/he, it was made; s/he, it became*
factī (-ae, -a) sumus	*we were made; we became*
factī (-ae, -a) estis	*you were made; you became*
factī (-ae, -a) sunt	*they were made; they became*

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	sed, sī tardius fit quam volumus	(Cicero *Fam.*)
2	sed tuā sapientiā fit aequissimum	(Cicero *Deiot.*)
3	mentiō dē lēge nūlla fīēbat	(Cicero *Ver.*)
4	et vīs undique in mūrōs fīēbat	(Livy)
5	hoc cottīdiē fierī vidēmus	(Cicero *Clu.*)
6	aliquid atrōciter fierī vidēmus aut audīmus	(Cicero *S. Rosc.*)
7	sed tamen satis fīet ā nōbīs neque parcētur labōrī	(Cicero *Att.*)
8	id quod certē fīet	(Cicero *Har.*)
9	quae ad vada trānsitūsque fīēbant palūdis	(Caesar *Gal.*)
10	sed ūnō tempore cautiōnēs fīēbant pecūniārum	(Cicero *Dom.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following. The vocabulary, aside from prepositions and conjunctions, comes from this chapter's *Aeneid* excerpt.

1   Aeolus rēx nimbōrum tempestātumque factus est.
2   Puppis Āiācis, quae in pontum iaculāta est, facta erat imperiō penātium.
3   Quippe hae bis septem puppēs rapidae fīunt.
4   Prōlēs Aeolī rēgem antrōrum ātrōrum fīet.
5   Patrī Palladis, ā quō tellūs Sicula fīat, nymphae pulcherrimae sunt.
6   Ratēs potentis fīēbant iussō rēgis.
7   Epulīs dīvōrum omnia cordia fīant laeta.
8   Habēnīs factīs, Aeolus molliet et temperābit ventōs.

Exercise 3

Translate the following into Latin.

1   The destruction of Rome had been made by wars.
2   Wrestling the clouds, almighty Aeolus is made king.
3   When will his heart be made strong?
4   Aeolus uses winds made by Jupiter.
5   Indeed the roaring and crushing waves were being made by the parent of the seas.

Reading: Juno sulks and seeks aid from Aeolus, god of winds

Vix ē cōnspectū Siculae tellūris in altum vēla dabant laetī et spūmās salis **aere** ruēbant, **cum** Iūnō servāns sub pectore vulnus aeternum sē haec rogāvit: "Mēne victam? Inceptōne dēbeō dēsistere? Nōnne possum rēgem Trōiānōrum Ītaliā āvertere? Quippe vetor fātīs. Pallasne exūrere classem Graecōrum potuit? Potuitne ipsōs summergere in pontō ūnīus ob noxam et furiās **Āiācis Oīleī**? Ipsa Iovis rapidum ignem ē nūbibus iaculāta est disiēcitque ratēs ēvertitque aequora ventīs. Illum exspīrantem, trānsfīxō pectore, flammās turbine corripuit scopulōque acūtō īnfīxit. Ast ego, quae rēgīna dīvōrum et soror et coniūnx Iovis incēdō, ūnā cum gente tot annōs bella gerō. Quisquamne nūmen Iūnōnis adōrābit praetereā aut supplex ārīs honōrem impōnet?"

Flammātō corde, dea tālia sēcum volūtāns Aeoliam venit, patriam nimbōrum, quae fēta furentibus Austrīs est. Hīc vastō in antrō rēx Aeolus luctantēs ventōs tempestātēsque sonōrās imperiō premit ac vinculīs et carcere frēnat. Illī indignantēs magnō cum murmure circum claustra montis fremunt. Celsā in arce Aeolus scēptrum tenēns sedet mollitque animōs et temperat īrās. Nī **faciat**, maria ac terrās caelumque profundum quippe rapidī ventī sēcum **ferant verrant**que per aurās. Sed Iuppiter, pater omnipotēns, hoc metuēns in spēluncīs ātrīs eōs abdidit, mōlemque et montēs altōs īnsuper imposuit. Aeolum rēgemque fēcit quī foedere

certō **scīret** et premere et iussus laxās habēnās dare. Ad quem tum Iūnō supplex hīs vōcibus ūsa est:

"Aeole, namque tibi dīvōrum pater atque hominum rēx dedit et mulcēre et tollere flūctūs ventō. Gēns inimīca mihi, victōs penātēs et Īlium portāns, **aequor Tyrrhēnum** nāvigat in Ītaliam. Incute **vim** ventīs summersāsque puppēs obrue! Aut age dīversōs et disice corpora in pontō! Sunt mihi bis septem nymphae praestantī corpore, quārum pulcherrimam formā, Dēiopēam, cōnūbiō stabilī iungam propriamque dicābō. Tēcum omnēs annōs exiget et pulchrā cum prōle tē parentem faciet."

Aeolus haec contrā dīxit: "Tuus labor, Ō rēgīna, explōrāre est quid **optēs**. Mihi fãs est iussa capessere. Tū mihi quodcumque hoc rēgnī, tū scēptrum Iovemque conciliās. Tū mihi dãs epulīs dīvōrum nimbōrum accumbere facisque mē potentem tempestātum."

Notes

aere – refers to their bronze prow
cum – this word has a variety of meanings as a conjunction (see Unit 21)
Āiācis Oīleī – he took Cassandra, the king of Troy's daughter, out of Minerva's sanctuary during the Trojan war
faciat – *he were to do this*; this is a present subjunctive (see Unit 5) in a conditional clause (see Unit 24)
ferant and **verrant** – *they would carry* and *they would sweep*; refer to previous note
scīret – *he might know* – this is an imperfect subjunctive (see Unit 5) in a relative clause of purpose (see Unit 7)
aequor Tyrrhēnum – sea between Italy and the islands Corsica, Sardinia, and Sicily
vim – this is the accusative singular of **vīs** (f.) *force*
optēs – this is a present subjunctive (see Unit 5) in an indirect question (see Unit 11)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus   *to hide; bury*
ac   *and*
accumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus   *to recline at*
acūtus, -a, -um   *sharp*
adōrō (1)   *to adore*
Aeolia, -ae   *Islands of Aeolia*
Aeolus, -ī   *Aeolus (god of winds)*
aes, aeris (nt.)   *bronze*
aeternus, -a, -um   *eternal*
Āiāx, Āiācis (m.)   *Ajax*
antrum, -ī   *cave*
āra, -ae   *altar*
ast   *yet*
āter, ātra, ātrum   *black, dark*
aura, -ae   *air; sky, heaven*
Auster, Austrī   *south wind*

aut   *or*
āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus   *to divert; turn away*
bis   *twice*
caelum, -ī   *sky*
capessō, -ere, capessīvī, capessītus   *to perform*
carcer, carceris (m.)   *prison*
celsus, -a, -um   *lofty*
certus, -a, -um   *certain*
classis, classis (f.)   *fleet*
claustra, -ōrum   *barrier*
conciliō (1)   *to win over*
coniūnx, coniugis (m/f)   *spouse*
cōnspectus, -ūs   *view*
cōnūbium, -ī   *marriage*
cor, cordis (nt.)   *heart*
corpus, corporis (nt.)   *body*
corripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus   *to snatch*
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus   *should, ought*
Dēiopēa, -ae   *Deiopea*
dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus   *to stop*
dicō (1)   *to consecrate*
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus   *to say; speak*
disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus   *to scatter*
dīversus, -a, -um   *diverse*
dīvus, -a, -um   *divine*
dō, dare, dedī, datus   *to give*
epulae, -ārum   *banquet*
ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus   *to overturn*
exigō, -ere, exēgī, exāctus   *to pass*
explōrō (1)   *to ascertain; explore*
exspīrō (1)   *to exhale*
exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus   *to burn up*
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus   *to make, do*
fās (nt.)   *right*
fētus, -a, -um   *pregnant*
flamma, -ae   *flame*
flammō (1)   *to inflame*
flūctus, -ūs   *wave*
foedus, foederis (nt.)   *agreement*
fremō, -ere, fremuī, fremitus   *to roar*
frēnō (1)   *to restrain, curb*
furiae, -ārum   *rage*
furō, -ere, furuī   *to rage*
Graecus, -a, -um   *Greek*
habēna, -ae   *rein*
homō, hominis (m.)   *man*
iaculor (1)   *to hurl*
Īlium, -ī   *Troy*

imperium, -ī   *command*
impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus   *to place on*
incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus   *to walk*
inceptum, -ī   *beginning; plan*
incutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus   *to strike*
indignor (1)   *to be angry*
īnfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus   *to impale*
inimīcus, -a, -um   *hostile; enemy*
īnsuper   *above*
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus   *to command*
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus   *to join*
Iuppiter, Iovis (m.)   *Jupiter (king of gods)*
iussum, -ī   *command*
laetus, -a, -um   *happy*
laxus, -a, -um   *lax, loose*
luctor (1)   *to wrestle*
magnus, -a, -um   *great*
molliō, -īre, mollīvī, mollītus   *to tame*
mōns, montis (m.)   *mountain*
mulceō, -ēre, mulsī, mulsus   *to calm*
murmur, murmuris (m.)   *rumble*
namque   *indeed*
nāvigō (1)   *to sail*
nī   *if not; unless*
nimbus, -ī   *rain cloud; cloud*
noxa, -ae   *harm*
nūbēs, nūbis (f.)   *cloud*
nūmen, nūminis (nt.)   *divine power, divine will*
nympha, -ae   *nymph*
obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus   *to crush*
Oīleus, -ī   *Oileus*
omnipotēns, omnipotentis   *almighty*
optō (1)   *to desire*
Pallas, Palladis (f.)   *Minerva (a goddess)*
parēns, parentis (m/f)   *parent*
pater, patris (m.)   *father*
patria, -ae   *country, homeland*
pectus, pectoris (nt.)   *breast, chest; heart*
penātēs, penātium (m.)   *household gods*
pontus, -ī   *sea*
portō (1)   *to carry*
potēns, potentis   *master; powerful*
praestāns, praestantis   *surpassing*
praetereā   *henceforth; besides; in addition*
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus   *to control; press*
profundus, -a, -um   *deep*
prōlēs, prōlis (f.)   *offspring*
proprius, -a, -um   *one's own*

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum   *pretty*
puppis, puppis (f.)   *ship*
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque   *whoever, whatever*
quippe   *indeed*
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam   *anyone, anything*
rapidus, -a, -um   *swift, rapid*
ratis, ratis (f.)   *ship*
rēx, rēgis (m.)   *king*
rogō (1)   *to ask*
ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus   *to rush; plow*
sal, salis (nt.)   *salt*
scēptrum, -ī   *scepter; power*
sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus   *to know*
scopulus, -ī   *rock*
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus   *to sit*
septem   *seven*
servō (1)   *to guard, keep; save*
Siculus, -a, -um   *Sicilian*
sonōrus, -a, -um   *roaring*
soror, sorōris (f.)   *sister*
spēlunca, -ae   *cave*
spūma, -ae   *foam*
stabilis, stabile   *stable*
summergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersus   *to sink*
supplex, supplicis   *humble, suppliant*
tālis, tāle   *such*
tellūs, tellūris (f.)   *land*
temperō (1)   *to regulate*
tempestās, tempestātis (f.)   *storm*
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus   *to lift*
trānsfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus   *to pierce*
turbō, turbinis (m.)   *whirlpool*
tuus, -a, -um   *your*
Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um   *Tyrrhenian*
ūnā cum   *together with*
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum [+ abl.]   *to use*
vastus, -a, -um   *vast*
vēlum, -ī   *sail*
vēla dare   *to set sail*
ventus, -ī   *wind*
verrō, -ere, verrī, versus   *to sweep*
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus   *to forbid; oppose*
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus   *to conquer*
vinculum, -ī   *chain*
vix   *hardly*
volūtō (1)   *to ponder*
vōx, vōcis (f.)   *voice; word*
vulnus, vulneris (nt.)   *wound*

UNIT 3
Infinitives

Background

English has a variety of infinitives. They are classified by *tense* and *voice*.

	Active	*Passive*
Present	*to love*	*to be loved*
Perfect	*to have loved*	*to have been loved*
Future	*to be going to love*	*to be going to be loved*

Infinitives are used to complete the meaning of certain verbs. For instance, *hopes*, *want*, *are able*, and *is beginning* below.

*She hopes **to go**.*   *They want **to believe**.*
*We are able **to help**.*   *It is beginning **to happen**.*

Latin structure

Latin has six infinitives corresponding to the six of English.

- The future passive is rather rare and is dealt with in the advanced topics section of this unit.

	Active	*Passive*
Present	**amāre**	**amārī**
	to love	*to be loved*
Perfect	**amāvisse**	**amātus esse**
	to have loved	*to have been loved*
Future	**amātūrus esse**	**amātum īrī**
	to be going to love	*to be going to be loved*

Present active infinitive

- You have already learned the *present active* infinitive.

  - It ends in **-re** and is the 2nd principal part of a verb.

    | 1st conj. | **amāre** | *to love* |
    | 2nd | **vidēre** | *to see* |
    | 3rd reg. | **dūcere** | *to lead* |
    | 3rd *-iō* | **capere** | *to seize* |
    | 4th | **audīre** | *to hear* |

Present passive infinitive

- The endings are **-rī** or **-ī**.
- It is formed from the present active infinitive.

  - In the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, simply replace **-re** with **-rī**.
  - In the 3rd conjugation, replace **-ere** with **-ī**.

    | 1st conj. | **amārī** | *to be loved* |
    | 2nd | **vidērī** | *to be seen* |
    | 3rd reg. | **dūcī** | *to be led* |
    | 3rd *-iō* | **capī** | *to be seized* |
    | 4th | **audīrī** | *to be heard* |

Perfect active infinitive

- The ending is **-isse**.
- Since this is *perfect*, it is formed from the 3rd principal part.

  - Simply delete the **-ī** of the 3rd principal part and add **-isse**.

    amō, amāre, *amāvī*, amātus
           amāvī → **amāvisse** *to have loved*

    videō, vidēre, *vīdī*, vīsus
           vīdī → **vīdisse** *to have seen*

    dūcō, dūcere, *dūxī*, ductus
           dūxī → **dūxisse** *to have led*

    capiō, capere, *cēpī*, captus
           cēpī → **cēpisse** *to have seized*

    audiō, audīre, *audīvī*, audītus
           audīvī → **audīvisse** *to have heard*

Perfect passive infinitive

- This consists of two words.

  - The 4th principal part + **esse**

    - Recall that the 4th principal part is the past passive participle (Unit 33 of *IBL*).

      amō, amāre, amāvī, *amātus*
      $$\text{amātus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{amātus esse} \quad \textit{to have been loved}$$

      videō, vidēre, vīdī, *vīsus*
      $$\text{vīsus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{vīsus esse} \quad \textit{to have been seen}$$

      dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, *ductus*
      $$\text{ductus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{ductus esse} \quad \textit{to have been led}$$

      capiō, capere, cēpī, *captus*
      $$\text{captus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{captus esse} \quad \textit{to have been seized}$$

      audiō, audīre, audīvī, *audītus*
      $$\text{audītus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{audītus esse} \quad \textit{to have been heard}$$

Future active infinitive

- This is also marked by two words.

  - The 4th principal part (with **-ūrus**) + **esse**.
  - Go to the 4th principal part, drop **-us**, and add **-ūrus**.

    - Note that the form in **-ūrus** is the future active participle (Unit 33 of *IBL*).

      amō, amāre, amāvī, *amātus*
      $$\text{amātus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{amātūrus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{amātūrus esse}$$
      to be going to love

      videō, vidēre, vīdī, *vīsus*
      $$\text{vīsus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{vīsūrus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{vīsūrus esse}$$
      to be going to see

      dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, *ductus*
      $$\text{ductus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{ductūrus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{ductūrus esse}$$
      to be going to lead

      capiō, capere, cēpī, *captus*
      $$\text{captus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{captūrus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{captūrus esse}$$
      to be going to seize

      audiō, audīre, audīvī, *audītus*
      $$\text{audītus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{audītūrus} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{audītūrus esse}$$
      to be going to hear

Syntax of infinitives

- Latin infinitives are used to complete the meaning of several verbs.

  - Many of the English counterparts of these verbs also require an infinitive
    to complete their meaning.

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	*to try*
cōnstituō, -ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus	*to decide*
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus	*to desire*
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus	*ought, should*
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitus	*to stop*
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus	*to begin*
mālō, mālle, māluī (Unit 23 of *IBL*)	*to prefer*
mātūrō (1)	*to hasten*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (Unit 23 of *IBL*)	*to not want*
possum, posse, potuī (Unit 11 of *IBL*)	*to be able, can*
properō (1)	*to hasten*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum	*to be accustomed*
volō, velle, voluī (Unit 23 of *IBL*)	*to want*

Cōgitāre nōn potes, quandō dēfessus es.
You cannot think, when you are tired.

Nōlumus īre.
We do not want to go.

Mīlitēs fugere cōnstituērunt.
The soldiers decided to flee.

Vult servus interfectus esse.
The slave wishes to have been killed.

Dēbēmus *īre.*	*We ought to go.*
	[present active infinitive]
Possunt *invenīrī.*	*They will be able to be found.*
	[present passive infinitive]
Dēbuimus *īre.*	*We ought to have gone.*
	[perfect active infinitive]
Nōn dēbuit *interficī.*	*He ought not to have been killed.*
	[perfect passive infinitive]

  - Since the perfect passive and future active infinitives consist of participles,
    and since participles are adjectives, both of these infinitives show agree-
    ment with the subject for gender and number.

Voluit fēmina amāta esse. *The woman wanted to have been loved.*
[perfect passive infinitive]

○ For examples of the future active infinitive, see the next unit.

Deponent verbs

As might be expected, deponent verbs form passive infinitives but exhibit active
meaning.

Active		
Present	**mīrārī**	*to admire*
Perfect	**mīrātus esse**	*to have admired*
Future	**mīrātum īrī**	*to be going to admire*

Advanced topics

● Future passive infinitive

○ The future passive infinitive consists of the neuter form of the 4th principal
part plus the present passive infinitive **īrī** of *to go* (**eō, īre, īvī, itus**).

○ This infinitive is not frequent, usually being replaced by another construction
(Unit 31).

■ The neuter form of the 4th principal part is the *supine* (Unit 32).

amātum īrī *to be going to be loved*
vīsum īrī *to be going to be seen*
ductum īrī *to be going to be led*
captum īrī *to be going to be seized*
audītum īrī *to be going to be heard*

● Historic infinitive

○ The present infinitives together with a nominative subject are used in place
of the imperfect tense in the course of a narrative to give more liveliness
to the events.

○ Observe the following two examples from Caesar.

Nihil Sēquanī *respondēre*, sed in eādem tristitiā tacitī *permanēre*.
The Sequani did not respond, but remained silent in the same sadness.

Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, *trepidāre* et
concursāre cohortēsque *dispōnere*.
*Then at last Titurius, who had foreseen nothing beforehand, was alarmed
and running about and arranging the cohorts.*

Exercise 1

Using the following verbs, translate into Latin. Where gender is expressed, provide the masculine forms.

> **excutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus** *to cast off*
> **feriō, -īre** *to strike*
> **iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, iacitus** *to lie*
> **intentō** (1) *to threaten*
> **vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectus** *to carry*

1 to have been carried
2 to strike
3 to be going to cast off
4 to have lain
5 to be threatened
6 to be carried
7 to be struck
8 to have threatened
9 to have been cast off

Exercise 2

Translate the following using the verbs from this unit and the vocabulary from this unit's *Aeneid* excerpt.

1 Ā nāvibus fatīscentibus clāmōrēs nautārum effundere incipiunt.
2 Hector per aetherem Notō Eurōque torsus esse apparet.
3 Properāmus dehīscere latera scūtōrum saxīs.
4 Portae praeruptae solent aperīrī.
5 Volunt gazam grandaevam ā syrte ad sēdem vehere.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latin.

1 I wanted the enemies (m.) to have been threatened.
2 With happy eyes he hastens to rejoice with the trusted comrades.
3 They were accustomed to feel the cold of the waves.
4 The sailor appears to have seen death.
5 Death appears to have been seen by the sailor.

Reading: The Winds tear apart Aeneas' Fleet

Ubi haec dicta erant, conversā cuspide cavum montem in latus impulit. Ventī velut agmine factō, quā porta data est, ruunt et terrās turbine perflant. Incubuērunt marī tōtumque trāns aequor ā sēdibus īmīs ūnā Eurusque Notusque Āfricusque

crēber procellīs ruunt. Vastōs flūctūs ad lītora volvunt. Īnsequitur clāmorque virōrum strīdorque rudentum. Ēripiunt subitō nūbēs caelumque diemque Trōiānōrum ex oculīs. Pontō nox ātra incubat. Intonuērunt polī et crēbrīs ignibus aethēr micat. Omnia virīs mortem praesentem intentant.

Extemplō membra Aenēae frīgore solvuntur. Palmās duplicēs ad sīdera tendēns ingemit et tālia vōce refert:

"Ō terque quaterque beātī erant, quibus ante ōra patrum sub moenibus altīs Trōiae contigit oppetere! Ō Tȳdīde, fortissime gentis Graecae! Cūr Trōiānīs campīs occumbere nōn potuī et haec anima mea effundere tuā **dextrā**, ubi saevus Hector iacet tēlō Achillis, ubi ingēns Sarpēdōn nunc iacet, ubi tot correpta sub undīs scūta virōrum galeāsque et fortia corpora Simoīs volvit?"

Eī tālia iactantī procella strīdēns velum ferit, flūctūsque ad sīdera tollit. Franguntur rēmī. Tum prōra āvertit et undīs latus dat. Īnsequitur praeruptus mōns aquae cumulō. **Hī** nautae summō in flūctū pendent, **hīs** unda dehīscēns terram aperit. Furit aestus harēnīs. Notus trēs abreptās nāvēs in saxa latentia torquet (saxa vocant Italī 'Ārās', quae mediīs in flūctibus sunt et velut dorsum immāne marī in summō sunt). Eurus trēs ab altō in brevia urget, et in syrtēs, miserābile **vīsū**, inlīditque vadīs atque aggere harēnae cingit. Ūnam, quae Lyciōs fīdumque Orontēn vehēbat, **ipsīus** ante oculōs ingēns ā vertice flūctus in puppim ferit. Excutitur prōnus magister volviturque in caput. Ast circum illam agēns ter flūctus ibīdem torquet, et rapidus vertex in aequore eam vorat. Appārent rārī nantēs in gurgite vastō, arma virōrum tabulaeque et Trōiāna gaza per undās. Iam validam nāvem Īlioneī, iam fortis Achātae hiems vīcit; hiems quā Abās vectus est quāque grandaevus Alētēs. Compāgibus laxīs laterum omnēs puppēs accipiunt inimīcum imbrem rīmīsque fatīscunt.

Notes

dextrā – this agrees with an understood **manū**
eī – this is a dative of reference (see Unit 18 of *IBL*) and is modified by the participle
  iactantī
hī . . . hīs – *some . . . others*
vīsū – *to see* (see Unit 32 on the supine)
ipsīus – refers to Aeneas

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

Abās, Abantis (m.) *Abas*
abripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus *to snatch away*
accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus *to receive*
Achātēs, Achātae (m.) *Achates*
Aenēās, Aenēae (m.) *Aeneas*
aestus, -ūs *surge*
aethēr, aetheris (m.) *sky, ether*
Āfricus, -ī *south-west wind*

agger, aggeris (m.)   *mound; dam*

agmen, agminis (nt.)   *line (of soldiers); course*

Alētēs, Alētae (m.)   *Aletes*

anima, -ae   *soul, life*

aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus   *to open*

appāreō, -ēre, appāruī, appāritus   *to appear*

aqua, -ae   *water*

Ārae, -ārum   *Altars*

beātus, -a, -um   *happy*

brevis, breve   *short; shallow*

campus, -ī   *plain, field*

caput, capitis (nt.)   *head*

cavus, -a, -um   *hollow*

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus   *to gird*

clāmor, clāmōris (m.)   *shout*

compāgēs, compāgis (f.)   *joint*

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus   *to befall, happen*

convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus   *to turn*

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum   *crowded; frequent*

cumulus, -ī   *mass*

cuspis, cuspidis (f.)   *point of spear*

dehīscō, -ere, -hīvī   *to split open*

dexter, dextra, dextrum   *right*

diēs, -ēī (m.)   *day*

dorsum, -ī   *back*

duplex, duplicis   *both; double*

effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus   *to pour out*

ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus   *to tear away*

Eurus, -ī   *east wind*

excutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus   *to cast off*

extemplō   *immediately*

fatīscō, -ere   *to split open*

feriō, -īre   *to strike*

fīdus, -a, -um   *faithful*

fortis, forte   *strong*

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus   *to break*

frīgus, frīgoris (nt.)   *cold*

galea, -ae   *helmet*

gaza, -ae   *treasure*

grandaevus, -a, -um   *old*

gurges, gurgitis (m.)   *whirlpool, gulf*

harēna, -ae   *sand*

Hector, Hectoris (m.)   *Hector*

hiems, hiemis (f.)   *winter; storm*

iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, iacitus   *to lie*

ibīdem   *in the same place*

Īlioneus, -ī   *Ilioneus*

imber, imbris (m.)   *rain*

immānis, immāne   *huge, enormous*
īmus, -a, -um   *lowest*
incubō, -āre, -cubuī, -cubitus   *to lie on*
incumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus   *to press on*
ingemō, -ere, -gemuī   *to groan*
ingēns, ingentis   *huge*
inlīdō, -ere, -līsī, -līsus   *to strike against*
īnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum   *to follow*
intentō (1)   *to threaten*
intonō, -āre, -tonuī   *to thunder*
Italus, -a, -um   *Italian*
lateō, -ēre, latuī   *to hide*
latus, lateris (nt.)   *side*
Lycius, -a, -um   *Lycian*
magister, magistrī   *master*
medius, -a, -um   *middle (of)*
membrum, -ī   *limb*
meus, -a, -um   *my*
micō, -āre, micuī   *to flash*
miserābilis, miserābile   *wretched*
mors, mortis (f.)   *death*
nauta, -ae (m.)   *sailor*
nāvis, nāvis (f.)   *ship*
Notus, -ī   *south wind*
nox, noctis (f.)   *night*
nunc   *now*
occumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus   *to meet one's death*
oculus, -ī   *eye*
oppetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītus   *to perish*
Orontēs, Orontis (m.)   *Orontes*
ōs, ōris (nt.)   *mouth, face; speech*
palma, -ae   *palm*
pendeō, -ēre, pependī   *to hang (down)*
perflō (1)   *to blow through*
polus, -ī   *sky*
porta, -ae   *gate*
praeruptus, -a, -um   *towering*
praesēns, praesentis   *present*
procella, -ae   *gust*
prōnus, -a, -um   *leaning forward*
prōra, -ae   *prow*
quā   *where*
quater   *four times*
rārus, -a, -um   *scattered*
referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus   *to say; report; carry off/back; answer*
rēmus, -ī   *oar*
rīma, -ae   *fissure*
rudēns, rudentis (m.)   *rope*

Sarpēdōn, Sarpēdōnis (m.)   *Sarpedon*
saxum, -ī   *rock*
scūtum, -ī   *shield*
sēdēs, sēdis (f.)   *seat, home*
sīdus, sīderis (nt.)   *star*
Simoīs, Simoëntis (m.)   *Simois River*
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus   *to loosen*
strīdeō, -ēre, strīdī   *to rustle*
strīdor, strīdōris (m.)   *rattling*
subitō   *suddenly*
summus, -a, -um   *highest; chief*
syrtis, syrtis (f.)   *sandbank*
tabula, -ae   *plank*
ter   *thrice, three times*
torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortus   *to twist*
trēs, tria   *three*
Tӯdīdēs, Tӯdīdae (m.)   *Diomedes*
ubi   *when; where*
ūnā   *together with*
unda, -ae   *wave*
urgeō, -ēre, ursī   *to force*
vadum, -ī   *shallow; depths*
validus, -a, -um   *mighty*
vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectus   *to carry*
velut   *as, like*
vertex, verticis (m.)   *summit, head; whirlpool*
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus   *to see;* [passive] *seem*
vocō (1)   *to call; invoke*
vorō (1)   *to swallow*

UNIT 4
Indirect statement

Background

There exist two ways to express a statement:

- by stating it directly without any qualifications – this is *direct statement*

    The girl is beautiful.

- by qualifying the statement with a *verb of the head* – this is *indirect statement.*

    ○ A *verb of the head* is a verb whose action is limited to the confines of the head, such as *knowing, perceiving, wondering, believing, listening, saying, thinking,* and *hoping*.

    > I ***think*** *(that) the girl is beautiful.*
    > I ***believe*** *(that) the girl is beautiful.*
    > I ***know*** *(that) the girl is beautiful.*

    ○ In addition to expressing the thoughts of someone, indirect statement can be used to quote someone indirectly.

    > *"I am going to come."*   [direct quotation]
    > *He says that he is going to come.*   [indirect quotation]

    ○ Note that the subject changes in transforming a direct to an indirect quotation: the 1st person *I* has become 3rd person *he*.

Latin structure

Latin *indirect statements* share with English the need for a verb of the head. Some common verbs of the head are:

animadvertō, -ere, animadvertī, animadversus	*to notice*
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum	*to think, judge*
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus	*to hear*

cōgitō (1)	*to think*
cōnstituō, -ere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus	*to decide*
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus	*to believe*
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus	*to say*
exīstimō (1)	*to consider*
intellegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus	*to understand*
meminī, meminisse (see Unit 13 of *IBL*)	*to remember*
nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus	*to not know*
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus	*to know*
nūntiō (1)	*to announce*
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum	*to forget*
putō (1)	*to think*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus	*to know*
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus	*to feel; hear*
spērō (1)	*to hope*

The subordinate clause which the verb of the head introduces has the following peculiarities:

- its subject is in the *accusative*
- its verb is an *infinitive.*

English has this option when the verb is simply the verb *to be* with no extra verbal complexity:

> *I think (that) she is beautiful.*
> *I think **her to be beautiful**.*

> *I believe (that) he will come this evening.*   vs. the ungrammatical:
> **I believe **him will come this evening**.*

For Latin, however, this *accusative + infinitive* construction is the only way to express an indirect statement.

- There is no word *that* in the Latin structure. It must simply be put into the translation.

Now, which infinitive to use?

- The *present* infinitives are used when the verb of the indirect statement takes place *at the same time* as the main verb.
- The *perfect* infinitives are used when the verb of the indirect statement takes place *prior* to the main verb.
- The *future* infinitives are used when the verb of the indirect statement takes place *subsequent* to the main verb.

Present infinitive: active

Cōgitō *virōs eum interficere.*   *I think that the men are killing him.*
Cōgitāvī *virōs eum interficere.*   *I thought that the men were killing him.*

Cōgitābō *virōs eum interficere.*   *I will think that the men are going to be killing him.*

Present infinitive: passive

Cōgitō *virōs docērī.*   *I think that the men are being taught.*
Cōgitāvī *virōs docērī.*   *I thought that the men were being taught*

Cōgitābō *virōs docērī.*   *I will think that the men are going to be taught.*

Perfect infinitive: active

Cōgitō *virōs eum interfēcisse.*   *I think that the men killed him.*
Cōgitāvī *virōs eum interfēcisse.*   *I thought that the men had killed him.*
Cōgitābō *virōs eum interfēcisse.*   *I will think that the men will have killed him.*

Perfect infinitive: passive

Cōgitō *virōs doctōs esse.*   *I think that the men were taught.*
Cōgitāvī *virōs doctōs esse.*   *I thought that the men had been taught.*
Cōgitābō *virōs doctōs esse.*   *I will think that the men will have been taught.*

Future infinitive: active

Cōgitō *virōs eum interfectūrōs esse.*   *I think that the men will kill him.*
Cōgitāvī *virōs eum interfectūrōs esse.*   *I thought that the men were going to kill him.*
Cōgitābō *virōs eum interfectūrōs esse.*   *I will think that the men will kill him.*

Future infinitive: passive

Cōgitō *virōs doctum īrī.*   *I think that the men will be taught.*
Cōgitāvī *virōs doctum īrī.*   *I thought that the men were going to be taught.*
Cōgitābō *virōs doctum īrī.*   *I will think that the men will be taught.*

Notes

- The *perfect passive* and *future active infinitives* agree with the subject of their clause in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. The infinitives take 1st–2nd declension endings.

  - Thus, the infinitives in the fourth and fifth sets of examples, **doctōs esse** and **interfectūrōs esse**, respectively, take the accusative plural ending **-ōs** to agree with the subject of the clause, **virōs**, which is masculine accusative plural.

○ There is no concomitant agreement in the future infinitive passive. Rather, its neuter form is constant throughout.

■ This form is in reality a supine (Unit 32), which does not display gender.
■ See Unit 31 for a construction which is used in place of the future passive infinitive.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed. Note that in some sentences the subject of the indirect statement clause is an unexpressed *it*.

1 dīxit Antiochum in templō invēnisse lectum	(Josephus *Ap.*)
2 neque enim testis ipse signō īnspectō falsum nōs prōferre dīxit	(Cicero *Flac.*)
3 virtūte dīxit vōs victōrēs vīvere	(Plautus *Am.*)
4 sciō acerba circumstāre odia	(Vergil *Aeneid*)
5 namque amplius hōram suffīxum in summā mē meminī esse cruce	(Catullus)
6 meminī enim īsdem ferē verbīs ad mē tē scrībere	(Cicero *Deiot.*)
7 oblīvīscor enim Roscium et Cluvium virōs esse prīmāriōs	(Cicero *Q. Rosc.*)
8 pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem	(Caesar *Gal.*)
9 dī immortālēs sibi dēbērī putant	(Cicero *Mil.*)
10 neque adhūc contingere tūtum esse putant	(Ovid *Met.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following using the vocabulary mentioned in this unit and from this chapter's *Aeneid* excerpt.

1 Dīxit Neptūnum ruīnam pelagī sēnsisse.
2 Meminimus cūnctum stāgnum in aulās refundere.
3 Frātrī nūntiābit genitōrem citō rotās vulgō redūcere.
4 Forte fābātur vulgus in aulā colligere.
5 Arbitrāta est Cȳmothoē sōlem ā Neptūnō nōn redūctum esse.
6 Effer tridentem, Neptūne! Putāsne equōs placidōs cāsūrōs esse?
7 Spērō ignōbile vulgus face flectārī.
8 Ait fīdūciam saepe silēre sed dolum commovēre.
9 Audīvērunt dehinc sēditiōnem tridente Neptūnī dētrūsam esse.
10 Intellegit frātrem tumidās facēs domō opprimere.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latin.

1 We thought that the chariots were going carry him to Carthage.
2 Neptune hopes that his enemy Jupiter is now silent.
3 Do you (sg.) remember that he often spoke with loyalty.
4 She often thinks that the cold will be led back by Jupiter.
5 No one thinks that strong men wrestle death.

Reading: Neptune calms the winds

Intereā Neptūnus magnō murmure sēnsit pontum ēmissamque hiemem miscērī et stāgna īmīs vadīs refūsa esse. Graviter commōtus est. Prōspiciēns caput placidum in altō summā ex undā extulit. Disiectam esse Aenēae classem in tōtō aequore **videt** et **Trōas** flūctibus caelīque ruīnā oppressōs esse. Nec latuērunt dolī et īrae Iūnōnis frātrem. Eurum ad sē Zephyrumque vocat, dehinc tālia fātur:

"Tantane fīdūcia vestrī **generis** vōs tenuit? Iam caelum terramque meō sine nūmine miscēre et tantās mōlēs tollere audētis, ventī? **Quōs ego . . . !** Sed mōtōs flūctūs compōnere praestat. Post mihi **nōn similī poenā** commissa luētis. Mātūrāte fugam rēgīque vestrō haec dīcite: nōn illī imperium pelagī saevumque tridentem, sed mihi sorte **datum esse**. Tenet ille immānia saxa, Eure, vestrās domōs. Aeolus in aulā sē **iactet** et in carcere ventōrum clausō **rēgnet**."

Sīc ait et dictō citius tumida aequora plācat collēctāsque nūbēs fugat sōlemque redūcit. Cȳmothoē simul et Trītōn adnixus ex acūtō scopulō nāvēs dētrūdunt. **Ipse** tridentem levat et vastās syrtēs aperit et aequor temperat atque rotīs levibus undās summās perlābitur. Ac velutī saepe **cum** sēditiō magnō in populō coorta est saevitque in animīs ignōbile vulgus iamque facēs et saxa volant, furor arma ministrat, tum sī forte virum **quem** gravem pietāte ac meritīs cōnspexērunt, silent et arrēctīs auribus astant. Ille dictīs animōs regit et pectora mulcet. Sīc cūnctus fragor pelagī cecidit, postquam genitor aequora prōspiciēns caelōque apertō invectus flectit equōs curruīque secundō volāns dat lōra.

Notes

videt – the jump to the present tense is a frequent device in narration
Trōas – this is an accusative plural of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
generis – the winds are descended from the goddess Aurora
quōs ego – Neptune breaks off his sentence to leave it to the winds' imagination what he was going to say
nōn similī poenā – **magnā/difficilī poenā**
datum esse – this is singular, since it agrees only with the closest accusative (**tridentem**).
iactet and **rēgnet** are *let him toss* and *let him rule*, respectively. For present subjunctives, see Unit 5, and see Unit 18 for the jussive subjunctive

ipse – **Neptūnus**
cum – 'when' (see Unit 21)
quem = **aliquem**. The **ali-** is always dropped after **sī**

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

adnītor, -ī, adnixus sum   *to strive*
ait   *s/he says*
arrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus   *to raise up*
astō, -āre, astitī   *to stand by*
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum   *to dare*
aula, -ae   *hall*
auris, auris (f.)   *ear*
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus   *to fall*
citō   *quickly*
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus   *to enclose*
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus   *to gather*
commissum, -ī   *fault*
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus   *to disturb; move*
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus   *to calm; compose*
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus   *to see*
coorior, -ī, -ortus sum   *to rise*
cūnctus, -a, -um   *all, whole*
Cȳmothoē, -ēs (f.)   *Cymothoe (a nymph)*
dehinc   *then*
dētrūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trūsus   *to thrust off*
dictum, -ī   *word*
dolus, -ī   *deceit*
domus, -ūs (f.)   *home; household*
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus   *to raise up; carry off*
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to send out*
equus, -ī   *horse*
fax, facis (f.)   *torch*
fīdūcia, -ae   *confidence; faith; hope*
flectō, -ere, flexī, flexus   *to guide*
for (1)   *to speak*
fors, fortis (f.)   *chance*
fragor, fragōris (m.)   *noise, crash*
frāter, frātris (m.)   *brother*
fuga, -ae   *flight; haste*
fugō (1)   *to put to flight*
furor, furōris (m.)   *frenzy; rage*
genitor, genitōris (m.)   *father, progenitor*
gravis, grave   *heavy, severe*
graviter   *heavily, strongly*
ignōbilis, ignōbile   *obscure*
intereā   *meanwhile*

invehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus *to carry in*
levis, leve *light*
levō (1) *to lift*
lōrum, -ī *rein*
luō, -ere, luī *to atone for*
mātūrō (1) *to hasten*
meritum, -ī *merit*
ministrō (1) *to furnish*
misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtus [+ dat.] *to mix; confuse*
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus *to move*
nec *and not*
Neptūnus, -ī *Neptune (god of the sea)*
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus *to suppress*
pelagus, -ī *sea*
perlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum *to glide along*
pietās, pietātis (f.) *duty, loyalty*
placidus, -a, -um *peaceful*
plācō (1) *to appease, calm*
poena, -ae *punishment, penalty*
post *afterwards*
postquam *after*
praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus *to be better*
prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus *to look out*
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus *to lead back*
refundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus *to pour back*
rēgnō (1) *to reign*
rota, -ae *wheel*
ruīna, -ae *ruin*
saepe *often*
saeviō, -īre, saeviī, saevītus *to rage*
secundus, -a, -um *following; obedient*
sēditiō, sēditiōnis (f.) *riot*
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus *to sense, feel; hear*
sileō, -ēre, siluī *to be silent*
similis, simile *similar*
simul *at the same time*
sōl, sōlis (m.) *sun*
sors, sortis (f.) *fate, lot*
stāgnum, -ī *standing water*
tridēns, tridentis (m.) *trident*
Trītōn, Trītonis (m.) *Triton (a god)*
tumidus, -a, -um *swelling*
velutī *as, like*
vester, vestra, vestrum *your (pl.)*
volō (1) *to fly*
vulgus, -ī (nt.) *crowd*
Zephyrus, -ī *west wind*

UNIT 5
Present and imperfect subjunctives

Background

Up till now we have been dealing with verbs in the *indicative mood* and the *imperative mood*. The *indicative mood* is used for statements of fact:

The dog is walking.   The man ate the food.

The *imperative mood* is used for commands:

Walk the dog!   Eat the food!

The *subjunctive* represents the third and final mood of Latin.

- It is used to express a variety of things including: *wish*, *purpose*, *result*, *condition*.
- English also has a subjunctive, although it has mostly become identical in form to the indicative. A few traces of it can still be found in expressions such as:

  *I wish I **were** able to come.*   [unique subjunctive]
  *I wish I **was** able to come.*   [indicative]

Latin structure

There are four subjunctive tenses. This chapter deals with the first two below; the other two are presented in Unit 9.

present	formed from the 1st principal part
imperfect	formed from the 2nd principal part
perfect	formed from the 3rd and 4th principal parts
pluperfect	formed from the 3rd and 4th principal parts

Present subjunctive: active

The four conjugations form the present subjunctive in the same way. They

- drop the **-ō** or **-eō** from the 1st principal part
- add a vowel or vowels to the resulting stem
- add the following endings:

-m	**-mus**
-s	**-tis**
-t	**-nt**

The difference between the conjugations lies in which vowel or vowels are added to form the subjunctive stem:

1st	**-ē-**
2nd	**-eā-**
3rd	**-ā-**
3rd-*iō*	**-ā-**
4th	**-ā-**

Use the following verbs as examples:

> **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**   *to love*
> **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus**   *to teach*
> **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus**   *to lead*
> **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**   *to seize*
> **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**   *to hear*

Formation of present subjunctive stem:

> **amō**   →   **am-**   →   **amē-**
> **doceō**   →   **doc-**   →   **doceā-**
> **dūcō**   →   **dūc-**   →   **dūcā-**
> **capiō**   →   **capi-**   →   **capiā-**
> **audiō**   →   **audi-**   →   **audiā-**

Complete forms:

sg.	1	**amem**	**doceam**	**dūcam**	**capiam**	**audiam**
	2	**amēs**	**doceās**	**dūcās**	**capiās**	**audiās**
	3	**amet**	**doceat**	**dūcat**	**capiat**	**audiat**
pl.	1	**amēmus**	**doceāmus**	**dūcāmus**	**capiāmus**	**audiāmus**
	2	**amētis**	**doceātis**	**dūcātis**	**capiātis**	**audiātis**
	3	**ament**	**doceant**	**dūcant**	**capiant**	**audiant**

Notes

- Observe that the subjunctive vowel is shortened before **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**.
  - This has already been seen elsewhere in the verbal system.

- The exact translation of a subjunctive verb depends on how it is being used, but for our purposes in this unit we can translate the present subjunctive with *may*.
  - Therefore, **amem**, **amēs**, **amet** . . . are *I may love, you may love, s/he may love*.

Present subjunctive: passive

The subjunctive stem is the same as in the active. Only the endings differ. The usual passive endings are employed.

-r	**-mur**
-ris	**-minī**
-tur	**-ntur**

sg.	1	**amer**	**docear**	**dūcar**	**capiar**	**audiar**
	2	**amēris**	**doceāris**	**dūcāris**	**capiāris**	**audiāris**
	3	**amētur**	**doceātur**	**dūcātur**	**capiātur**	**audiātur**
pl.	1	**amēmur**	**doceāmur**	**dūcāmur**	**capiāmur**	**audiāmur**
	2	**amēminī**	**doceāminī**	**dūcāminī**	**capiāminī**	**audiāminī**
	3	**amentur**	**doceantur**	**dūcantur**	**capiantur**	**audiantur**

Notes

- The long subjunctive vowels are shortened before **-r** and **-ntur**, as was the case with these endings in the indicative.
- The translation of these verbs contains *may*, since they are subjunctives and *be*, since they are passives:

amer	*I may be loved*
doceāris	*you (sg.) may be taught*
capiantur	*they may be seized*

- Deponent verbs (Unit 1) of course look passive but are translated as active:

mīrer	*I may admire*
polliceāris	*you (sg.) may promise*
oriantur	*they may rise*

Imperfect subjunctive

This tense is quite simple to form. Simply go to the present infinitive and lengthen the final vowel:

amāre	→	**amārē-**
docēre	→	**docērē-**
dūcere	→	**dūcerē-**
capere	→	**caperē-**
audīre	→	**audīrē-**

Add the same endings used in the present subjunctive:

Active		*Passive*	
-m	-mus	-r	-mur
-s	-tis	-ris	-minī
-t	-nt	-tur	-ntur

Active

sg.						
	1	**amārem**	**docērem**	**dūcerem**	**caperem**	**audīrem**
	2	**amārēs**	**docērēs**	**dūcerēs**	**caperēs**	**audīrēs**
	3	**amāret**	**docēret**	**dūceret**	**caperet**	**audīret**
pl.	1	**amārēmus**	**docērēmus**	**dūcerēmus**	**caperēmus**	**audīrēmus**
	2	**amārētis**	**docērētis**	**dūcerētis**	**caperētis**	**audīrētis**
	3	**amārent**	**docērent**	**dūcerent**	**caperent**	**audīrent**

Passive

sg.						
	1	**amārer**	**docērer**	**dūcerer**	**caperer**	**audīrer**
	2	**amārēris**	**docērēris**	**dūcerēris**	**caperēris**	**audīrēris**
	3	**amārētur**	**docērētur**	**dūcerētur**	**caperētur**	**audīrētur**
pl.	1	**amārēmur**	**docērēmur**	**dūcerēmur**	**caperēmur**	**audīrēmur**
	2	**amārēminī**	**docērēminī**	**dūcerēminī**	**caperēminī**	**audīrēminī**
	3	**amārentur**	**docērentur**	**dūcerentur**	**caperentur**	**audīrentur**

Notes

- As expected, the long vowel is shortened before **-m**, **-t**, **-nt**, **-r**, and **-ntur**.
- The imperfect subjunctive is translated as *might* in the active and as *might be* in the passive:

  amārēmus   *we might love*
  amārēmur   *we might be loved*

- Deponent verbs do not possess a present infinitive in **-re**. Since the imperfect subjunctive is built on precisely this infinitive, deponent verbs create such a form. For the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations this means simply converting the final **-ī** of the present infinitive into **-e**. For 3rd conjugation verbs, however, this means converting **-ī** to **-ere**.

mīrārī	→	**mīrāre**	→	**mīrārē-**	→	**mīrārētur**	*s/he might admire*
pollicērī	→	**pollicēre**	→	**pollicērē-**	→	**pollicērētur**	*s/he might promise*
sequī	→	**sequere**	→	**sequerē-**	→	**sequerētur**	*s/he might follow*
patī	→	**patere**	→	**paterē-**	→	**paterētur**	*s/he might suffer*
orīrī	→	**orīre**	→	**orīrē-**	→	**orīrētur**	*s/he might rise*

Exercise 1

Convert the following verbs to the present subjunctive, keeping person and number constant. The forms given may be in any tense or mood learned thus far. The vocabulary comes from this chapter's *Aeneid* excerpt. Refer to that list for the principal parts of the verbs where needed.

1	secūta erās	6	tābētis	11	torrē
2	experiar	7	contendistī	12	fundēbant
3	pascitur	8	potīta sunt	13	cōnsistentur
4	corrumpimus	9	ēgressī erunt	14	iuvābis
5	imminēbit	10	parābō	15	petēbātur

Exercise 2

Return to Exercise 1 and now convert the verbs to the imperfect subjunctive,
keeping person and number constant.

Exercise 3

Translate the following into Latin.

1 May I divide the horns of the stag.
2 Might we mourn the end of the sweet grains.
3 No anchor may be soaked.
4 The chips of wood might threaten our eyes.
5 We may gain possession of the cliffs of the forest.

Reading: Aeneas and his men land and he encourages them to persevere

Dēfessī Aeneadae contendunt petere lītora, quae cursū proxima sunt. Libyae ad
ōrās vertuntur. Est in sēcessū longō locus. Īnsula portum efficit obiectū laterum,
quibus omnis unda ab altō frangitur inque sinūs sē scindit. **Hinc atque hinc**
vastae rūpēs geminīque scopulī in caelum minantur, quōrum sub vertice lātē
aequora tūta silent. Tum silvīs scaena coruscīs dēsuper horrentīque umbrā ātrum
nemus imminent. Fronte sub adversā scopulīs pendentibus antrum est. Intus
aquae dulcēs vīvōque sedīlia saxō sunt. Nymphārum domus est. Hīc fessās nāvēs
nōn vincula ūlla tenent, uncō morsū ūlla ancora alligat.

Collēctīs nāvibus hūc septem Aenēās omnī ex numerō subit, ac magnō tellūris
amōre ēgressī Trōes optātā harēnā potiuntur. Sale tābentēs artūs in lītore pōnunt.
Ac prīmum silice scintillam excūdit Achātēs suscēpitque ignem foliīs atque ārida
circum nūtrīmenta dedit rapuitque in fōmite flammam. Tum nautae fessī rērum
Cererem corruptam undīs Cereāliaque arma expediunt, frūgēsque receptās parant
et torrēre flammīs et frangere saxīs.

Aenēās scopulum intereā cōnscendit et omnem prōspectum pelagī lātē petit,
sī **Anthea** quem iactātum ventō **videat** Phrygiāsque birēmēs aut **Capyn** aut
celsīs in puppibus arma Caīcī.

Nāvem in cōnspectū nūllam videt, sed trēs in lītore errantēs cervōs prōspicit. Hōs tōta armenta sequuntur ā tergō et longum agmen per vallīs pascitur. Cōnstitit et corripuit hīc arcumque manū celerēsque sagittās, tēla quae fīdus Achātēs gerēbat. Ductōrēsque ipsōs prīmum capita alta ferentēs cornibus arboreīs sternit, tum miscet agēns tēlīs nemora inter frondea omnem turbam. Nec absistit priusquam victor septem ingentia corpora humī fundat et numerum cum nāvibus aequet. Hinc portum petit et in omnēs sociōs partītur. Vīna deinde dīvidit quae cadīs onerāverat bonus Acestēs lītore **Trīnacriō** dederatque velut hērōs abeuntibus Trōibus. Aenēās dictīs maerentia pectora mulcet:

"Ō sociī, nōn enim ignārī ante malōrum sumus, Ō nōs passī sumus graviōra. Dabit deus hīs quoque fīnem. Vōs **Scyllaeam** rabiem penitusque sonantēs scopulōs accessistis. Vōs et **Cyclōpia** saxa expertī estis. Revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem mittite! Forsan ōlim nōs **haec meminisse** iuvābit. Per variōs cāsūs, per tot discrīmina rērum tendimus in Latium, ubi sēdēs quiētās fāta ostendunt. Illīc fās est rēgnum Trōiae resurgere. Dūrāte et vōsmet rēbus secundīs servāte!"

Notes

hinc atque hinc – "from this side and that"
Anthea – this is an accusative singular of a Greek name (see Unit 36)
videat – this is a present subjunctive in a conditional clause (see Unit 24)
Capyn – this is an accusative singular of a Greek name (see Unit 36)
Trīnacriō – the winter before coming to North Africa, Aeneas and his men had been on Sicily, where Acestes procured wine for them
Scyllaeam – Scylla is a sea monster who attacks sailors who pass by her cave
Cyclōpia – Cyclops are one-eyed giants whom the men encountered in Sicily
haec meminisse – while the object of **meminī** is often in the genitive, it may be in the accusative, especially when not referring to humans, as is the case here

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

abeō, abīre, abīvī, abitus   *to depart*
absistō, -ere, -stitī   *to stop*
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus   *to approach*
Acestēs, Acestae (m.)   *Acestes (king of Sicily)*
Aeneadae, -ārum (m.)   *descendants/ followers of Aeneas*
aequō (1)   *to equal; equalize*
alligō (1)   *to bind*
amor, amōris (m.)   *love*
ancora, -ae   *anchor*
Antheus, ī   *Antheus*
arboreus, -a, -um   *tree-like*
arcus, -ūs   *bow*
āridus, -a, -um   *dry*
armentum, -ī   *herd*
artus, -ūs   *limb*

aut . . . aut   *either . . . or*
birēmis, birēmis (f.)   *boat with two oars*
bonus, -a, -um   *good*
cadus, -ī   *jar*
Caīcus, -ī   *Caicus*
Capys, Capyos (m.)   *Capys*
celer, celeris, celere   *swift*
Cereālis, Cereāle   *of grain; of Ceres*
Cerēs, Cereris (f.)   *grain; goddess of grain*
cervus, -ī   *stag*
cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus   *to climb*
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus   *to stop*
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus   *to hasten*
cornū, -ūs (nt.)   *horn*
corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus   *to spoil*
coruscus, -a, -um   *waving*
cursus, -ūs   *course*
Cyclōpius, -a, -um   *of the Cyclops*
dēfessus, -a, -um   *tired*
deinde   *then*
dēsuper   *from above*
discrīmen, discrīminis (nt.)   *crisis; difference*
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus   *to divide*
ductor, ductōris (m.)   *leader*
dulcis, dulce   *sweet*
dūrō (1)   *to endure*
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus   *to form*
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum   *to step off*
excūdō, -ere, -cūdī, -cūsus   *to strike out*
expediō, -īre, -pedīvī, -pedītus   *to procure*
experior, -īrī, -pertus sum   *to try; test; experience*
fessus, -a, -um   *tired*
fīnis, fīnis (m.)   *end; border*
folium, -ī   *leaf*
fōmes, fōmitis (m.)   *chips of wood*
forsan   *perhaps*
frondeus, -a, -um   *leafy*
frōns, frontis (f.)   *face; front*
frūx, frūgis (f.)   *fruit; grain*
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus   *to pour; lay; rout*
geminus, -a, -um   *twin*
hērōs, hērōis (m.)   *hero*
horreō, -ēre, horruī   *to bristle; tremble*
hūc   *to here*
humus, -ī (f.)   *ground*
ignārus, -a, -um   *ignorant*
illīc   *there*
immineō, -ēre   *to overhang*

īnsula, -ae   *island*
intus   *within*
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus   *to help; please*
Libya, -ae   *Libya (in North Africa)*
locus, -ī   *place*
longus, -a, -um   *long*
maereō, -ēre   *to mourn*
maestus, -a, -um   *sad*
malum, -ī   *evil*
manus, -ūs (f.)   *hand*
meminī, -isse [+ gen.]   *to remember*
-met   *(emphasizes pronoun)*
minor (1)   *to threaten*
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus   *to send*
morsus, -ūs   *bit; bite*
nemus, nemoris (nt.)   *grove*
neque   *and not*
nūllus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**]   *none, no*
numerus, -ī   *number*
nūtrimentum, -ī   *food; fuel*
obiectus, -ūs   *barrier*
ōlim   *once; one day*
onerō (1)   *to load*
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus   *to show*
parō (1)   *to prepare*
partior, -īrī, partītus sum   *to distribute*
pascor, -ī, pāstus sum   *to feed*
patior, -ī, passus sum   *to suffer; endure*
penitus   *(deep) within*
petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus   *to seek*
Phrygius, -a, -um   *Phrygian, Trojan*
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus   *to put, place*
portus, -ūs   *harbor*
potior, -īrī, potītus sum [+ abl.]   *to gain possession of*
prīmum   *at first*
priusquam   *before*
prōspectus, -ūs   *view*
proximus, -a, -um   *nearest*
quiētus, -a, -um   *calm, quiet*
quoque   *also*
rabiēs, -ēī (f.)   *rage*
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus   *to recover; accept*
rēs, reī (f.)   *thing; state*
resurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus   *to rise again*
revocō (1)   *to recall; restore*
rūpēs, rūpis (f.)   *cliff*
sagitta, -ae   *arrow*

scaena, -ae   *background*

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus *to split*
scintilla, -ae *spark*
Scyllaeus, -a, -um *of Scylla*
sēcessus, -ūs *inlet*
sedīle, sedīlis (nt.) *seat*
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum *to follow*
silex, silicis (m.) *flint*
silva, -ae *forest*
sinus, -ūs *bay*
socius, -ī *ally; comrade*
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus *to resound*
sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus *to spread, lay low*
subeō, subīre, subīvī, subitus *to bear (under); enter*
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus *to take up*
tābeō, -ēre *to soak*
tēlum, -ī *spear; weapon*
tergum, -ī *back*
timor, timōris (m.) *fear*
torreō, -ēre, torruī, tostus *to roast*
Trīnacrius, -a, -um *Sicilian*
tūtus, -a, -um *safe*
turba, -ae *crowd*
ūllus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**] *any*
umbra, -ae *shadow; shade*
uncus, -a, -um *curved*
vallis, vallis (f.) *valley*
varius, -a, -um *varied*
victor, victōris (m.) *victor*
vīnum, -ī *wine*
vīvus, -a, -um *living*

UNIT 6
Subjunctive of irregular verbs

Background

Recall that Latin has a handful of irregular verbs (cf. Units 11 and 23 of *IBL*).

sum	**esse**	**fuī**	**futūrus**	*to be*
possum	**posse**	**potuī**	–	*to be able, can*
volō	**velle**	**voluī**	–	*to want*
nōlō	**nōlle**	**nōluī**	–	*to not wish, be unwilling*
mālō	**mālle**	**māluī**	–	*to prefer*
eō	**īre**	**īvī, iī**	**itus**	*to go*
ferō	**ferre**	**tulī**	**lātus**	*to bring, carry*

Recall further that these are irregular only in the present system. This holds true of the subjunctive mood in addition to the indicative.

Latin structure

Present subjunctive

Fortunately, these verbs only form their present subjunctives irregularly, and even here they at least take the expected endings. Their unexpected present subjunctive stems are:

sum	→	**sī-**
possum	→	**possī**
volō	→	**velī-**
nōlō	→	**nōlī-**
mālō	→	**mālī-**
eō	→	**eā-**
ferō	→	**ferā-**

To these stems the normal subjunctive endings are added (Unit 5).

sim	**possim**	**velim**	**nōlim**	**mālim**	**eam**	**feram**
sīs	**possīs**	**velīs**	**nōlīs**	**mālīs**	**eās**	**ferās**
sit	**possit**	**velit**	**nōlit**	**mālit**	**eat**	**ferat**
sīmus	**possīmus**	**velīmus**	**nōlīmus**	**mālīmus**	**eāmus**	**ferāmus**
sītis	**possītis**	**velītis**	**nōlītis**	**mālītis**	**eātis**	**ferātis**
sint	**possint**	**velint**	**nōlint**	**mālint**	**eant**	**ferant**

Notes

- The stem final vowels are shortened before the usual endings: **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**.
- **ferre** also has passive forms which take the normal endings: **ferar**, **ferāris**, **ferātur . . .**

Imperfect subjunctive

The imperfective subjunctive of these verbs is formed as expected, with the endings being added directly to the infinitive:

essem, essēs, esset, essēmus, essētis, essent
possem, possēs, posset, possēmus, possētis, possent
īrem, īrēs, īret, īrēmus, īrētis, īrent
ferrem, ferrēs, ferret, ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent
vellem, vellēs, vellet, vellēmus, vellētis, vellent
nōllem, nōllēs, nōllet, nōllēmus, nōllētis, nōllent
māllem, māllēs, māllet, māllēmus, māllētis, māllent

Fiō

The verb **fiō**, introduced in Unit 2, forms its present and imperfect subjunctive as if it were a 3rd-*iō* conjugation verb. Recall that this verb has active forms but passive meanings!

Present subjunctive	*Imperfect subjunctive*
fīam *I may be made; I may become*	**fierem** *I might be made; I might become*
fīās	**fierēs**
fīat	**fieret**
fīāmus	**fierēmus**
fīātis	**fierētis**
fīant	**fierent**

Exercise 1

Translate the following. Use the vocabulary from this unit's *Aeneid* excerpt.

1 Sermōne exaudītō esset Achīvīs fortūna.
2 Antēnor tremēns ferīnam in dape Lycō pollicērī nōlit.
3 Eant eīdem ad fūnus unde nōn quiēscere possent.
4 Certē velit Cloanthus nōminī trīstissimō Teucrī crēdere.
5 Ferāmus pācem cum praedā, quam dē mēnsā Amycī dīripuimus.

Exercise 2

Change the number of every noun and verb from Exercise 1 to the opposite
number. If it is singular, then make it plural; if plural, then make it singular.
Do not change proper names.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latin.

1 Neptune may have hope in his heart.
2 The comrades might especially prefer the almighty horns of a stripped stag.
3 Cruel Jupiter may not wish to fasten the winds, bursting forth, with chains.
4 The sailor may be able to gain possession of the anchor of his enemies.
5 Where might we go to?

Reading: Aeneas and his men feast while Venus complains to Jupiter

Tālia vōce Aenēās refert cūrīsque ingentibus aeger spem vultū simulat. Premit
altum dolōrem in corde. Sociī sē praedae accingunt dapibusque futūrīs. Tergora
dīripiunt costīs et vīscera nūdant. Pars in frusta trementia secant veribusque fīgunt.
Aliī in lītore aēna locant flammāsque ministrant. Tum vīctū revocant vīrēs. Fūsī
per herbam implentur veteris Bacchī pinguisque ferīnae. Postquam exēmpta est
famēs epulīs mēnsaeque remōtae sunt, sermōne longō sociōs āmissōs requīrunt,
dubiī inter spem et metum. Petunt seu **crēdant** illōs vīvere sīve extrēma patī nec
iam vocātōs exaudīre. Praecipuē pius Aenēās nunc cāsum ācris **Orontis**, nunc
Amycī gemit, et sēcum crūdēlia fāta Lycī fortemque **Gyān** fortemque Cloanthum.

　　Et iam fīnis erat, **cum** Iuppiter aethere ē summō dispiciēns mare vēlivolum
terrāsque iacentēs et lītora et lātōs populōs, sīc vertice caelī cōnstitit et lūmina
rēgnīs Libyae dēfīxit. Illum tālēs cūrās pectore iactantem Venus trīstior et suffūsa
lacrimīs **oculōs** nitentēs adloquitur:

"Ō tū quī rēs hominumque deōrumque aeternīs imperiīs regis et fulmine terrēs, quid tantum meus Aenēās **in** tē committere potuit? Quid Trōes committere potuērunt, quibus, tot fūnera passīs, cūnctus orbis terrārum **ob Ītaliam** clauditur? Certē pollicitus es hinc Rōmānōs ōlim volventibus annīs futūrōs esse, hinc ductōrēs revocātō ā sanguine Teucrī, quī mare, quī terrās omnēs diciōne **tenērent**. Quae sententia tē, genitor, vertit? Hōc equidem occāsum Trōiae trīstēsque ruīnās sōlābar, fātīs contrāria fāta rependēns. Nunc eadem fortūna virōs tot cāsibus āctōs īnsequitur. Quem fīnem dās, rēx magne, labōrum?

Antēnor, mediīs ēlāpsus Achīvīs, potuit Illyricōs sinūs penetrāre, intima rēgna Liburnōrum, et tūtus fontem Timāvī superāre, unde mare prōruptum per ōra novem vastō cum murmure montis it et premit arva pelagō sonantī. Hīc tamen ille urbem Patavī sēdēsque Teucrōrum locāvit et gentī nōmen dedit armaque Trōiāna fīxit. Nunc placidā compostus pāce quiēscit. Nōs, tua prōgeniēs, quibus caelī arcem adnuis, nāvibus āmissīs ūnīus ob īram prōdimur. Īnfandum est! Italīs ōrīs longē disiungimur. Hic pietātis honor est? Sīc nōs in scēptra repōnis?"

Notes

altum – this is an adverbial accusative, simply translated as *deep* (see Unit 30 of *IBL*)
crēdant – this is a present subjunctive in an indirect question (see Unit 11)
Orontis – these and the following names are lost comrades of Aeneas
Gyān – this is the accusative singular of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
cum – *when* (see Unit 21)
oculōs – this is a Greek accusative (see Unit 30 of *IBL*)
in – *against*
ob Ītaliam – Italy was destined to be a rival of Juno's beloved Carthage
tenērent – this is an imperfect subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose (see Unit 7)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

accingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus   *to make ready; gird to*
ācer, ācris, ācre   *fierce; sharp; keen*
Achīvus, -a, -um   *Achaean, Greek*
adloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum   *to speak to*
adnuō, -ere, -nuī, -nūtus   *to assent*
aeger, aegra, aegrum   *sick*
aēnum, -ī   *bronze vessel*
alius, alia, aliud [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**]   *other, another*
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to lose*
Amycus, -ī   *Amycus*
Antēnor, Antēnōris (m.)   *Antenor (a Trojan)*
arvum, -ī   *field*
Bacchus, -ī   *Bacchus (god of wine); wine*
certē   *certainly*
Cloanthus, -ī   *Cloanthus*
committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to commit*

compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus   *to compose*
contrārius, -a, -um   *opposing*
costa, -ae   *rib*
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus [+ dat.]   *to believe; trust*
crūdēlis, crūdēle   *cruel*
cūra, -ae   *care, concern*
daps, dapis (f.)   *feast*
dēfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus   *to fasten*
diciō, diciōnis (f.)   *power*
dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus   *to tear off; plunder*
disiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus   *to separate*
dispiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus   *to see*
dubius, -a, -um   *doubtful*
ēlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum   *to slip out*
equidem   *indeed*
exaudiō, -īre, -audīvī, -audītus   *to hear*
eximō, -ere, exēmī, exēmptus   *to remove*
extrēma, -ōrum   *death*
famēs, famis (f.)   *hunger*
ferīna, -ae   *venison*
fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus   *to fasten*
fōns, fontis (m.)   *source*
fortūna, -ae   *fortune, chance*
frustum, -ī   *piece*
fulmen, fulminis (nt.)   *thunderbolt*
fūnus, fūneris (nt.)   *death*
gemō, -ere, gemuī, gemitus   *to groan, moan*
Gyās, Gyae   *Gyas*
herba, -ae   *grass*
īdem, eadem, idem   *same*
Illyricus, -a, -um   *Illyrian*
impleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus [+ gen]   *to fill (with)*
īnfandus, -a, -um   *unspeakable*
intimus, -a, -um   *innermost*
lacrima, -ae   *tear*
lātus, -a, -um   *broad, wide; widespread*
Liburnī, -ōrum   *Illyrians*
locō (1)   *to place*
lūmen, lūminis (nt.)   *light; eye*
Lycus, -ī   *Lycus*
mēnsa, -ae   *table*
metus, -ūs   *fear*
nitēns, nitentis   *shining*
nōmen, nōminis (nt.)   *name*
novem   *nine*
nūdō (1)   *to strip, expose*
occāsus, -ūs   *fall*
orbis, orbis (m.)   *circle; coil; world*

pars, partis (f.)   *part*
Patavium, -ī   *Padua*
pāx, pācis (f.)   *peace*
penetrō (1)   *to penetrate*
pinguis, pingue   *fat*
pius, -a, -um   *pious*
polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum   *to promise*
praecipuē   *especially*
praeda, -ae   *booty*
prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus   *to betray*
prōruptus, -a, -um   *bursting forth*
quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quietus   *to rest*
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus   *to remove*
rependō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsus   *to compensate*
requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus   *to seek, ask*
secō, -āre, secuī, sectus   *to cut*
sententia, -ae   *opinion*
sermō, sermōnis (m.)   *talking, conversation*
seu   *whether; or*
simulō (1)   *to feign*
sīve   *whether; or*
sōlor (1)   *to console*
spēs, -eī   *hope*
suffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus   *to fill*
superō (1)   *to conquer; kill*
tamen   *nevertheless*
tergus, tergōris (nt.)   *hide*
terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus   *to frighten*
tremō, -ere, tremuī   *to tremble*
trīstis, trīste   *sad*
Teucer, Teucrī   *Teucer (former king of Troy)*
Teucrus, -a, -um   *Trojan*
Timāvus, -ī   *Timavus River*
unde   *from where*
vēlivolus, -a, -um   *canvassed*
Venus, Veneris (f.)   *Venus*
verū, -ūs (nt.)   *spit*
vīctus, -ūs   *food*
vīscus, vīsceris (nt.)   *flesh*
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus   *to live*
vultus, -ūs   *face*

UNIT 7
Purpose clauses

Background

Recall that subordinate clauses are clauses which cannot stand alone as a full sentence. Three types of subordinate clauses have been covered thus far:

- relative clause (Unit 25 of *IBL*)

    *The man, **who is approaching**, is my neighbor.*

- ablative absolute (Unit 34 of *IBL*)

    ***The man approaching**, I went and opened the door.*

Now that the subjunctive has been introduced, a whole litany of subordinate clause types are open to us, all of which will be covered in this book:

- purpose clauses (this unit)

    *The man approaches **in order to give me the delivery**.*

- indirect statement (Unit 4)

    *I think **that he is coming**.*

- indirect command (Unit 8)

    *He warns **that the car is going to break down**.*

- indirect question (Unit 11)

    *I wonder **why he's coming**.*

- result clause (Units 13, 14)

    *I exercise every day, **with the result that I broke the 4-minute mile**.*

- causal clause (Unit 19)

    ***Because he came too late**, we missed the train.*

- concessive clause (Unit 20)

    Although he rushed, *we still missed the train.*

- conditional clause (Unit 24)

    If he had arrived in time, *we would have made the train.*

- doubting clause (Unit 25)

    *I doubt **whether he will arrive in time**.*

- fearing clause (Unit 26)

    *We fear **that he will not arrive in time**.*

- prevention clause (Unit 27)

    *The soldiers prevented **the enemies from escaping**.*

Purpose clause

A purpose clause is used to complete the idea of a verb from another clause:

> *I am buying him a new car **in order that he may be happy**.*
> *He wants to buy a ring **so that she will say yes**.*

In English, purpose clauses are introduced by the conjunctions ***in order that*** or ***so that***.

When the subject of the main clause is the same as that of the purpose clause, the conjunctions may be dropped and a simple infinitive used in lieu of a purpose clause:

> *I ate a lot **in order that I might satiate my hunger**.*
> *I ate a lot **to satiate my hunger**.*

Latin structure

Unlike English, Latin purpose clauses are always introduced by a conjunction regardless of whether or not the subject is the same in the main clause and purpose clause.

The structure is:

Main clause +	**ut** (*in order that*) +	present *or* imperfect
	nē (*in order that . . . not*)	subjunctive

The present subjunctive is used when the verb of the main clause is non-past, that is, present, future, future perfect, or perfect (when translated as *have* + verb):

Nāvigō ut ad īnsulam veniam.	*I sail in order that I may come to the island.*
Nāvigābō ut ad īnsulam veniam.	*I will sail in order that I may come to the island.*
Nāvigāverō ut ad īnsulam veniam.	*I will have sailed in order that I may come to the island.*
Nāvigāvī ut ad īnsulam veniam.	*I have sailed in order that I may come to the island.*
Nāvigō nē ad īnsulam veniam.	*I sail in order that I may not come to the island.*
Nōn nāvigō ut ad īnsulam veniam.	*I do not sail in order that I may come to the island.*
Nōn nāvigō nē ad īnsulam veniam.	*I do not sail in order that I may not come to the island.*

The imperfect subjunctive is used when the verb of the main clause is past; that is, imperfect, pluperfect, and perfect (when translated without *have*):

Nāvigābam ut ad īnsulam venīrem.	*I was sailing in order that I might come to the island*
Nāvigāveram ut ad īnsulam venīrem.	*I had sailed in order that I might come to the island*
Nāvigāvī ut ad īnsulam venīrem.	*I sailed in order that I might come to the island*
Nāvigābam nē ad īnsulam venīrem.	*I was sailing in order that I might not come to the island*
Nōn nāvigābam ut ad īnsulam venīrem.	*I was not sailing in order that I might come to the island*
Nōn nāvigābam nē ad īnsulam venīrem.	*I was not sailing in order that I might not come to the island*

Advanced topic

It is often the case that a relative clause can indicate purpose. In such *relative purpose clauses* the verb is in the subjunctive and the antecedent of the relative clause is often suppressed. For example:

Mīsit *quī fārentur.*	*He sent [them]* **so that they might speak***.*
Scrībimus *quod legātur.*	*We write [that]* **so that it may be read***.*
Scrībimus *quī audiāmur.*	*We write* **so that we may be heard***.*

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed. Which sentence contains a subjunctive verb whose tense is surprising for purpose clauses?

1 oculōs ecfodiam tibi, nē mē observāre possīs   (Plautus *Aul.*)
2 veniēbat ad cēnam ut satiāret dēsīderia nātūrae   (Cicero *Fin.*)
3 sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser   (Ovid *Tr.*)
4 optāvit ut in currum patris tollerētur   (Cicero *Off.*)
5 equitēs ā Quintō Atriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī   (Caesar *Gal.*)
   nūntiārent
6 Clusīnī lēgātōs Rōmam, quī auxilium ā senatū   (Caesar *Gal.*)
   peterent, mīsēre
7 Dionȳsius, nē collum tōnsōrī committeret, tondēre   (Cicero *N.D.*)
   fīliās suās docuit
8 inventa sunt specula, ut homō ipse sē nōsset   (Seneca)
9 serit arborēs, quae alterī saeculō prōsint   (Cicero *Sen.*)
10 gallīnae pennīs fovent pullōs, nē frīgore laedantur   (Cicero *N.D.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following using the vocabulary from this chapter's Aeneid excerpt.

1 Clārus Ascanius sacerdōtī Martis placet nē ferrum lībet.
2 Mōribus Lavīniī spolia nōn terminantur ut Cytherēa nōbīs subrīdeat.
3 Mycēnās Caesar īvit ut impiōs togātōs vincīret.
4 Crēvimus fīlium Mārtis horridī Argōs īvisse ut dīrōs contunderet.
5 Dominus Ōceanum trānsit nē ab impiīs cum ferrīs cernerētur.
6 Mycēnās trānsferō quae stent.
7 Ferōcī dominō spolium ferimus nē consilium servitiī expleat.
8 Vōtum additum erat nē servitium stāret.
9 Nūtrīcēs contrā iūra in Phthīam lābuntur ut nātās fīliōsque serēnent.
10 Trīgintā aestātēs Phthīae Quiīrnus erat ut dominus Orientis fieret.
11 Albam Longam mūniēmus nē lupae ferōcēs eam remordeant.
12 Sacerdōtēs explēvērunt vōta quī Mārtem serēnārent.

Exercise 3

Convert the nouns in Exercise 2 to the opposite number. If plural, change to singular; if singular, change to plural. Do not change proper nouns. Which sentence does not change?

Exercise 4

Translate into Latin.

1 They went in order to crush with swords the 100 enemies.
2 We fortify the city so that it may not be destroyed.
3 What do you (sg.) do in order to spare the hearts of the citizens?
4 The citizens stand unmoved to frighten the enemies.
5 In the months of the summer we prayed so that Jupiter might subdue all storms.

Reading: Jupiter assures Venus of the future Grandeur of Rome

Illī subrīdēns Iuppiter, hominum sator atque deōrum, vultū quō caelum tempestātēsque serēnat. Ōscula nātae lībāvit, dehinc tālia fātur:

"Parce metuī, Cytherēa, manent immōta fāta tuōrum. Cernēs urbem et prōmissa moenia Lavīnī et ferēs sublīmem ad sīdera caelī magnanimum Aenēān. Neque mē sententia vertit.

Fābor enim, quandō haec cūra tē remordet. Longius volvēns movēbō arcāna fātōrum. Hic fīlius tuus bellum ingēns in Ītaliā geret et populōs ferōcēs contundet mōrēsque et moenia virīs pōnet, dum aestās tertia eum rēgnantem in Latiō vīderit ternaque hīberna trānsīverint Rutulīs subāctīs. At puer Ascanius, cui nunc cognōmen Iūlus additur, trīgintā magnōs annōs volvendīs mēnsibus imperiō explēbit. Īlus erat eī cognōnem, dum rēs Īlia rēgnō stetit. Hic rēgnum ab sēde Lavīnī trānsferet et multā vī Longam Albam mūniet. Hīc iam ter centum tōtōs annōs rēgnābitur gente sub **Hectoreā**, dōnec rēgīna, sacerdōs Mārte **gravis**, geminam prōlem partū dabit. Inde Rōmulus laetus fulvō tegmine lupae nūtrīcis gentem excipiet et Māvortia moenia condet Rōmānōsque suō dē nōmine dīcet.

Hīs ego nec mētās rērum nec tempora pōnō. Imperium sine fīne dedī. Quīn aspera Iūnō, quae nunc mare terrāsque caelumque metū fatīgat, cōnsilia **in melius** referet, mēcumque Rōmānōs, dominōs rērum gentemque togātam, fovēbit. Sīc placitum est. Aetās lūstrīs lābentibus veniet **cum** domus Assaracī Phthīam clārāsque Mycēnās in servitiō premet ac victīs Argīs dominābitur. Nāscētur Trōiānus Caesar pulchrā orīgine, cuius imperium Ōceanō terminābitur et cuius fāma astrīs. **Iūlius** erit suum nōmen dēmissum ā magnō Iūlō. Hunc spoliīs Orientis onustum tū sēcūra ōlim in caelō accipiēs. Vocābitur hic quoque vōtīs. Tum aspera saecula, oblīvīta bella mītēscent. Cāna Fidēs et Vesta et Quirīnus cum frātre Remō iūra dabunt. Dīrae **portae bellī** ferrō et compāgibus artīs claudentur. Furor impius, vīnctus centum aēnīs nōdīs post tergum, intus sedēns saeva super arma fremet horridus ōre cruentō."

Notes

Hectoreā – Hector was a prince of Troy
gravis – here *pregnant*
in melius – *for the better*
cum – *when* (see Unit 21)
Iūlius – this refers to Augustus Caesar, who commissioned Vergil to write the Aeneid
portae bellī – the doors of the temple of Janus, which were open in times of war, closed
   during peace

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus   *to add*
aēnus, -a, -um   *of bronze; brazen*
aestās, aestātis (f.)   *summer*
aetās, aetātis (f.)   *age, time*
Alba, -ae   *Alba Longa (city in Italy)*
arcānum, -ī   *secret*
artus, -a, um   *close, tight*
Ascanius, -ī   *Ascanius*
Assaracus, -ī   *Assaracus (ancient king of Troy)*
astrum, -ī   *star*
at   *yet*
Caesar, Caesaris (m.)   *Caesar*
cānus, -a, -um   *white*
centum   *100*
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus   *to perceive*
clārus, -a, -um   *clear; famous*
cognōmen, cognōminis (nt.)   *name*
cōnsilium, -ī   *plan*
contundō, -ere, -tudī, -tūsus   *to beat, bruise*
cruentus, -a, -um   *bloody*
Cytherēa, -ae   *epithet for Venus*
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to derive*
dīrus, -a, -um   *terrible*
dominor (1) [+ dat.]   *to rule over*
dominus, -ī   *master*
dōnec   *until*
dum   *until; while*
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus   *to take up*
expleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus   *to complete; satisfy*
fāma, -ae   *fame*
fatīgō (1)   *to tire*
ferōx, ferōcis   *fierce*
fīdēs, -eī   *faith; trust; Faith (a goddess)*
fīlius, -ī   *son*
ferrum, -ī   *iron; sword*
fulvus, -a, -um   *tawny; yellow*

Hectoreus, -a, -um   *of Hector*
hīberna, -ōrum   *winter (quarters)*
horridus, -a, -um   *frightening*
Īlius, -a, -um   *Trojan*
immōtus, -a, -um   *unmoved*
impius, -a, -um   *disloyal, wicked*
Iūlius, -ī   *Julius*
Iūlus, -ī   *Iulus*
iūs, iūris (nt.)   *law*
lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum   *to slip*
Lavīnium, -ī   *Lavinium (city in Italy)*
lībō (1)   *to pour; touch*
lupa, -ae   *she-wolf*
lūstrum, -ī   *five years*
magnanimus, -a, -um   *brave, noble in spirit*
Mārs, Mārtis (m.)   *Mars (god of war)*
Māvortius, -a, -um   *of Mars, Martian*
melius   *better*
mēnsis, mēnsis (m.)   *month*
mēta, -ae   *limit*
mītēscō, -ere   *to become mild*
mōs, mōris (m.)   *custom*
mūniō, -īre, mūnīvī, mūnītus   *to fortify*
Mycēnae, -ārum   *Mycenae (city in Greece)*
nāta, -ae   *daughter*
nōdus, -ī   *knot*
nūtrīx, nūtrīcis (f.)   *nurse*
Ōceanus, -ī   *ocean*
onustus, -a, -um   *loaded*
Oriēns, Orientis (m.)   *Orient*
orīgō, orīginis (f.)   *origin*
ōsculum, -ī   *lip*
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus [+ dat.]   *to spare*
partus, -ūs   *birth*
Phthīa, -ae   *Phthia (city in Greece)*
placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus [+ dat.]   *to please*
prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to promise*
puer, -ī   *boy*
quandō   *when; since*
quīn   *even*
Quirīnus, -ī   *Romulus*
remordeō, -ēre, -mordī, -morsus   *to gnaw*
Remus, -ī   *Remus*
Rōmulus, -ī   *Romulus*
Rutulus, -a, -um   *Rutulian (people of Italy)*
sacerdōs, sacerdōtis (m/f)   *priest, priestess*
saeculum, -ī   *generation; century*
sator, satōris (m.)   *sower; father*

sēcūrus, -a, -um [+ gen.]   *unconcerned (by), carefree*
serēnō (1)   *to calm*
servitium, -ī   *slavery*
spolium, -ī   *spoils*
stō, stāre, stetī, status   *to stand*
subigō, -ere, subēgī, subāctus   *to subdue*
sublīmis, sublīme   *high*
subrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī   *to smile at*
suus, -a, -um   *his/her/its/their own*
tegmen, tegminis (nt.)   *skin*
tempus, temporis (nt.)   *time*
terminō (1)   *to limit*
ternī, -ae, -a   *three each*
tertius, -a, -um   *third*
togātus, -a, -um   *wearing a toga*
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsīvī, trānsitus   *to cross over; pass*
trānsferō, -ferre, trānstulī, trānslātus   *to transfer*
trīgintā   *thirty*
Vesta, -ae   *Vesta (goddess of the hearth)*
vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctus   *to bind; chain*
vōtum, -ī   *prayer*

UNIT 8
Indirect commands

Background

The imperative is used to give commands (Unit 28 of *IBL*):

>Wake me up at 7!
>Go to the store and buy some milk!
>Stop dawdling and hurry up!

Such orders are termed *direct commands*, since the verbs are directly giving an order.

An *indirect command* is a subordinate clause which is dependent upon another clause whose verb is a verb such as *beg*, *command*, *order*, *persuade*, *pray*, *request*, *urge*.

>I urge *that you wake me up at 7.*
>We beg *that you go to the store and buy some milk.*
>He requests *that you stop dawdling and hurry up.*

Latin structure

Indirect commands have the following structure:

>Main verb + **ut/nē** + subjunctive verb

Indirect commands are introduced by the same types of verbs that introduce such clauses in English:

cohortor (1)	*to encourage, urge*
hortor (1)	*to encourage, urge*
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus	*to incite, urge on*
imperō (1)	*to command*
moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus	*to warn*

ōrō (1)	*to beg, ask*
persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsus [+ dat.]	*to persuade*
petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus	*to seek, ask*
postulō (1)	*to demand*
precor (1)	*to pray, beg*
rogō (1)	*to ask*

The conjunctions **ut** and **nē** are the same conjunctions that are used in purpose clauses (Unit 7). **Ut** is used when the indirect command is positive and **nē** when the verb of the indirect command is negated.

The verb of the indirect command is either in the present or imperfect subjunctive (Units 5, 6). There is no difference in meaning between the two, the selection of subjunctive tense being conditioned by the tense of the verb of the main clause.

- The present subjunctive is used when the verb of the main clause is non-past, that is, present, future, future perfect, or perfect (when translated as *have* + verb).

  ○ Note that the subjunctive verb is translated like an indicative, without the use of *may*, or even just as an infinitive.

Hortāmur nē eant.	*We urge that they not go.*
Persuādent mihi ut praedam capiam.	*They persuade me that I take the loot.*
Imperō ut mīlitēs oppugnent.	*I command the soldiers to attack.*

- The imperfect subjunctive is used when the verb of the main clause is past, that is, imperfect, pluperfect, or perfect (when translated without *have*).

  ○ Again, note that the subjunctive verb is translated like an indicative, without the use of *might*, or even just as an infinitive.

Hortābāmur nē īrent.	*We were urging that they not go.*
Persuāsērunt mihi ut praedam caperem.	*They persuaded me to take the loot.*
Imperāvī ut mīlitēs oppugnārent.	*I commanded the soldiers to attack.*

Advanced topic

The verb **iubeō**, **-ēre**, **iussī**, **iussus** *to command* normally takes two objects, one of which is an infinitive and not a subjunctive clause.

Iubet nōs īre.	*S/he orders us to go.*
Iussit nōs īre.	*S/he ordered us to go.*

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 Trānsalpinās gentīs oleam et vitem serere nōn sinimus (Cicero *Rep.*)
2 tandem impetrāvī abīret (Plautus *Trin.*)
3 coēgistī ut concēderem (Cicero *Tusc.*)
4 vērum tamen precor ut īnfīnītīs nostrīs malīs (Cicero *Q. fr.*)
    contentī sint
5 monet ut prōvideat nē palam rēs agātur (Cicero *S. Rosc.*)
6 monuit, ut aut parcius aetātulae indulgeret aut cautius (Suetonius *Cl.*)
7 ibique sēcrētō monuit, ut potius pūblicē quam (Sallust *Jug.*)
    prīvātim amīcitiam populī Rōmānī coleret
8 postulāvit ut Priscus certior fieret (Pliny the Younger)
9 petunt ut nēmō sit qui audeat dīcere plūs illīs (Q. Tullius Cicero)
10 petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī (Caesar *Gal.*)
    dēfendat

Exercise 2

Using the vocabulary from this unit's *Aeneid* excerpt as well that discussed above, translate the following.

1 Harpalycē monet nē nesciī sīmus.
2 Postulāte ut iuvenēs ordiantur rēmigia cavāre!
3 Hortāta est Dīdō nē virginēs comās occulerent.
4 Precāmur ut vēnātrīx volucrior quam lȳnx maculōsus sit.
5 Persuāsistis certē ut Spartānōs aprōs arcērent.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latin.

1 I beg that you (sg.) not decide to surpass me.
2 He warned that we not see the appearance of Apollo.
3 They asked that we gird ourselves up wth quivers.
4 We have decided that the huntress commands the wild animals to accompany us.
5 Apollo commands the handy quivers to be scattered.

Reading: Aeneas sets out to explore the island and encounters Venus

Haec ait et fīlium Māiā genitum dēmittit ab altō, ut terrae novae arcēsque Karthāginis pateant hospitiō Teucrīs et nē Dīdō nescia fātī hōs fīnibus arcēret. Volat ille per āera magnum rēmigiō ālārum ac citus ōrīs Libyae astitit. Et iam iussa facit, **pōnunt**que ferōcia corda Poenī volvente deō. **In prīmīs** rēgīna quiētum animum in Teucrōs accipit et mentem benignam.

At pius Aenēās per noctem plūrima in mente volvēns cōnstituit, **ut prīmum** lūx alma data est, exīre locōsque novōs explōrāre et quaerere quās ōrās ventō **accesserit** et quī, hominēsne feraene, terrās, quae incultae **sint**, **teneant**. Dehinc sociīs exācta referet. Classem in convexō nemorum sub rūpe cavātā arboribus clausam atque horrentibus umbrīs circum occulit. Ipse ūnō Achātē comitātus graditur bīna hastīlia lātō ferrō manū crispāns.

Cui obvia māter mediā in silvā sēsē tulit virginis ōs habitumque gerēns et arma virginis Spartānae, vel quālis Thrēissa **Harpalycē** equōs fatīgat volucremque Hebrum fugā praevertitur. Namque velut vēnātrīx in umerīs dē mōre habilem arcum suspenderat dederatque comam ut diffunderētur ventīs. Illī nūda genū erat et in nōdō sinūs fluentēs tunicae. Ac prior inquit:

"Heus, iuvenēs, mōnstrāte, sī forte vīdistis quam meārum sorōrum errantem, succīnctam pharetrā et maculōsae tegmine lyncis, aut prementem spūmantis aprī cursum clāmōre."

Sīc Venus. Sīc Veneris fīlius contrā orsus est:

"Nūlla tuārum sorōrum **mihi** audīta neque vīsa erat. Ō quam tē memorem, virgō? Namque haud tibi vultus mortālis, nec vōx hominem sonat. Ō, dea certē es. Phoebī soror? Nymphārum sanguinis ūna? Levā nostrum labōrem, quaecumque es! Docē nōbīs quō sub caelō et in quibus ōrīs orbis tandem **iactēmur**! Ignārī hominumque locōrumque errāmus ventō hūc et flūctibus vastīs āctī. Multa hostia tibi ante ārās nostrā dextrā cadet."

Notes

pōnunt – *they set aside*

in prīmīs – *especially*

ut prīmum – *once, as soon as*

accesserit – this is a perfect subjunctive (see Unit 9) in an indirect question (see Unit 11)

sint – this is subjunctive by attraction (see Unit 33)

teneant – another indirect question (see Unit 11)

Harpalycē – a Thracian princess known for her abilities in war and her speed on a horse. This is the nominative singular of a Greek noun (see Unit 36).

mihi – this is a dative of agent, which is more frequent with the passive periphrastic (see Unit 30)

iactēmur – a subjunctive in an indirect question (see Unit 11)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

āēr, āeris (m.) *air*

āla, -ae *wing*

almus, -a, -um *nourishing; nurturing*

aper, aprī *wild boar*

arbor, arboris (f.) *tree*

benignus, -a, -um *kind, favorable*

bīnī, -ae, -a *two each*

cavō (1) *to hollow*

citus, -a, -um *quick*

coma, -ae *hair*

comitō (1) *to accompany*

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus *to decide*

convexum, -ī *hollow*

crispō (1) *to wave*

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to send down*

Dīdō, Dīdōnis (f.) *Dido*

diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus *to scatter*

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus *to teach*

exeō, exīre, exīvī, exitus *to go out*

exigō, -ere, exēgī, exāctus *to pass; discover*

fera, -ae *wild animal*

fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus *to flow*

genu, -ūs (nt.) *knee*

gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus *to beget, bear*

gradior, -ī, gressus sum *to step, walk*

habilis, habile *handy*

habitus, -ūs *appearance, wardrobe*

Harpalycē, -ē *Harpalyce*

hastīle, hastīlis (nt.) *spear-shaft*

haud *not at all; hardly*

Hebrus, -ī *Hebrus River*

heus *hey*

hospitium, -ī *hospitality*

hostia, -ae *sacrifice*

incultus, -a, -um *uncultivated*

inquit *s/he says; s/he said*

iuvenis, iuvene *young*

lūx, lūcis (f.) *light*

lȳnx, lyncis (m.) *lynx*

maculōsus, -a, -um *spotted*

Māia, -ae *Maia*

māter, mātris (f.) *mother*

memorō (1) *to speak, call*

mōnstrō (1) *to show*

mortālis, mortāle *mortal*

nescius, -a, -um *unaware*

noster, nostra, nostrum   *our*
novus, -a, -um   *new*
nūdus, -a, -um   *nude; exposed*
obvius, -a, -um [+ dat.]   *in the way*
occulō, -ere, -culuī, -cultus   *to conceal*
ordior, -īrī, orsus sum   *to begin*
pateō, -ēre, patuī   *to extend; be open; be evident*
pharetra, -ae   *quiver*
Phoebus, -ī   *Apollo*
plūrimus, -a, -um   *most*
Poenus, -a, -um   *Phoenician; Carthaginian*
praevertor, -ī, -versus sum   *to surpass*
prior, prius   *first*
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus   *to ask, seek*
quālis, quāle   *such, such a kind as, what kind*
quam   *how? as, until*
rēmigium, -ī   *rowing, oars*
sinus, -ūs   *fold; bay*
Spartānus, -a, -um   *Spartan*
spūmō (1)   *to foam*
succingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus   *to gird up*
suspendō, -ere, suspendī, suspēnsus   *to hang*
tandem   *finally*
Thrēissa, -ae   *Thracian woman*
tunica, -ae   *tunic*
umerus, -ī   *shoulder*
vel   *or*
vēnātrīx, vēnātrīcis (f.)   *huntress*
virgō, virginis (f.)   *virgin, young girl*
volucer, volucris, volucre   *swift*

UNIT 9
Perfect and pluperfect subjunctives

Background

introduced *the present subjunctive system*, consisting of the present and imperfect subjunctives. There is also a *perfect subjunctive system*, consisting of two tenses: the perfect and pluperfect subjunctives. This unit is focused on the form of these two new tenses. We will look at their uses and their differences from the present and imperfect subjunctives in the next unit. As with the indicative, no verbs are irregular in the perfect system.

Latin structure

Perfect subjunctive

Active

Since there are no conjugational distinctions in the perfect system, we will use the verb **amō (1)** *to love* as the sole example.

- Go to the 3rd principal part and drop the **-ī**: **amāvī → amāv-**
- Add the following endings:

-erim	-erīmus
-erīs	-erītis
-erit	-erint

amāv- →

amāverim	**amāverīmus**
amāverīs	**amāverītis**
amāverit	**amāverint**

Notes

- Observe how these forms are similar to the *future perfect active* (Unit 14 of *IBL*).

  ○ They differ in the 1ˢᵗ singular.
  ○ They may also differ in the length of the **-i-**, although there are perfect subjunctive forms attested without a short **-i-** like the future perfect.

		Future perfect	*Perfect subjunctive*
sg.	1	**-erō**	**-erim**
	2	**-eris**	**-erīs**
	3	**-erit**	**-erit**
pl.	1	**-erimus**	**-erīmus**
	2	**-eritis**	**-erītis**
	3	**-erint**	**-erint**

- The translation of the perfect subjunctive will depend on the context in which it is being used. A working translation, however, is *may have*, with *may* indicating it is a non-past subjunctive and *have* that it is perfect:

  amāverim   *I may have loved*

Passive

As with the passive of perfect indicative verbs (Unit 20 of *IBL*), the passive of perfect subjunctive verbs consists of two words:

> *4ᵗʰ principal part + present subjunctive of* **esse**

Recall that in order to form the *perfect indicative passive*, we used the 4ᵗʰ principal part + the present tense forms of *esse*. The same structure is used for the *perfect subjunctive passive* with the present subjunctive forms of **esse** (Unit 6) instead of its present indicative forms:

	Singular	*Plural*
1	**amātus, -a, -um sim**	**amātī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2	**amātus, -a, -um sīs**	**amātī, -ae, -a sītis**
3	**amātus, -a, -um sit**	**amātī, -ae, -a sint**

Note the translation with *may*, indicating that it is a non-past subjunctive, *have*, indicating that it is perfect, and *been* indicating that it is a passive:

amātus sim   *I may have been loved*

Pluperfect subjunctive

Active

The pluperfect subjunctive is formed as follows:

- Go to the 3rd principal part and drop **-ī**: **amāvī → amāv-**
- Add the suffix **-issē-**: **amāv- → amāvissē-**
- Add the familiar active endings:

-m	**-mus**
-s	**-tis**
-t	**-nt**

	amāvissem	**amāvissēmus**
amāvissē- →	**amāvissēs**	**amāvissētis**
	amāvisset	**amāvissent**

Notes

- Unsurprisingly, the long **-ē-** is shortened before final **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**.
- A working translation is *might have*, with *might* indicating that it is past subjunctive and *have* that it is perfect:

amāvissem   *I might have loved*

Passive

This is composed of two parts:

4th principal part + imperfect subjunctive of **esse**

	Singular	*Plural*
1	**amātus, -a, -um essem**	**amātī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2	**amātus, -a, -um essēs**	**amātī, -ae, -a essētis**
3	**amātus, -a, -um esset**	**amātī, -ae, -a essent**

A working translation is *might have been*, with *might* indicating past subjunctive, *have* the perfect system, and *been* the passive voice:

amātus essem   *I might have been loved*

Exercise 1

Convert the following verbs to the perfect subjunctive, keeping person and number constant. The forms given may be in any tense or mood learned thus far. The vocabulary comes from this chapter's *Aeneid* excerpt. Refer to that list for the principal parts of the verbs, where needed.

1 excessī	4 surrēxistis	7 trāicient
2 superābitur	5 iugābāmus	8 habet
3 mercāminī	6 reclūdam	9 dēvenīs

Exercise 2

Return to Exercise 1 and now convert the verbs to the pluperfect subjunctive, keeping person and number constant.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latin.

1 He might have destroyed the city.
2 The city might have been destroyed by him.
3 The blind man may have rejoiced.
4 The huntress of Jupiter may have gone.
5 The dream may have been pierced by a threatening noise.

Reading: Venus relays the story of Dido and Sychaeus

Tum Venus:

"Haud equidem tālī honōre dignor. Virginibus Tyriīs mōs est gestāre pharetram et vincīre altē sūrās purpureō cothurnō. Pūnica rēgna vidētis, Tyriōs et urbem Agēnoris. Sed fīnēs sunt Libycī, genus intractābile bellō. Imperium Dīdō, quae germānum fugiēns ab suā urbe profecta erat, regit. Longa est iniūria, longae ambāgēs, sed summa fastīgia rērum sequar.

Huic coniūnx Sȳchaeus erat, dīvitissimus agrī Phoenīcum. Magnō ab amōre uxōris dīlectus erat. Cui pater suam Dīdōnem intāctam dederat et iugāverat prīmīs ōminibus coniugiī. Rēgna Tyrī germānus Dīdōnis, Pygmaliōn, habēbat, quī erat immānior scelere ante aliōs omnēs. Inter Pygmaliōnem Sȳchaeumque medius furor vēnit. Ille impius Sychaeum incautum ante ārās atque caecus amōre aurī clam ferrō superat, sēcūrus amōris germānae. Factum diū cēlāvit et simulāns multa lūsit amantem aegramque vānā spē. Ipsa sed in somnīs inhumātī coniugis imāgō vēnit, attollēns ōra pallida modīs mīrīs. Crūdēlēs ārās trāiectaque pectora

ferrō nūdāvit, caecumque domūs scelus omne retēxit. Tum celerāre fugam patriāque excēdere suādet auxiliumque **viae** reclūdit in tellūre veterēs thēsaurōs, ignōtum pondus argentī et aurī.

Hīs commōta Dīdō fugam sociōsque parābat. Conveniunt quibus aut odium crūdēle tyrannī aut metus ācer erat. Nāvēs, quae forte parātae sunt, corripiunt onerantque aurō. Portantur avārī Pygmaliōnis opēs pelagō. Dux factī fēmina erat. Dēvēnērunt locōs ubi nunc ingentia moenia surgentemque arcem novae Karthāginis cernētis. Mercātī sunt solum, **Byrsam** dē nōmine factī, quod accēpērunt quantum terram taurīnō tergō circumdare **possent**.

Sed quī estis vōs tandem? Aut quibus ab ōrīs vēnistis? Quōve iter tenētis?"

Notes

viae – *journey*
Byrsam – *bull's hide* in Greek
possent – a subjunctive in an indirect question (see Unit 11)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

Agēnor, Agēnoris (m.) *Agenor*
ager, agrī *field*
altē *high up*
ambāgēs, ambāgis (f.) *details*
amō (1) *to love*
argentum, -ī *silver*
attollō, -ere *to lift up; raise*
aurum, -ī *gold*
auxilium, -ī *aid*
avārus, -a, -um *greedy*
Byrsa, -ae *Byrsa*
caecus, -a, -um *blind*
celerō (1) *to hasten*
cēlō (1) *to hide*
circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus *to surround*
clam *secretly*
coniugium, -ī *marriage*
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus *to meet; gather*
cothurnus, -ī *hunting boot*
dēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus *to arrive*
dignor (1) [+ abl.] *to think worthy of*
dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus *to esteem; love*
diū *for a long time*
dux, ducis (m.) *leader*
excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus *to depart*
factum, -ī *deed; fact*
fastīgium, -ī *top; point*
fēmina, -ae *woman*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī   *to flee*
germānus, -ī   *brother*
gestō (1)   *to bear; wear*
habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus   *to have*
ignōtus, -a, -um   *unknown*
imāgō, imāginis (f.)   *image, likeness*
incautus, -a, -um   *careless*
inhumātus, -a, -um   *unburied*
intāctus, -a, -um   *untouched, virgin*
intractābilis, intractābile   *formidable*
ipse, ipsa, ipsum   *self; very*
iugō (1)   *to join*
Libycus, -a, -um   *Libyan*
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus   *to ridicule, mock; play*
mercor (1)   *to buy; pay*
mīrus, -a, -um   *wonderful*
modus, -ī   *manner*
odium, -ī   *hatred*
ōmen, ōminis (nt.)   *omen*
ops, opis (f.)   *wealth*
pallidus, -a, -um   *pale*
Phoenīx, Phoenīcis   *Phoenician*
pondus, ponderis (nt.)   *weight*
proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum   *to set out*
Pūnicus, -a, -um   *Phoenician; Punic*
Pygmaliōn, Pygmaliōnis   *Pygmalion*
purpureus, -a, -um   *purple*
quō   *whither? to where? why?*
reclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus   *to reveal*
retegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus   *to uncover*
scelus, sceleris (nt.)   *crime*
solum, -ī   *ground, soil*
somnus, -ī   *sleep, dream*
suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus   *to urge*
superō (1)   *to conquer; kill*
sūra, -ae   *calf (of leg)*
surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus   *to rise*
Sȳchaeus, -ī   *Sychaeus*
taurīnus, -a, -um   *of a bull*
thēsaurus, -ī   *treasure*
trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus   *to pierce*
tyrannus, -ī   *tyrant*
Tyrus, -ī (f.)   *Tyre*
uxor, uxōris (f.)   *wife*
vānus, -a, -um   *empty; vain*
-ve   *or*
via, -ae   *way; journey*

UNIT 10
Sequence of tenses

Latin structure

Subjunctive verbs are different from indicative verbs in that they ***do not express a definite time on their own***. Instead, they ***express time relative to the main verb upon which they depend***.

Contemporaneous and subsequent

For instance, the *present subjunctive* and the *imperfect subjunctive* do NOT express *present time* and *past time* respectively.

- Rather, they BOTH express an action that is contemporaneous with or sub-sequent to the main verb. Observe the following examples and note how the English translations of the subjunctive verbs differ from context to context.

  ○ For the use of **cum** meaning *because* see Unit 19.

Present subjunctive

Canō, cum mē *roget.*	*I sing, because he **asks** me.*
Canem, cum mē *roget.*	*I will sing, because he **will be asking** me.*
Cecinerō, cum mē *roget.*	*I will have sung, because he **will be asking** me.*

Imperfect subjunctive

Canēbam, cum me *rogāret.*	*I was singing, because he **was asking** me.*
Cecinī, cum mē *rogāret.*	*I sang, because he **was asking** me.*
Cecineram, cum mē *rogāret.*	*I had sung, because he **was asking** me.*

The present and imperfect subjunctives simply differ in that:

- the ***present subjunctive*** expresses an action that is contemporaneous with or subsequent to a *present* or *future* verb
- the ***imperfect subjunctive*** expresses an action that is contemporaneous with or subsequent to a *past* tense verb.

In instances where it is important that a subsequent action be distinguished from a contemporaneous action, the subjunctive of the periphrastic is used (see Unit 30).

Prior

Likewise, the *perfect subjunctive* and the *pluperfect subjunctive* do NOT express a past action and an action that occurred further in the past, respectively. Rather, they BOTH express an action that occurred prior to the main verb.

Perfect subjunctive

Canō, cum mē *rogāverit.*	*I sing, because he **asked** me.*
Canem, cum mē *rogāverit.*	*I will sing, because he **asked** me.*
Cecinerō, cum mē *rogāverit.*	*I will have sung, because he **asked** me.*

Pluperfect subjunctive

Canēbam, cum mē *rogāvisset.*	*I was singing, because he **had asked** me.*
Cecinī, cum mē *rogāvisset.*	*I sang, because he **had asked** me.*
Cecineram, cum mē *rogāvisset.*	*I had sung, because he **had asked** me.*

These two subjunctives simply differ in that:

- the ***perfect subjunctive*** expresses an action that is prior to a *present* or *future* verb
- the ***pluperfect subjunctive*** expresses an action that is prior to a *past* tense verb.

We can express this nicely in the following chart:

	Sequence of tenses		
	Indicative	*Subjunctive*	
Primary sequence	1 present 2 future 3 future perfect 4 perfect (*has ~ have*)	**contemporaneous:** **prior:**	present subjunctive perfect subjunctive
Secondary sequence	1 imperfect 2 pluperfect 3 perfect (*-ed*)	**contemporaneous:** **prior:**	imperfect subjunctive pluperfect subjunctive

- Since purposes clauses logically can involve only an action which is subsequent to or contemporaneous with that of the main verb, only the present and imperfect subjunctives are possible (Unit 7). The same holds for indirect commands (Unit 8).

- The imperative, since it exists only in the present tense, is in primary sequence.
- Note that the perfect tense is in both primary and secondary sequences. This reflects the fact that the perfect tense can express two different aspects. As a rule of thumb, when translated as *has* or *have* (e.g. *she has walked*), it is primary sequence but when translated without *has* or *have* (e.g. *she walked*), it is secondary sequence.

Exercise 1

Using the vocabulary largely from this unit's *Aeneid* section, provide the missing verbal forms for the following causal clauses. The person, number, and voice of the missing verbs are indicated.

Contemporaneous/Subsequent

1 Apulerāmus cycnōs līmenī, cum odōre nōn <u>*1ˢᵗ pl. active*</u>. (**egēre**)
2 Nuntiābunt ālēs cantum, cum nūlla nebula <u>*3ʳᵈ sg. active*</u> (**esse**)
3 Carpē diem, cum roseum mare <u>*3ʳᵈ sg. active*</u>. (**refulgēre**)
4 Verba annālium audīta sunt, cum hostēs dīvīnī <u>*3ʳᵈ pl. active*</u> ad Olympum. (**īre**)
5 Pēdibus revīsātis Asiam clāram, cum domum <u>*2ⁿᵈ pl. active*</u>. (**mōlīrī**)

Prior

6 Cum cervīx <u>*3ʳᵈ sg. active*</u>, frūstrā querēbar. (**calēre**)
7 Incūsus sum, cum augurium <u>*1ˢᵗ sg. active*</u>. (**interfārī**)
8 Reddam, cum verba annālium <u>*3ʳᵈ pl. passive*</u>. (**audīre**)
9 Asiam peragrās, cum sertum dīvīnum tibi <u>*3ʳᵈ sg. passive*</u>. (**dare**)
10 Hālābant ālēs, cum roseum odōrem <u>*3ʳᵈ pl. active*</u>. (**spīrāre**)

Exercise 2

Translate the sentences from Exercise 1.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latin. Use **cum** to translate *because*.

1 I was asking, because I did not remember.
2 Hasten (sg.) here, because we want to go.
3 She will tell the stories, because the citizens are gaining possession of the city.
4 They had not complained, because the storm had not threatened the swans.
5 The birds follow the stags, because they have huge horns.

Reading: Aeneas and Venus speak

Suspīrāns ille fēminae quaerentī tālibus verbīs dīxit trahēns īmō ā pectore vōcem:

"Ō dea, sī repetēns prīmā ab orīgine dīcere **pergam**, et annālēs nostrōrum labōrum tibi audīre **vacet**, ante perdīxerō Vesper Olympō clausō diem compōnet. Tempestās nōs Trōiā antīquā – sī Trōiae nōmen forte vestrās per aurēs īvit – per dīversa aequora vectōs suā forte ōrīs Libycīs appulit. Sum pius Aenēās et penātēs, quī ex hoste raptī sunt, mēcum in classe vehō. Fāmā super aethera nōtus sum. Ītaliam quaerō patriam et genus ab Iove summō. Bis dēnīs nāvibus Phrygium aequor cōnscendī, mātre deā viam mōnstrante. Data fāta secūtus sum. Vix septem convulsae ab undīs Eurōque supersunt. Ego ipse ignōtus, egēns, Libyae dēserta peragrō, ex Eurōpā atque ex **Asiā** pulsus sum."

Nec plūra querentem passa est Venus et sīc mediō in dolōre interfāta est:

"Quisquis es, haud, crēdō, invīsus caelestibus es. Tū, quī Tyriam urbem advenīs, aurās vītālēs carpis. Perge modo atque hinc tē rēgīnae ad līmina perfer! Namque tibi reducēs sociōs nūntiō et classem relātam, quae in tūtum portum ācta est versīs Aquilōnibus, nī frūstrā augurium docuērunt parentēs meī. Aspice bis sēnōs laetantēs agmine cycnōs, quōs lāpsa ab aetheriā apertō caelō āles Iovis turbābat. Nunc **terrās** ōrdine longō aut **capere** videntur aut terrās captās iam dēspectāre videntur. Ut reducēs illī lūdunt strīdentibus ālīs et in coetū polum cīnxērunt cantūsque dedērunt, haud aliter puppēsque tuae pūbēsque tuōrum aut portum tenet aut plēnō vēlō ōstia subit. Perge modo et dērige gressum tuum, quā tē dūcit via."

Dīxit et āvertēns roseā cervīce refulsit, ambrosiaeque comae dīvīnum odōrem vertice spīrāvērunt. Ad īmōs pedēs vestis dēflūxit, et vēra incessū dea patuit. Ubi ille mātrem agnōvit, secūtus est fugientem tālī vōce:

"Quid nātum totiēns, crūdēlis tū quoque, falsīs imāginibus lūdis? Cūr nōn datur mē dextram meam dextrae iungere ac vērās vōcēs audīre et reddere?"

Tālibus incūsat gressumque ad moenia tendit. At Venus obscūrō āere gradientēs **Aenēān** et **Achātēn** saepsit, et multō amictū nebulae circum fūdit, nē **quis** eōs cernere neu **quis** contingere posset mōlīrīve moram aut causās **veniendī** poscere. Ipsa laeta et sublīmis Paphum abit sēdēsque suās revīsit, ubi templum illī est centumque ārae **Sabaeō** tūre calent et sertīs recentibus hālant.

Notes

pergam – a subjunctive in a conditional sentence (see Unit 24)
vacet – another subjunctive in a conditional sentence (Unit 24)
Asiā = Trōiā
terrās capere – *to land*
Aenēān and **Achātēn** are accusative singulars of Greek nouns (see Unit 36)
quis = **aliquis**; following **nē**, the **ali-** of **aliquis** drops away
veniendī – *of coming*; this is a gerund (see Unit 28)
Sabaeō – *Sabaean* – from Arabia, known for its fragrances

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus   *to arrive*
āēr, āeris (m.)   *air; mist*
aetherius, -a, -um   *ethereal*
agnōscō, -ere, agnōvī, agnitus   *to recognize*
āles, ālitis (m/f)   *bird*
aliter   *otherwise*
ambrosius, -a, -um   *immortal*
amictus, -ūs   *clothing*
annālēs, annālium (m.)   *annals, stories*
appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [+ dat.]   *to drive to*
Aquilō, Aquilōnis (m.)   *north wind*
Asia, -ae   *Asia Minor*
aspiciō, -ere, aspexī, aspectus   *to look*
augurium, -ī   *augury*
aura, -ae   *air; sky, heaven; breath*
caleō, -ēre, caluī   *to be hot*
cantus, -ūs   *song*
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus   *to take, seize*
carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus   *to pluck; take*
cervīx, cervīcis (f.)   *neck*
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus   *to gird; surround*
coetus, -ūs   *assembly; flock*
cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus   *to climb; embark*
convellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus   *to shatter*
cūr   *why*
cycnus, -ī   *swan*
dēfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus   *to flow down*
dēnī, -ae, -a   *ten each*
dērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus   *to direct*
dēsertum, -ī   *desert*
dēspectō (1)   *to look down*
dīvīnus, -a, -um   *divine*
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus   *to lead; construct; draw; marry*
egeō, -ēre, eguī [+ abl./gen.]   *to need*
Eurōpa, -ae   *Europe*
falsus, -a, -um   *false*
frūstrā   *in vain*
gressus, -ūs   *step; gait*
hālō (1)   *to be fragrant*
hostis, hostis (m.)   *enemy*
incessus, -ūs   *gait*
incūsō (1)   *to reproach*
interfor (1)   *to interrupt*
laetor (1)   *to rejoice*
līmen, līminis (nt.)   *threshold; home*
modo   *only*
mōlior, -īrī, mōlītus   *to construct, build*
mora, -ae   *delay*

nātus, -ī *son*
nebula, -ae *cloud, fog*
neu *and not*
nōtus, -a, -um *known, famous*
nūntiō (1) *to announce*
obscūrus, -a, -um *dark*
odor, odōris (m.) *smell*
Olympus, -ī *Olympus*
ōrdō, ōrdinis (m.) *order, row*
Paphus, -ī (f.) *Paphos (a city on Cyprus)*
pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus *to push*
peragrō (1) *to travel through*
perdīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus *to finish speaking*
perferō, -ferre, pertulī, perlātus *to bear; carry through*
pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus *to proceed*
pēs, pedis (m.) *foot*
plēnus, -a, -um *full*
plūs, plūris *more*
poscō, -ere, poposcī *to demand; ask*
pūbēs, pūbis (f.) *youth*
queror, -ī, questus sum *to complain*
quid *what? why?*
quisquis, quidquid *whoever, whatever*
recēns, recentis *recent; fresh*
reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus *to reply; return*
redux, reducis *restored*
refulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī *to glisten*
relātus, -a, -um *brought back*
repetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītus *to retrace*
revīsō, -ere *to revisit; see again*
roseus, -a, -um *rosy*
Sabaeus, -a, -um *Sabaean*
saepiō, -īre, saepsī, saeptus *to enclose; fence in*
sēnī, -ae, -a *six each*
sertum, -ī *wreath*
spīrō (1) *to emit; breathe*
sublīmis, sublīme *high; uplifted*
supersum, -esse, -fuī *to remain; survive*
suspīrō (1) *to sigh*
templum, -ī *temple*
totiēns *so often*
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus *to draw, drag*
turbō (1) *to confuse, throw into confusion*
tūs, tūris (nt.) *incense*
vacō (1) *to have time*
verbum, -ī *word*
vērus, -a, -um *true*
Vesper, Vesperis (m.) *evening star; god of evening*
vestis, vestis (f.) *clothing*
vītālis, vītāle *vital*

UNIT 11
Indirect questions

Background

Indirect questions are questions which are triggered by some verb of the head, such as *think*, *wonder*, *know*, *ask*, and which are themselves introduced by a question word, which are underlined below. They are therefore similar to *indirect statement* (Unit 4), which is also introduced by a verb of the head:

> I wonder **_why_ he is going**.
> You said **_when_ they were going to come**.
> They want to know **_why_ she will be here today**.

These do not end in question marks since the main verb is not forming a question. Only the subordinate clause is a question.

Latin structure

Latin indirect questions consists of three elements:

1   a verb of the head, such as the following:

> **cōgitō (1)**   *to think*
> **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus**   *to say*
> **expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus**   *to explain*
> **nesciō, -īre, -scīvī, -scītus**   *to not know*
> **putō (1)**   *to think*
> **quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus**   *to ask*
> **rogō (1)**   *to ask*
> **sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus**   *to know*

2 a question word

- the same question words as are used in *direct questions* (Unit 26 of *IBL*)

  Adverbial question words

cūr *why*	**quō modō** *how*
quam *how*	**ubi** *where*
quam ob rem *why*	**unde** *from where, whence*
quandō *when*	**ut** *how*
quō *to where, whither*	**utrum . . . an** *whether . . . or*
quō *how*	

  ○ **-ne . . . an** is an alternate for **utrum . . . an**
  ○ when the second part of a double question is negative, **utrum . . . necne** is used instead of a direct question's **utrum . . . an nōn**

  Pronominal question words

quis, quid *who, what*	**uter, utra, utrum** *which (of two)*

  Adjectival question words

quālis, quāle *what kind of*	**quī, quae, quod** *which*
quantus, -a, -um *how great*	**quot** *how many*

  Yes/no questions

  num   *whether*

  ○ in English *indirect yes/no*-questions are introduced by *whether* and cannot be answered by *yes* or *no*

  I wonder whether you're going. [I am or *I'm not]*

  ○ **-ne** and **nōnne**, which both formed *yes/no* direct questions, do not occur in indirect questions

3 the verb in the subjunctive according to sequence of tenses (Unit 10)

Main verb	*Contemporaneous*	*Prior*
non-past	**present subjunctive**	**perfect subjunctive**
past	**imperfect subjunctive**	**pluperfect subjunctive**

- additionally, a subsequent action is expressed via a *periphrastic* construction (Unit 30)

Main verb	*Subsequent*
non-past	**present subjunctive periphrastic**
past	**imperfect subjunctive periphrastic**

Examples

1 Contemporaneous

a *Direct*:   **Quālis homō es?**
                    What kind of man are you?

   Indirect:
   non-past main verb: **Rogō quālis homō sīs.**   [primary sequence]
                    I ask what kind of man you are.
   past main verb: **Rogāvī quālis homō essēs.**   [secondary sequence]
                    I asked what kind of man you were.

b *Direct*:   **Fēminamne vidēs?**
                    Do you see the woman?

   Indirect:
   non-past main verb: **Rogō num fēminam videās.** [primary sequence]
                    I ask whether you see the woman.
   past main verb: **Rogāvī num fēminam vidērēs.** [secondary sequence]
                    I asked whether you saw the woman.

2 Prior

a *Direct*:   **Quem interfēcit?**
                    Whom did he kill?

   Indirect:
   non-past main verb: **Sciō quem interfēcerit.**   [primary sequence]
                    I know whom he killed.
   past main verb: **Scīvī quem interfēcisset.**   [secondary sequence]
                    I knew whom he had killed.

b *Direct*:   **Utrum eum spectāvistī an nōn?**
                    Did you see him or not?

   Indirect:
   non-past main verb: **Nescimus utrum eum**   [primary sequence]
                       spectāveris necne.
                    We do not know whether you saw him or not.
   past main verb: **Nescīvimus utrum eum**   [secondary sequence]
                       spectāvissēs necne.
                    We did not know whether you had seen him or not.

3 Subsequent (see Unit 30 for the forms)

  a *Direct*:   **Unde veniēs?**
                            From where will you come?

       Indirect:
       non-past main verb: **Nesciō unde venitūrus sīs.** [primary sequence]
                              I do not know where you will be coming from.
       past main verb: **Nescīvī unde venitūrus essēs.** [secondary sequence]
                              I did not know where you would be coming from.

  b *Direct*:   **Quot bella īnferent?**
                            How many wars will they make?

       Indirect:
       non-past main verb: **Sciunt quot bella**   [primary sequence]
                              illātūrī sint.
                              They know how many wars they will make.
       past main verb: **Scīvērunt quot bella**   [secondary sequence]
                              illātūrī essent.
                              They knew how many wars they would make.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

  1 nesciō quid scrībam tibi   (Cicero *ad Brut.*)
  2 quae quidem quibus abs tē initiāta sacrīs ac dēvōta   (Cicero *Catil.*)
     sit nesciō
  3 nunc sciō quid sit Amor   (Vergil *Ecl.*)
  4 rogāvī pervēnissentne Agrigentum   (Cicero *Ver.*)
  5 quaesīvit salvusne esset clipeus   (Cicero *Fin.*)
  6 quaerō ā tē cūr C. Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem.   (Cicero *Vat.*)
  7 quam ob rem vēnerim dīcam   (Plautus *Am.*)
  8 incertī quātenus Volerō exercēret victōriam   (Livy)
  9 Parthī trānsierint necne praeter tē videō dubitāre   (Cicero *Fam.*)
     nēminem
10 quaeritur, servus sit an līber, pecūniōsus an tenuis   (Cicero *Inv.*)

Exercise 2

Convert the following direct questions to indirect questions under the verb **rogō**
and translate. The vocabulary comes from this unit's reading excerpt.

  1 Quid Atrīdēs offert?
  2 Quod decus mīrāris?

3 Fūcīne īnstitērunt?
4 Cuius pecus aspectābāmus?
5 Quam ob rem mūrus adflīgātur?
6 In quō praesēpī est mel?
7 Quō pecus laetum ēdūcimus?
8 Quālia praemia mīrābilia senātus dat?
9 Utrum tēcta an māgālia dūxērunt?
10 Quot opulentae columnae sunt rēgiō tēctō?

Exercise 3

Convert the direct questions from Exercise 2 to indirect questions under the verb **rogāveram** and translate.

Exercise 4

Translate into Latin. Use **cōgitō (1)** *to think* and **sciō**, **scīre**, **scīvī**, **scītus** *to know* where required.

1 She thought why the thyme was being touched by the magistrate.
2 I know whom the sailors are waiting for.
3 I think I know whom the sailors waited for.
4 I knew what he had rolled up the hill.
5 I knew what he had said.
6 I have known what he had said.

Reading: Aeneas beholds Carthage

Corripuērunt viam intereā, quā sēmita mōnstrat. Iamque ascendēbant collem, quī **plūrimus** urbī imminet adversāsque arcēs dēsuper aspectat. Mīrātur mōlem Aenēās, māgālia quondam, mīrātur portās strepitumque et strāta viārum. Īnstant ardentēs Tyriī, pars **dūcere** mūrōs **mōlīrī**que arcem et manibus **subvolvere** saxa, pars **optāre** locum tēctō et **conclūdere** sulcō. Iūra magistrātūsque **legunt** sānctumque senātum. Hīc portūs aliī effodiunt, hīc alta fundāmenta theātrō aliī locant, immānēsque columnās rūpibus excīdunt, scaenīs futūrīs decora alta.

Quālis labor in aestāte novā per flōrea rūra apēs sub sōle exercet, **cum** aliī adultōs fētūs gentis ēdūcunt, aut **cum** aliī līquentia mella stīpant et dulcī nectare cellās distendunt, aut onera venientum apium alterārum accipiunt. Aliī agmine factō fūcōs, ignāvum pecus, ā praesēpibus arcent. Fervet opus redolentque thymō fragrantia mella.

"Ō fortūnātī, quōrum iam moenia surgunt!" Aenēās ait et fastīgia urbis suspicit. Īnfert sē saeptus nebulā – mīrābile **dictū** – per mediōs, miscetque virīs neque cernitur **ūllī**.

Lūcus in urbe mediā fuit, laetissimus umbrae, in quō locō prīmum iactātī undīs et turbine Poenī effōdērunt signum, quod rēgia Iūnō mōnstrāverat: caput ācris equī. Sīc nam dīxerat Venus futūram esse in bellō ēgregiam et facilem **vīctū** per saecula gentem. Hīc templum Iūnōnī ingēns Sīdōnia Dīdō condēbat, dōnīs opulentum et nūmine dīvae. Aerea līmina nexaque aere trabēs gradibus surgēbant, foribus aēnīs cardō strīdēbat. Hōc in lūcō prīmum nova rēs oblāta timōrem lēniit. Hīc prīmum Aenēās audet salūtem spērāre et adflīctīs rēbus melius cōnfīdit. Namque sub ingentī templō lūstrat singula, rēgīnam opperiēns. Dum mīrātur quae fortūna urbī sit ut artificum manūs labōrem intrā sē faciat, videt Īliacās pugnās **ex ōrdine** – bella iam fāmā tōtum per orbem vulgāta – Atrīdās Priamumque et saevum **ambōbus** Achillem.

Cōnstitit Aenēās et lacrimāns inquit:

"**Quis** iam locus, Achātē, quae regiō in terrīs nōn plēna nostrī labōris est? Ēn Priamus! Sunt hīc etiam sua praemia laudī. Sunt lacrimae rērum, et mortālia mentem tangunt. Solvē metūs! Feret haec fāma tibi aliquam salūtem."

Sīc ait.

Notes

plūrimus – *imposing*
dūcere, **mōlīrī**, **subvolvere**, **optāre**, and **conclūdere** – these are infinitives used in place
   of a finite verb in order to give more excitement to the scene being described
legunt – this verb is understood twice, the first time with the meaning *read*, the second
   time with the meaning *choose*
cum – *when* (see Unit 21)
dictū – *to say*; this is a supine (see Unit 32)
ūllī – this is a dative of agent which is usually used with the passive periphrastic (see
   Unit 30) but can occur with other passive verbal forms as here.
vīctū – *to conquer*; this is a supine (see Unit 32). The phrase **facilem vīctū** refers to
   their future economic success.
ex ōrdine – *in a row*
ambōbus – a dative plural (see Unit 35)
quis – this is for the expected interrogative adjective **quī**

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

adflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus   *to crush*
adultus, -a, -um   *adult*
aereus, -a, -um   *of bronze*
aliī . . . aliī   *some . . . others*
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod   *some, any*
alter, altera, alterum [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**]   *other, another*
ambō, ambae, ambō   *both*
apis, apis (f.)   *bee*
ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsus   *to be eager; burn*
artifex, artificis (m.)   *artist; contriver*

ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus   *to ascend*
aspectō (1)   *to look at*
Atrīdēs, Atrīdae   *son of Atreus (Agamemnon or Menelaus)*
cardō, cardinis (m.)   *hinge; pivot*
cella, -ae   *storeroom, cell*
collis, collis (m.)   *hill*
columna, -ae   *column*
conclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus   *to enclose*
cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum   *to trust in*
corripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus   *to snatch; hasten along*
decus, decoris (nt.)   *ornament*
distendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus   *to stretch*
dōnum, -ī   *gift*
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus   *to lead out; raise*
effodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus   *to dig out*
ēgregius, -a, -um   *illustrious*
ēn   *behold*
excīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus   *to cut out*
exerceō, -ēre, -ercuī, -ercitus   *to keep busy*
facilis, facile   *easy*
ferveō, -ēre, ferbuī   *to bustle*
fētus, -ūs   *offspring*
flōreus, -a, -um   *flowery*
foris, foris (f.)   *gate, door*
fortūnātus, -a, -um   *fortunate*
fūcus, -ī   *drone*
fundāmentum, -ī   *foundation*
gradus, -ūs   *step*
ignāvus, -a, -um   *lazy*
Īliacus, -a, -um   *Trojan*
īnstō, -āre, īnstitī   *to work hard; press hard/on*
intrā [+ acc.]   *within*
lacrimō (1)   *to cry*
laetus, -a, -um   *happy; fertile*
laus, laudis (f.)   *praise*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus   *to choose*
lēniō, -īre, lēnīvī, lēnītus   *to soothe*
līquēns, līquentis   *liquid*
lūcus, -ī   *sacred grove*
lūstrō (1)   *to scan (with eyes)*
māgālia, -ium   *huts*
magistrātus, -ūs   *magistrate*
mel, mellis (nt.)   *honey*
mīrābilis, mīrābile   *wonderful*
mīror (1)   *to admire*
mūrus, -ī   *city wall*
nam   *indeed*
nectar, nectaris (nt.)   *nectar*

nectō, -ere, nexuī, nexus *to bind*
offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus *to offer*
onus, oneris (nt.) *load*
opperior, -īrī, -peritus sum *to wait for*
opulentus, -a, -um *rich*
pecus, pecoris (nt.) *herd*
praemium, -ī *reward*
praesēpe, praesēpis (nt.) *hive*
Priamus, -ī *Priam*
pugna, -ae *fight*
quondam *once; at one time*
redoleō, -ēre, -doluī *to smell of*
regiō, regiōnis (f.) *region*
rēgius, -a, -um *royal*
rūs, rūris (nt.) *countryside*
salūs, salūtis (f.) *safety*
sānctus, -a, -um *holy*
sēmita, -ae *path*
senātus, -ūs *senate*
Sīdōnius, -a, -um *Phoenician, Sidonian*
signum, -ī *sign*
singulī, -ae, -a *single; each*
spērō (1) *to hope*
stīpō (1) *to pack together, store*
strātum, -ī *pavement*
strepitus, -ūs *noise*
subvolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus *to roll uphill*
sulcus, -ī *furrow*
suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus *to look at; suspect*
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus *to touch*
tēctum, -ī *house; hall*
theātrum, -ī *theater*
thymum, -ī *thyme*
trabs, trabis (f.) *beam*
vulgō (1) *to spread*

UNIT 12
Potential and optative subjunctives

Background

Up till now we have seen the subjunctive used only in subordinate or dependent clauses; however, it may also occur in main clauses. Such subjunctives are termed *independent subjunctives*. This unit and Unit 18 offer four of the most common uses of such a subjunctive.

Latin structure

Potential subjunctive

The present subjunctive can be used to express the possibility that something *may*, *would*, or *should* occur:

Rōmam *veniat.*   *He may come to Rome.*
                      He would come to Rome.
                      He should come to Rome.

The perfect subjunctive can also be used with no difference in meaning:

Rōmam *vēnerit.*   *He may come to Rome.*
                      He would come to Rome.
                      He should come to Rome.

The imperfect subjunctive expresses something which is now impossible:

Rōmam venīret.   *He might have come to Rome (but he didn't).*
                      He would have come to Rome (but he didn't).
                      He should have come to Rome (but he didn't).

The negative is always expressed by **nōn**, regardless of the tense:

Rōmam nōn veniat.	*He may not come/would not come/should not come to Rome.*
Rōmam nōn vēnerit.	*He may not come/would not come/should not come to Rome.*
Rōmam nōn venīret.	*He might not have/would not have/should not have come to Rome.*

Note

● Related to the potential subjunctive is the *deliberative subjunctive*. It effectively is a potential subjunctive inside of a direct question:

Quō eāmus?	*Where should we go to?*
Cūr eum nōn aedificārent?	*Why would they not have built it?*

Optative subjunctive

The present subjunctive is used to express a wish:

Rōmam veniat!
May he come to Rome! If only he would come to Rome!

● **utinam** or **ut** may accompany the clause:

Utinam Rōmam veniat!
May he come to Rome! If only he would come to Rome!

Ut Rōmam veniat!
May he come to Rome! If only he would come to Rome!

● The imperfect subjunctive is used to express a regret that something is not currently the case:

Utinam Rōmam venīret.
If only he were coming to Rome (but he's not).

● The pluperfect subjunctive expresses a regret that something was not the case in the past:

Utinam Rōmam vēnisset.	*If only he had come to Rome.*

● The negative for all tenses is **nē**, which may or may not be accompanied by **utinam**:

Nē Rōmam veniat!	*May he not come to Rome!*
Nē Rōmam venīret.	*If only he were not coming to Rome.*
Utinam nē Rōmam vēnisset.	*If only he had not come to Rome.*

Advanced topics

An interesting use of the potential subjunctive is to express an impersonal con-
struction whose verb is *can* or *could*. It is most common with verbs associated
with the mind, such as *think* (**putāre**), *perceive* (**cernere**), and *see* (**vidēre**). Since
these are impersonals, it is best to translate them with the English impersonal
pronoun *one* and not literally as *you*.

- A present subjunctive in the 2nd sg. expresses *can*:

    Oppidum videās   *One can see the town.*

- An imperfect subjunctive in the 2nd sg. expresses *could*:

    Oppidum vidērēs.   *One could see the town.*

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	Ut illum dī perdant!	(Gellius)
2	Utinam coma rēgia fīam!	(Catullus)
3	cuperem vultum vidēre tuum	(Cicero *Att.*)
4	stet haec urbs praeclara	(Cicero *Mil.*)
5	Utinam revīviscat frāter aliamque classem in Siciliam dūcat!	(Gellius)
6	Utinam hinc abierit malam crucem!	(Plautus *Poen.*)
7	Utinam iam vēnerit!	(Pliny the Younger)
8	Dī facerent ut mē summā dē puppe vidērēs	(Ovid *Ep.*)
9	Utinam rēs pūblica stētisset nec in hominēs cupidōs incidisset!	(Cicero *Off.*)
10	caedī discipulōs minimē velim	(Quintilian)

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin.

1 The female warrior might have tasted the river.
2 The leader, lying down on his back, should have seen the dark clouds.
3 One can mingle.
4 If only the breathless groan had not been heard!
5 If only the river were not empty (but it is)!
6 The Trojan women should not expose their hair.

7 If only the dust had not been dragged into the tents!
8 May the unlucky ones not be sold!
9 Why would they have battled?
10 One could humbly fasten the belt under one's hair.

Exercise 3

Change all singular nouns to plural and all plural nouns to singular in Exercise 2, making all other relevant changes. Do not change proper names, however.

Reading: Aeneas sees a painting of the Trojan War

Aenēās animum pictūrā inānī pascit multa gemēns. Largō flūmine vultum ūmectat.

Namque vidēbat utī hāc bellantēs circum Pergama Graecī hāc fugerent, hāc Trōiāna iuventūs premeret, hāc Achillēs cristātus **Phryges** currū īnstāret. Nec procul hinc lacrimāns Rhēsī tentōria niveīs vēlīs agnōscit, quae in prīmō somnō prōdita Tȳdīdēs cruentus multā caede vastābat, quī ardentēs equōs āvertit in castra priusquam pābula Trōiae gustāvissent Xanthumque bibissent.

Parte in aliā fugiēns Trōilus, īnfēlīx puer et impār Achillī congressus, āmissīs armīs fertur equīs. Resupīnus currū inānī haeret, lōra tenēns tamen. Huic cervīxque comaeque trahuntur per terram, et versā hastā pulvis īnscrībitur.

Intereā **Īliades** crīnibus passīs ad templum nōn aequae Palladis ībant peplumque ferēbant suppliciter. Trīstēs **pectora** palmīs **tūnduntur**. Dīva āversa solō fīxōs oculōs tenēbat.

Ter circum Īliacōs mūrōs Achillēs raptāverat Hectora exanimumque corpus aurō vendēbat. Tum vērō ingentem gemitum dat pectore ab īmō, ut spolia, ut currūs, utque ipsum corpus amīcī tendentemque manūs Priamum cōnspexit inermīs manibus.

Sē quoque permixtum prīncipibus cum Achīvīs agnōvit, ēōāsque aciēs et arma nigrī Memnonis. Dūcit Amāzonidum agmina lūnātīs peltīs Penthesilēa furēns. Ardet mediīs in mīlibus, subnectēns aurea cingula exsertae mammae. Bellātrīx et virgō audet virīs concurrere.

Notes

Phyrges – this is a nominative pl. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
Īliades – this is a nominative pl. of a Greek noun (Unit 36)
pectora – is a Greek accusative (see Unit 30 of *IBL*)
tūnduntur – this is a passive with middle meaning, indicating that the subject is doing something for their own benefit.

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

aciēs, -ēī *battle line; line of troops; edge*
aequus, -a, -um *equal; favorable*
Amāzonis, Amāzonidis (f.) *Amazon*
amīcus, -ī *friend*
aureus, -a, -um *golden*
bellātrīx, bellātrīcis (f.) *warrior*
bellō (1) *to battle*
bibō, -ere, bibī *to drink*
caedēs, caedis (f.) *slaughter*
cingulum, -ī *girdle, belt*
concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus *to fight with*
congredior, -ī, -gressus sum *to fight with*
crīnis, crīnis (m.) *hair*
cristātus, -a, -um *plumed*
ēōus, -a, -um *eastern*
exanimus, -a, -um *breathless*
exserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus *to expose*
flūmen, flūminis (nt.) *river*
gemitus, -ūs *groan*
gustō (1) *to taste*
hāc *here*
haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesus *to cling to*
hasta, -ae *spear*
Īlias, Īliadis (f.) *Trojan woman*
impār, imparis *unequal*
inānis, ināne *empty*
inermis, inerme *unarmed*
īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis *unhappy, unlucky*
īnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus *to mark*
īnstō, -āre, īnstitī *to work hard; press hard/on*
iuventūs, iuventūtis (f.) *youth*
largus, -a, -um *copious*
lūnātus, -a, -um *moon-shaped*
mamma, -ae *breast*
Memnōn, Memnonis (m.) *Memnon*
mīlle [indeclinable in singular; pl: mīlia, -um] (nt.) *thousand*
niger, nigra, nigrum *black*
niveus, -a, -um *snowy*
pābulum, -ī *fodder*
pandō, -ere, pandī, passus *to spread out; open; dishevel*
pascō, -ere, pāvī, pāstus *to graze*
pelta, -ae *light shield*
Penthesilēa, -ae *Penthesilea*
peplus, -ī *gown*
Pergama, -ōrum *Pergama (Troy's citadel)*
permisceō, -ēre, -miscuī, -mixtus *to mingle*

Phryx, Phrygis   *Trojan, Phrygian*
pictūra, -ae   *picture*
prīnceps, prīncipis (m.)   *leader*
procul   *far; from far off*
pulvis, pulveris (m.)   *dust*
raptō (1)   *to drag*
resupīnus, -a, -um   *lying down on one's back*
Rhēsus, -ī   *Rhesus (ally of the Trojans)*
subnectō, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus   *to fasten under*
suppliciter   *humbly*
tentōrium, -ī   *tent*
Trōilus, -ī   *Troilus*
tundō, -ere, tutudī, tūnsus   *to beat*
ūmectō (1)   *to wet*
utī   *as, when; how*
vastō (1)   *to ravage, lay waste*
vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditus   *to sell*
vērō   *truly*
Xanthus, -ī   *Xanthus River*

UNIT 13
Result clauses I

Background

A *result clause* states an action or state which is the direct consequence of another action or state.

Example

> John is so happy **that he is singing a song**.
> The woman ran so quickly **that she won the race**.
> He works in this way **that he gets nothing done**.
> The weather was such **that the sailors could not set out**.

In English result clauses (in bold above) are:

- oftentimes signaled by an adverb or adjective of degree such as *so*, *such*, or *in this way* in the clause immediately preceding the result clause itself
- introduced by *that*

  - if *that* can be replaced by the clunky *with the result that* and the meaning stays the same, then we have a result clause:

    > John is so happy **with the result that** he is singing a song.
    > The woman ran so quickly **with the result that** she won the race.
    > He works in this way **with the result that** he gets nothing done.
    > The weather was such **with the result that** the sailors could not set out.

These sentences are not examples of purpose clauses because the subsequent actions (i.e. *singing a song, winning the race, his getting nothing done, sailors not being able to set out*) are <u>not</u> intentionally sought. These results simply arise <u>because of the way the world happens to be</u>, as described in the main clause (i.e. *John is so happy, the woman ran so quickly, he works in this way, the weather was such*). Purpose clauses, on the other hand, arise <u>because their result is intentionally sought</u>. Purpose clause versions of the above would be something along the lines of the following:

*John is becoming happy **so that he may sing a song**.*
*The woman tries to run quickly **to win the race**.*
*He works in this way **so that he doesn't have to get anything done**.*

Namely, in order to be able to sing a song, John needs to be happy. Therefore, he is trying to make himself happy so that he may be able to sing. The woman really wants to win the race so the only thing she can do is try to run quickly. Finally, the worker may hate his job and as such does not wish to do any work, yet still get paid of course. So what can he do? Well, he can work in such a way (presumably a very ineffective way that gives the impression to his bosses that he's actually not dawdling) that he ends up not having to do anything.

Observe that the fourth example of a result clause can be converted into a purpose clause only if *the weather* is personified, since this is the only way it can be understood to intentionally strive after a certain goal. This personification is indicated by inserting *(god)* below.

*The weather (god) was such **so that the sailors could not set out**.*

Namely, the weather god was purposefully acting in such a nasty way in order to prevent the sailors from being able to leave.

Latin structure

Result clauses in Latin have the same basic blueprint as their English counterparts:

- the clause preceding the result clause oftentimes contains an adverb or adjective of degree, the most common being:

Adverbs		*Adjectives*	
adeō	*so*	**tālis, tāle**	*such, of such a kind*
ita	*so*	**tantus, -a, -um**	*so great*
sīc	*thus, in this way*	**tot** [indeclinable]	*so many*
tam	*so*		
tantopere	*so much*		
tantum	*so much*		

- the result clause itself is introduced by **ut**

  ○ in the negative it is still introduced by **ut**, but accompanied by **nōn**

    ■ instead of **nōn** another negative word may occur instead:

ut . . . nēmō	*that . . . no one*
ut . . . nihil	*that . . . nothing*
ut . . . nūllus, -a, -um	*that . . . no, none*
ut . . . numquam	*that . . . never*

- the verb in the result clause is in the subjunctive

  ○ in the present subjunctive when the main verb is in primary sequence (Unit 10)
  ○ in the imperfect subjunctive when the main verb is in secondary sequence

    ■ the past subjunctives (*perfect* and *pluperfect*) are not possible since a result cannot precede the action which prepcipitated it

      □ see the additional comments below, however, for a special use of the *perfect subjunctive* in secondary sequence in result clauses.

Example

Canis tam grandis est ut cīvēs oppidī terreat.   [primary sequence]
The dog is so big that it frightens the citizens of the town.

Canis tam grandis erat ut cīvēs oppidī terrēret.   [secondary sequence]
The dog was so big that it frightened the citizens of the town.

Tempestās tālis fuit ut nāvis nōn vēla daret.   [secondary sequence]
The storm was of such a kind that the ship did not set sail.

Fūr tam tacitē ambulāvit ut nihil audīrem.   [secondary sequence]
The thief walked so quietly that I heard nothing.

Puer puellam tantum amat ut flōrēs   [primary sequence]
pulcherrimōs eī emat.
The boy loves the girl so much that he buys her the most beautiful flowers.

Additional comments

The perfect subjunctive is often used in place of the imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence to emphasize the completion and/or present result of a past action. Note that this technically breaks the sequence of tenses since the perfect subjunctive is used with past tense verbs in this construction.

- The difference in English is subtle and can be rendered, if at all, only by adding adverbs such as *actually* or *really*

  Puer puellam tantum amāvit ut flōrēs eī emeret.
  The boy loved the girl so much that he bought her flowers.

  Puer puellam tantum amāvit ut flōrēs eī ēmerit.
  The boy loved the girl so much that he (actually) bought her flowers.

- Since result clauses share certain characteristics with purpose clauses (Unit 7) in Latin, it is useful to lay out their similarities and differences.

Similarities

- both introduced by **ut** in the positive
- both demand the subjunctive

Differences

- the negative is introduced by . . .

  ○ *purpose*: **nē**
  ○ *result*: **ut . . . nōn**

- degree adverbs/adjectives are often present in preceding clause . . .

  ○ *purpose*: no
  ○ *result*: yes

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 tantum āfuit ab īnsolentiā glōriae ut commiserātus sit   (Nepos *Ag.*)
   fortūnam Graeciae
2 tanta vīs probitātis est, ut eam vel in hoste etiam   (Cicero *Amic.*)
   dīligāmus
3 tantum aberat ut bīnōs scrīberent   (Cicero *Att.*)
4 tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum   (Caesar *Gall.*)
   cursum tenēre posset
5 nēmo adeō ferus est ut nōn mītēscere possit.   (Horace *Ep.*)
6 hostēs repentē celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium   (Caesar *Gal.*)
   pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur
7 in quō tantopere apud nostrōs iūstitia culta est, ut eī   (Cicero *Off.*)
   cīvitātum patrōnī essent

8 veteris Antistī tālis animus est in rem pūblicam ut   (Cicero *ad Brut.*)
   nōn dubitem
9 tanta erat hōrum celeritās ut equōrum cursum   (Caesar *Gal.*)
   adaequārent
10 quoniam sunt ita multī ut carcer eōs capere nōn possit (Catullus)

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin. Some sentences contain purpose clauses, others contain result clauses.

1 We will strike the crowd so that the dancers are confused.
2 Diana sat down on the throne so that she could read the laws.
3 The joy of the dancers was so great that the Trojan women were astonished.
4 I watch thus, that mourning Diana stands agape.
5 In the presence of Neptune they gather to beseech him for joy.
6 Plunder (pl.) the wonderful supplies so that they are astonished.
7 His haughtiness towered over the wretched, that there was no joy.
8 May we carry away the throne in this way, that the crowd rejoices.
9 Is it so just, that the wretched are kept off from the riverbank?
10 If only we join together, so that the enemies may leave the riverbank.

Exercise 3

Go back to Exercise 2 and change all non-present tense indicative verbs in main clauses to the present tense. If a main clause verb was already present tense indicative, then make it pluperfect. Which subordinate clauses are affected by these changes to their main clauses?

Reading: Aeneas sees his comrades before Dido

Dum haec mīranda Dardaniō ab Aenēā videntur, dum stupet obtūtūque haeret dēfīxus in ūnō, rēgīna ad templum, formā pulcherrima Dīdō, incessit magnā iuvenum catervā stīpante. Quālis in Eurōtae rīpīs aut per iuga Cynthī exercet Dīāna chorōs, quam mīlle **Oreādes** hinc sequuntur atque hinc glomerantur. Illa pharetram fert in umerō gradiēnsque deās superēminet omnēs. Lātōnae tacitum pectus pertemptant gaudia. Tālis erat Dīdō. Laeta sē ferēbat per mediōs virōs īnstāns operī rēgnīsque futūrīs.

Tum in foribus dīvae, mediā in testūdine templī, saepta armīs soliōque altē subnixa resēdit. Iūra dabat lēgēsque virīs, operumque labōrem partibus aequābat iūstīs aut sorte trahēbat, **cum** subitō Aenēās in concursū magnō videt **Anthea** Sergestumque fortemque Cloanthum Teucrōrumque aliōs, quōs āter turbō in

aequore dispulerat penitusque ad aliās āvēxerat ōrās. Obstipuit ipse, simul percussus Achātēs laetitiāque metūque. Avidī coniungere dextrās ardēbant, sed rēs incognita animōs turbat. Dissimulant et amictī nūbe cavā speculantur quae fortūna virīs sit, in quō litōre classem linquant, et quid veniant. Cūnctīs ē nāvibus nam lēctī ībant ōrantēs veniam et templum clāmōre petēbant.

Postquam intrōgressī sunt et cōram eā cōpia **fandī** data est, maximus Īlioneus sīc placidō pectore coepit:

"Ō rēgīna, cui Iuppiter novam urbem condere dedit et iūstitiā gentēs superbās frēnāre, Trōes tē miserī, ventīs circum maria omnia vectī, ōrāmus. Prohibē īnfandōs ignēs ā nāvibus, parce piō genere et aspice propius rēs nostrās! Nōn nōs aut ferrō Libycōs penātēs populāre vēnimus, aut raptās praedās ad lītora vertere. Nōn ea vīs in animō est nec tanta superbia victīs est."

Notes

Orēades – this is the accusative pl. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
cum – *when* (see Unit 21)
Anthea – this is the accusative sg. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
fandī – *of speaking*; this is the genitive of the gerund (see Unit 28)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

amiciō, -īre, amicuī, amictus   *to wrap*
āvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus   *to carry away*
avidus, -a, -um   *eager*
caterva, -ae   *crowd*
chorus, -ī   *chorus, dancer*
coepiō, -ere, coepī, coeptus   *to begin*
concursus, -ūs   *crowd*
coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus   *to join together*
cōpia, -ae   *abundance, opportunity; forces; supplies*
cōram [+ abl.]   *in the presence of*
Cynthus, -ī   *Mount Cynthus*
Dardanius, -a, -um   *Trojan, Dardanian*
Dīāna, -ae   *Diana*
dispellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus   *to scatter*
dissimulō (1)   *to hide*
Eurōtās, Eurōtae (m.)   *Eurotas River*
gaudium, -ī   *joy*
glomerō (1)   *to gather*
incognitus, -a, -um   *unknown*
intrōgredior, -ī, intrōgressus sum   *to enter*
iugum, -ī   *yoke; mountain summit*
iūstitia, -ae   *justice*
iūstus, -a, -um   *just, fair*
laetitia, -ae   *joy*
Lātōna, -ae   *Latona (mother of Diana)*

lēx, lēgis (f.)   *law; decree*
linquō, -ere, līquī, lictus   *to leave*
maximus, -a, -um   *greatest*
mīrandus, -a, -um   *wonderful*
miser, -a, -um   *wretched, unfortunate*
obstipēscō, -ere, -stipuī   *to stand agape*
obtūtus, -ūs   *view*
Orēas, Orēadis (f.)   *Oreas; mountain nymph*
ōrō (1)   *to beseech*
percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus   *to strike*
pertemptō (1)   *to pervade, seize*
populō (1)   *to plunder*
prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus   *to keep off; prohibit*
propius   *nearer*
rēs, reī (f.)   *thing; state; happening*
resīdō, -ere, -sēdī   *to sit down*
rīpa, -ae   *riverbank*
Sergestus, -ī   *Sergestus*
solium, -ī   *throne*
speculor (1)   *to watch*
stupeō, -ēre, stupuī   *to be astonished*
subnixus, -a, -um   *resting on*
superbia, -ae   *haughtiness*
superēmineō, -ēre   *to tower over*
tacitus, -a, -um   *silent*
testūdō, testūdinis (f.)   *dome*
venia, -ae   *grace*

UNIT 14
Result clauses II

There are two special types of result clauses which are used in specific circumstances: *relative clauses of result* and *substantive clauses of result*. *Relative clauses of result* engender, in addition, a closely related construction termed *relative clauses of characteristic*.

Relative clause of result

Background

As the name suggests, this construction is a fusion of *relative clauses* (Unit 25 of *IBL*) and *result clauses* (Unit 13). It is used to state a result which follows from a non-specific, indefinite antecedent which is usually negative:

> *No one is so deaf **who does not hear that**.*
> *Nothing was so dreadful **which was not destroyed**.*

- Observe that the antecedents are non-specific, negative entities: *no one* and *nothing*
- Observe that an adverb of degree, in these examples *so*, is present
- These sentences could be reformulated to highlight their result nature by using the clunky *with the result that*:

> *No one is so deaf **with the result that he does not hear that**.*
> *Nothing was so dreadful **with the result that it was not destroyed**.*

Latin structure

The structure of these clauses is identical to that of result clauses with the only difference being that a relative pronoun (e.g. **quī**, **quae**, **quod**) is used instead of **ut**.

- The elements of relative result clauses and their ultimate sources are:

Elements	*Source*
antecedent is in main clause	relative clause
relative pronoun introduces subordinate clause	relative clause
adverb/adjective of degree is in the main clause	result clause
verb of subordinate clause is *subjunctive*	result clause

Nēmō tam surdus est quī illud nōn audiat. [primary sequence]
No one is so deaf who does not hear that.

Nihil adeō terribilis erat quod nōn dēlērētur. [secondary sequence]
Nothing was so dreadful which was not destroyed.

Nēmō sīc currit quī nōn adveniat. [primary sequence]
No one runs in this way who does not arrive.

Relative clause of characteristic

Closely related to this type of clause is the *relative clause of characteristic*. Such clauses are generally used without adverbs or adjectives of degree and they function to emphasize the qualities or characteristics typical of the class to which the antecedent belongs. For instance, in the following sentence it is being stated that there are men who belong to the type of people who are characterized as living well. It is making a claim about a type of men who exist and not making any actual or factual claim with respect to specific situations.

Sunt quī bene vīvant
There are men (of the kind) who live well.

In order to state that there are men who actually live well and to set one up for perhaps a list of specific situations which make this claim factually true, the indicative would be used:

Sunt quī bene vīvunt.
There are men who live well.

The antecedent in this construction is often indefinite, as is the case with relative clauses of result, though this is not always the situation. In fact, the example just given could also be understood to refer to a specific group of men:

Sunt quī bene vīvant
They are (the kind of) men who live well.

The following example can be interpreted only definitely:

Aenēās nauta est quī saepe vēla det.
Aeneas is the kind of sailor who sets sail often.

The subjunctive here again is stressing the type of sailor that Aeneas is and not making any claims as to the type of sailor that he actually or factually is. The indicative **vēla dat**, on the other hand, does focus on the fact that he does in fact sail often.

> **Aenēās nauta est quī saepe vēla dat.**
> *Aeneas is the sailor who sets sail often.*

As seen in the translations, the clunky *the kind of* is a useful way to mark clearly relative clauses of characteristic in English.

Substantive clause of result

Background

In their most basic type, dealt with in the previous chapter, result clauses are a type of **adverb** modifying a verbal phrase (underlined in the following).

> *The thief walked so quietly **that I heard nothing**.*
> *The boy loves the girl so much **that he buys her the most**
>   **beautiful flowers**.*

- The result clauses (in bold) in these instances are describing the effects of the verbal phrases *walking so quietly* and *loving the girl so much*.

In relative result clauses, the result clause is acting as an **adjective** modifying the antecedent (underlined in the following).

> *No one is so deaf **who does not hear that**.*
> *Nothing was so dreadful **which was not destroyed**.*

In a third type of result clause (substantive clauses of result), the clause acts as a **noun**, filling in as either the *subject* or the *direct object* of a verbal phrase (underlined in the following).

Examples

	Role of result clause
*It happens **that I often miss my train**.*	[subject]
*It is possible **that the queen will visit**.*	[subject]
*John sees to it **that he writes his mother a letter**.*	[object]
*Kate brings it about **that we all have a wonderful visit**.*	[object]

- In English *it* in the main clause is a placeholder for the result clause, indicating what its nominal function is.

  ○ In the first two sentences the result clause is the subject of *happens* and *is*, while it is the object of *sees to* and *brings about* in the second two sentences.
  ○ The presence of *it* is a peculiarity of English and not of Latin.
  ○ The use of result clauses as subjects is even clearer when the result clause precedes the verb, obviating the need for the placeholder *it*:

    That I often miss my train *happens.*
    That the queen will visit *is possible.*

Latin structure

The main clause contains one of a few specific verbs.

Result clause as subject

accidit ut	*it happens that*	**accidit ut**	*it happened that*
contingit ut	*it happens that*	**contigit ut**	*it happened that*
fit ut	*it comes about that*	**factum est ut**	*it came about that*
restat ut	*it remains that*	**restitit ut**	*it remained that*
sequitur ut	*it follows that*	**secūtum est**	*it followed that*

- These verbs all occur in the 3rd person singular form, since their subject is the result clause itself, which is 3rd singular.
- Note that no adverb or adjective of degree is present in the main clause as was the case with other types of result clauses.

Result clause as object

efficere ut	*to bring it about that, make it that*
facere ut	*to bring it about that, make it that*
perficere ut	*to bring it about that, make it that*

The result clause has the usual structure:

- it is introduced by **ut** in the positive and **ut ... nōn** or some other negative element in the negative

  ○ **efficere** and **facere** may take **nē** and not **ut nōn**

- its verb is in the subjunctive following sequence of tenses (Unit 10).

Accidit ut mīlitēs in oppidum gradiantur. [primary sequence]
It happens that the soldiers step into the town.

Factum est ut populus rēgem interficeret. [secondary sequence]
It came about that the people killed the king.

Mīlitēs effēcērunt ut nēmō rēgem invenīret. [secondary sequence]
The soldiers brought about that no one would find the king.

Rēgīnae oppidōrum faciunt ut cibus cīvibus sit. [primary sequence]
The queens of the towns make it that the citizens have food.

Synopsis of result clauses

The elements and function of the three types of result clauses are summarized below:

	Elements		
Type	*Main clause*	*Result clause*	*Function*
Result clause	degree adv./adj.	**ut** **ut . . . nōn** subjunctive	adverb
Relative Result Clause	antecedent degree adv./adj.	relative pronoun subjunctive	adjective
Substantive Result Clause	specific verb	**ut** **ut . . . nōn** subjunctive	noun

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 accidit ut nēmō tribūnus plēbis exsisteret (Cicero *ad Brut.*)
2 sīn hoc persaepe accidit ut et factōs aliquōs et (Cicero *Planc.*)
    nōn factōs esse mīrēmur
3 ita fit ut adsint proptereā quod officium sequuntur (Cicero *S. Rosc.*)
4 ita fit ut ego, quī tēla dēpellere et vulneribus (Cicero *Quinct.*)
    medērī dēbeam, tum id facere cōgar
5 eō factum est ut ad tē Lupus sine meīs litterīs redīret (Cicero *Fam.*)

6 ita factum est ut essent permulta quae ex sociētātis   (Cicero *Ver.*)
   litterīs dīcere in istum et prōferre possēmus
7 quod ergō eō animō factum est ut hominēs ūnum   (Cicero *Tul.*)
   in locum convenīrent, ut arma caperent
8 potest fierī ut fallar   (Cicero *Fam.*)
9 ad Appī Claudī senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut   (Cicero *Sen.*)
   caecus esset
10 efficit ut largīs avidum mare flūminis undīs   (Lucretius)
   integrant amnēs

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Est locus tam antīquus quem Hesperiam Grāiī cognōmine dīcant.
2 Fit ut terra potēns armīs atque ūbere glaebae sit.
3 Oenōtriī perfēcērunt ut virī terram hanc colerent.
4 Contingit ut in vada caeca nōs Orīōn ferat.
5 Nēmō nostrum erat, quī hūc vestrīs ōrīs nōn adnāret.
6 Nūllum fretum est adeō invium ut nōn barbarī rēmōs advehant.
7 Nihil videō tam nimbōsum quod hanc gentem pācis dēlēre possit.
8 Restitit ut Neptūnum Sīcaniae vidērēmus.
9 Sequitur ut flūmen tam invium sit ut nōn adnēmus.
10 Fandī librōs nēminī dedērunt, cuius pietās inānis esset.

Exercise 3

Translate the following into Latin.

1 It happened that the insolent Greeks remained without oars.
2 There was no one so impious who was allowed to remain.
3 It follows that few are shaken by rumors.
4 The descendants of the queen bring it about that all have work.
5 Do not bring (sg.) it about that the human race feeds on a salt sea and soil.

Reading: Ilioneus continues to beseech Queen Dido

"Est locus quem Hesperiam Grāiī cognōmine dīcunt. Terra antīqua est, potēns armīs atque ūbere glaebae. Oenōtriī coluērunt virī. Nunc fāma est minōrēs gentem Ītaliam dīxisse **dē nōmine ducis**. Hic cursus fuit, **cum** subitō adsurgēns ā flūctū nimbōsus Orīōn in vada caeca nōs tulit penitusque procācibus Austrīs

perque undās superante salō perque invia saxa dispulit. Hūc paucī nostrum vestrīs ōrīs adnāvimus.

Quod genus hoc hominum est? Quaeve tam barbara patria hunc mōrem permittit? Ab hospitiō harēnae prohibēmur. Bella cient virī huius locī. Vetant nōs in prīmā terrā cōnsistere. Sī genus hūmānum et mortālia arma temnitis, at spērāte deōs memorēs fandī atque nefandī. Rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō iūstior alter nec pietāte plēnior fuit, nec in bellō māior armīs. Sī fāta **quem** virum servant, sī vēscitur in aurā aetheriā neque adhūc occubat crūdēlibus in umbrīs, nōn metus nōbīs est, nec **paeniteat tē** priōrem officiō certāvisse.

Sunt et Siculīs in regiōnibus urbēs armaque nōbīs, est etiam clārus Acestēs Trōiānō ā sanguine. Quassātam ventīs classem subdūcere **liceat** et silvīs trabēs aptāre et rēmōs stringere. Sī, sociīs et rēge **receptō**, datur nōbīs Ītaliam tendere, Ītaliam Latiumque laetī **petāmus**. Sīn absūmpta est salūs nostra, et **tē**, pater optime Teucrōrum, pontus Libyae habet nec spēs Iūlī iam restat, at ad freta Sīcaniae saltem sēdēsque parātās, unde hūc advectī sumus, rēgemque **petāmus** Acestēn.”

Tālibus Īlioneus dīxit. Cūnctī simul ōre fremēbant **Trōes**.

Notes

dē nōmine ducis – *Italus* was a leader of the Oenotrians
cum – *when* (see Unit 21)
quem = *hunc*
paeniteat tē – *may you repent* – this is a jussive subjunctive (see Unit 18) of an impersonal verb (see Unit 16)
liceat – *may it be permitted* – another jussive subjunctive of an impersonal verb
receptō – it agrees with the closer of its two nouns, *rēge*
tē – refers to Aeneas and not Dido
petāmus – *may we seek out*; this is a hortatory subjunctive (see Unit 18)
Trōes – this is a nominative pl. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

absūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus *to take away*
adhūc *yet*
adnō (1) *to swim towards*
adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus *to rise up*
advehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus *to carry to*
aptō (1) *to fit, prepare*
barbarus, -a, -um *foreign*
certō (1) *to contend, compete*
cieō, -ēre, cīvī, citus *to arouse*
dō, dare, dedī, datus *to give; allow*
fāma, -ae *fame; rumor*
fandus, -a, -um *right, pious*
fretum, -ī *strait*

gēns, gentis (f.)   *race; nation*
glaeba, -ae   *soil*
Grāius, -a, -um   *Greek*
Hesperia, -ae   *Hesperia; Italy*
hūmānus, -a, -um   *human*
invius, -a, -um   *inaccessible*
licet, -ēre, licuit   *it is permitted*
māior, māius   *greater*
minōrēs, minōrum (m.)   *descendants*
nefandus, -a, -um   *wrong, impious*
nimbōsus, -a, -um   *stormy*
occubō (1)   *to lie*
Oenōtrius, -a, -um   *Oenotrian*
officium, -ī   *service, duty; kindness*
optimus, -a, -um   *best*
Orīōn, Orīōnis (m.)   *Orion (a constellation)*
paenitet, -ēre, paenituit   *it repents*
paucus, -a, -um   *few*
permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to allow*
prior, prius   *first*
procāx, procācis   *insolent*
quassō (1)   *to shake*
restō, -āre, -stitī   *to survive; remain*
saltem   *at least*
salum, -ī   *salt sea*
Sīcania, -ae   *Sicily*
sīn   *but if*
spērō (1)   *to hope; expect*
stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus   *to trim*
subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus   *to pull up*
tam   *so*
temnō, -ere   *to scorn*
ūber, ūberis (nt.)   *fertility*
vēscor, -ī [+ abl.]   *to feed (on)*

UNIT 15
Quod substantive clauses

Background

Up till now **quod** has been seen with two different meanings:

- as a relative pronoun (Unit 25 of *IBL*) meaning *which*

  Hīc est oppidum quod mīlitēs rēgis dēlēvērunt.
  Here is the town which the soldiers of the king destroyed.

- as a causal conjunction meaning *because* (see in addition Unit 19)

  Hūc īre volumus, quod ista terra pulchrior est nostrā.
  We want to go there, because that land is more beautiful than ours.

Latin structure

Quod also introduces clauses which are subjects or objects and whose verb is almost always in the indicative (although see Exercise 1 for an example with the subjunctive). Such clauses are called *substantive clauses*.

- Many grammars translate **quod** here as *the fact that*, although translating the verb of the substantive clause as a gerund (i.e. the *-ing* form of the verb in English) often works just as well.

  Subject

  Quod meam pecūniam vīs mē terret.
  <u>*The fact that you want my money*</u> *frightens me.*
  <u>*Your wanting my money*</u> *frightens me.*

  Maxima spēs est *quod nihil invenient.*
  The greatest hope is <u>(the fact) that they will find nothing</u>.
  The greatest hope is <u>their finding nothing</u>.

Object

Oblīvīscuntur *quod urbī appropinquāmus.*
They forget <u>the fact that we are approaching the city</u>.
They forget <u>our approaching the city</u>.

Adde *quod numquam tuī oblīvīscēmur.*
Add <u>the fact that we will never forget you</u>.
Add <u>our never forgetting you</u>.

Quod also introduces clauses which serve in apposition to demonstrative pronouns
(Units 21 and 22 of *IBL*) which may or may not be present.

- When the demonstrative is not present, such *quod*-clauses are indistinguish-
  able from being the subject or object itself.

  ○ Translating **quod** as *the fact that* or as a gerund phrase again works:

  With expressed demonstrative:

  Hoc laetitiam fēcit, *quod rēgēs pecūniam cīvibus dederant.*
  This made happiness, <u>the fact that the kings had given money to citizens</u>.
  This made happiness, <u>the kings' giving money to the citizens</u>.

  Eius oblītus est *quod veniēbāmus.*
  He forgot it, <u>the fact that we were coming</u>.
  He forgot it, <u>our coming</u>.

  ○ Observe, however, that the demonstrative does not need to be a subject
  or an object of a verb but may be an object of a preposition as in this
  example from Caesar:

  ex eō *quod obsidēs dare intermīserant*
  from that, <u>the fact that they had neglected to give hostages</u>
  from that, <u>their having neglected to give hostages</u>

  With unexpressed demonstrative:

  Laetitiam fēcit, *quod rēgēs pecūniam cīvibus dederant.*
  The fact <u>that the kings had given money to the citizens</u> *made happiness.*
  The kings' <u>giving money to the citizens</u> *made happiness.*

  Oblītus est *quod veniēbāmus.*
  He forgot <u>the fact that we were coming</u>.
  He forgot <u>our coming</u>.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 praetereō quod sibi domum dēlēgit   (Cicero *Clu.*)
2 bene mihi ēvenit quod mittor ad mortem   (Cicero *Tusc.*)
3 accidit perincommodē quod eum nūsquam vīdistī   (Cicero *Att.*)
4 nihil est iam quod mihi suscēnseās   (Plautus *Mer.*)
5 quod spīrō et placeō, sī placeō, tuum est   (Horace *Od.*)
6 adde hūc quod perferrī litterae nūllā condiciōne potuērunt (Cicero *Fam.*)
7 quid quod simulāc mihi collibitum est praestō est imāgō? (Cicero *N.D.*)
8 quod glōriāminī, eōdem pertinet   (Caesar *Gal.*)
9 hōc est miserior fortūna, quod nē in occultō   (Caesar *Gal.*)
   quidem querī audent
10 quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset   (Caesar *Gal.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Vident quod custōdēs tēctum mātrī statuunt.
2 Quod lapidēs ē mūrō ēiciēbam illōs cōnfūdit.
3 Memorāvimus haec quod nāvēs ventīs maris frāctae erant.
4 Gaudētis quod fīnis bellī vēnit.
5 Praestāmus inimīcīs quod pācem omnibus ferre volumus.
6 Mīrābile fuit quod rēgīna cīvibus decora dederat.
7 Addidistis quod purpureae vestēs sunt decōrae.
8 Lūgēsne quod fīlius tuus dīmissus est?
9 Maerent quod genetrīx iuventae repentē lapidēs iactāvit.
10 Quod virī ē carcere ērūpērunt terruit nōs.

Exercise 3

Change the numbers of all nouns and pronouns in Exercise 2. Change singulars
to plural and vice versa. Make any necessary changes to verbs and adjectives.

Exercise 4

Translate into Latin.

1 It is our hope that Jupiter leads the sun back.
2 I remember their not wanting to strip.
3 It is hard, our seeing the city destroyed.
4 That terrified us, the heavenly bodies falling.
5 The guards force that, that we gather together.

Reading: Dido responds to Ilioneus

Tum breviter Dīdō vultum dēmissa profātur:

"Solvite ē corde metum, Teucrī, sēclūdite cūrās! Rēs dūra et rēgnī novitās mē tālia cōgunt mōlīrī et lātē fīnēs custōde tuērī. Quis genus Aeneadum, quis Trōiae urbem nesciat, virtūtēsque virōsque aut tantī incendia bellī? Nōn adeō obtūnsa pectora gestāmus Poenī, nec tam āversus Tyriā ab nostrā urbe **Sōl iungit equōs**. Seu vōs Hesperiam magnam Sāturniaque arva sīve Erycis fīnēs rēgemque Acestēn optātis, auxiliō tūtōs dīmittam opibusque iuvābō. Vultis et in hīs rēgnīs mēcum pariter cōnsīdere? Urbs quam statuō, vestra est! Subdūcite nāvēs! Trōs Tyriusque mihi nūllō discrīmine agētur. Atque utinam rēx ipse Aenēās compulsus ab eōdem Notō adesset! Equidem per lītora certōs dīmittam et Libyae extrēma lūstrāre iubēbō, sī ex aequore ēiectus in quibus silvīs aut urbibus errat."

Hīs dictīs **animum** arrēctī et fortis Achātēs et pater Aenēās iamdūdum ērumpere nūbem ardēbant. Prior Aenēān compellat Achātēs:

"Nāte deā, quae sententia nunc in animō surgit? Omnia tūta vidēs, classem sociōsque receptōs. Ūnus abest, mediō in flūctū quem nōs ipsī vīdimus summersum esse. Dictīs mātris respondent cētera."

Vix ea fātus erat **cum** nūbēs circumfūsa repentē sē scindit et in **aethera** apertum sē purgat. Restitit Aenēās clārāque in lūce refulsit **ōs umerōsque** deō similis. Namque ipsa genetrīx decōram caesariem nātō lūmenque iuventae purpureum et laetōs honōrēs in oculīs adflāverat. Quāle decus **manūs** addunt eborī, aut ubi flāvō aurō **Parius** lapis argentumve circumdatur.

Notes

Sōl iungit equōs – The sun god was believed to circle the world daily, producing the
  rising and setting of the sun.
animum – a Greek accusative (see Unit 30 of *IBL*)
cum – *when* (see Unit 21)
aethera – an accusative sg. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
ōs umerōsque – Greek accusatives (see Unit 30 of *IBL*)
manūs – *deeds*

Parius – *Parian*; referring to a Greek island, Paros, renowned for its marble.

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

absum, abesse, āfuī *to be absent*
adeō *so*
adflō (1) *to breathe on*
adsum, adesse, adfuī *to be present*
breviter *briefly*
caesariēs, -ēī (f.) *hair*
cēterī, -ae, -a *the rest, the others*
circumfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus *to pour around*
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus *to force, compel*
compellō (1) *to speak to*
compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus *to drive*
cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus *to settle*
custōs, custōdis (m.) *guard*
decōrus, -a, -um *beautiful*
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to send down; lower*
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to send away*
dūrus, -a, -um *hard*
ebur, eboris (nt.) *ivory*
ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus *to eject, throw from*
ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus *to break out*
Eryx, Erycis (m.) *Eryx (mountain in Sicily)*
extrēmus, -a, -um *farthest; last*
genetrīx, genetrīcis (f.) *mother*
gestō (1) *to bear, carry*
flāvus, -a, -um *yellow*
iamdūdum *at once; for a long time*
incendium, -ī *fire*
iuventa, -ae *youth*
lapis, lapidis (m.) *stone*
nesciō, -īre, nescīvī, nescītus *to not know*
novitās, novitātis (f.) *newness*
obtundō, -ere, -tudī, -tūnsus *to dull*
pariter *equally*
Parius, -a, -um *of the island Paros; Parian*
profor (1) *to speak*
purgō (1) *to clear*
purpureus, -a, -um *purple; radiant*
repentē *suddenly*
respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsus *to respond; correspond*
Sāturnius, -a, -um *of Saturn; of Italy*
sēclūdō, -ere, sēclūsī, sēclūsus *to shut out*
statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtus *to build*
tueor, tuērī, tuitus *to watch, guard*
utinam *if only*
virtūs, virtūtis (f.) *courage*

UNIT 16
Impersonal verbs

Background

An *impersonal verb* is an intransitive verb whose subject refers to nothing specific, but is simply the placeholder *it*. An *intransitive verb* has no direct object. An *impersonal intransitive verb*, therefore, has no direct object and its subject refers to nothing specific.

> *I run.*   [intransitive personal]
> *They dance.*   [intransitive personal]

> *It rains.*   [intransitive impersonal]
> *It snows.*   [intransitive impersonal]
> *It thunders.*   [intransitive impersonal]

Occasionally, and usually in set formulae, impersonal verbs may in fact have a direct object:

> *It is raining cats and dogs.*

Some impersonal verbs have subordinate clauses as their subjects (underlined below). Nevertheless, the placeholder *it* is still required:

> *It is clear <u>that he will arrive tomorrow</u>.*
> *It seems stupid <u>to go running during the storm</u>.*

Some transitive verbs have impersonal passive counterparts which take a clause as their subject:

> *I believe it.*   [active]

> *It is believed by me.*
> [passive but not impersonal since *it* refers to something specific]

> *It is believed <u>that the US will win the World Cup</u>.*
> [passive and impersonal since *it* is simply a placeholder referring to
>   the underlined subject]

Latin structure

Latin is richer in impersonal verbs than is English. It too uses impersonal verbs
for expressing meteorological phenomena:

Pluit.   **Ningit.**   **Tonat.**
It rains.   *It snows.*   *It thunders.*

Non-meteorological impersonal verbs can be classified according to the type of
construction they take.

1 Genitive-impersonal verbs

A group of verbs take a genitive for what would either be the subject or the
direct object in English.

- While *impersonal*, these verbs are not *intransitive* but may take a direct object
  expressing who is being affected by the emotion indicated.
- In the following the genitive corresponds to the subject in English.

> **piget, pigēre, piguit, pigitum**   *to annoy*
> **pudet, pudēre, puduit, puditum**   *to shame*
> **taedet, taedēre, taeduit, taesum**   *to bore; disgust*

Examples

Bellōrum mē taedet.
Wars disgust me.
(literally: *It disgusts me of wars.*)

Labōris difficilis hominem piget.
Difficult work annoys the man.
(literally: *It annoys the man of difficult work.*)

Fīliī mē pudet.
I am ashamed of (my) son.
(literally: *It shames me of (my) son.*)

- In the following the genitive corresponds to the object in English. An accusative
  still expresses who is being affected by the emotion indicated:

> **miseret, miserēre, miseruit, miseritum**   *to pity*
> **paenitet, paenitēre, paenuit**   *to repent*
> **pertaedet, pertaedēre, pertaeduit, pertaesum**   *to be sick of*

Examples

Peccātī tē paenuit.
You repented your sin.
(literally: *It repented you of (your) sin.*)

Dolōris eius eam miseret.
She pities his grief.
(literally: *It pities her of his grief.*)

In place of their "genitive subject or object" all the above verbs may have:

- an infinitive subject:

   Pugnāre mē pertaedet.
   I am sick of fighting.
   (literally: *Fighting is sick (to) me.*)

- a **quod**-clause as subject (see Unit 15)

   Mē paenitet quod tēcta vīllārum incendī.
   I repent for having set fire to the roofs of the villas.
   (literally: *It repents (to) me that I set fire to the roofs of the villas.*)

- a neuter nominative pronoun (e.g. **hoc**, **illud**, **id**) as subject:

   Hoc mē piget.
   This annoys me.

2 "Indirect statement" verbs

The following three impersonal verbs introduce a structure which is reminiscent
of indirect statement (Unit 4).

---

licet, licēre, licuit, licitum   *to be permitted*
necesse est, necesse esse, necesse fuit   *to be necessary*
oportet, oportēre, oportuit   *to be necessary*

Examples

Licet rēgem eam in mātrimōnium dūcere.
The king is permitted to lead her into marriage.
(literally: *It is permitted that the king lead her into marriage.*)

Oportuit mē venīre.
It was necessary that I come.

Licet and **necesse est** may also, with no difference in meaning:

- take a dative + infinitive

> **Necesse erat mihi venīre.**
> *It was necessary for me to come.*

- take an **ut** subjunctive clause

> **Licet ut rēx eam in mātrimōnium dūcat.**
> *The king is permitted to lead her into marriage.*
> (<u>literally</u>: *It is permitted that the king lead her into marriage.*)

- **ut** is optional and may be left out:

> **Licet rēx eam in mātrimōnium dūcat.**

3 *Concern* verbs

The two verbs meaning *to concern* have their own unique mix of structures:

> **interest, interesse, interfuit**   *to concern, be of interest*
> **rēfert, rēferre, rētulit**   *to concern, be of importance*

They take:

- the genitive of the person concerned *or*
- **meā**, **tuā**, **suā**, **nostrā**, **vestrā** if a personal pronoun would otherwise be needed

and

- an infinitive *or*
- **ut** clause *or*
- neuter nominative pronoun (e.g. **hoc**, **illud**, **id**)

Examples

> **Rēgis interest ut inimīcōs vincat.**   [genitive + **ut**]
> *It is of interest to the king that he conquer the enemies.*
> (<u>literally</u>: *It is of interest of the king that he conquer the enemies.*)

> **Rēgis interest inimīcōs vincere.**   [genitive + infinitive]
> *It is of interest to the king to conquer the enemies.*
> (<u>literally</u>: *It is of interest of the king to conquer the enemies.*)

Rēgis interest illud.   [genitive + neuter pronoun]
That interests the king.
(literally: *That is of interest of the king.*)

Suā interest ut inimīcōs vincat.   [personal pronoun + **ut**]
It is in his interest that he conquer the enemies.
(literally: *It is of his interest that he conquer the enemies.*)

Notes

The peculiar use of **meā**, **tuā**, **suā**, **nostrā**, and **vestrā** in place of the genitive
of the personal pronouns (**meī**, **tuī**, **suī**, **nostrī**, and **vestrī**) is due to their being
in agreement historically with the ablative of the noun **rēs**, which has since
become attached to the verb **fert**, yielding **rēfert**. This use of the fem. sg. of
the possessive adjective has spread to the closely related verb **interest**.

Intransitive verbs in the passive

Impersonal, as well as intransitive verbs more generally, may be placed in the
passive.

- The meaning of such verbs is to emphasize the activity.
- The most natural way to translate these is by inserting *people*.

  ○ The first two examples are from intransitive personal verbs and the last
    from an impersonal one.

  Domum curritur.   *People are running home.*
  Super ostrō discumbitur. *People were reclining on the purple (couches).*
  Puditum est.   *People were ashamed.*

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 postulāvit, ut sibi trumphantī licēret urbem invehī   (Livy)
2 mē nōn sōlum piget stultitiae meae, sed etiam pudet   (Cicero *Dom.*)
3 nōn tē haec pudent?   (Terence *Ad.*)
4 quod mē minimē paenitet   (Cicero *Att.*)
5 ad mortem tē dūcī oportēbat   (Cicero *Catil.*)
6 vīvum illinc exīre nōn oportuerat   (Cicero *Mur.*)
7 aut nōn suscipī bellum oportuit, aut gerī prō dignitāte   (Livy)
   populī Rōmānī oportet
8 vōbīs necesse est fortibus virīs esse   (Livy)
9 hīc subitam rērum commutātiōnem vidēre licuit   (Caesar *Civ.*)
10 mē eius miseritum est   (Plautus *Trin.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Dēmum perīculōrum mē piget.
2 Oportet ut sōl oriātur.
3 Tēne paenuit quod expulsīs nōn succurrerās?
4 Necesse est vōbīs inimīcōs sociāre.
5 Licuit ut currerētur.
6 Suā interest opēs rēgis cognōvisse.
7 Utinam persolvātur.
8 Grātium nōn hunc piget.
9 Cōgitō necesse esse ut fluviō succēdant.
10 Cuius egēnus es? Licetne tē domum aedificāre?

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 I am ashamed of the cruel gods.
2 I pity the cruel gods.
3 I am sick of the cruel gods.
4 I annoy the cruel gods.
5 The cruel gods are ashamed of me.
6 The cruel gods pity me.
7 The cruel gods are sick of me.
8 The cruel gods annoy me.
9–11   It is necessary for me to learn wisdom.   [use **necesse est** (3 different ways)]
12 It had been necessary for me to learn wisdom.   [use **oportet**]
13 I repent for not having learned wisdom.
14–16   I am permitted to learn wisdom.   [3 different ways]
17–18   Learning wisdom concerns me.   [use **interest** (2 different ways)]
19 People will be taught.
20 People are going.

Reading: Aeneas reveals himself to Dido

Tum sīc rēgīnam adloquitur cūnctīsque repentē imprōvīsus ait:
    "Cōram, quem quaeritis, adsum. Trōius Aenēās, Libycīs ēreptus ab undīs. Ō
tū, sōla, miserāta īnfandōs labōrēs Trōiae, quae nōs, reliquiās Danaōrum, exhaustōs
iam omnibus cāsibus terraeque marisque, nōs omnium egēnōs, in urbe, domō
sociās. Nōn opis nostrae est, Dīdō, grātēs dignās persolvere. Nec nōs nec quidquid
gentis Dardaniae ubīque est, quae magnum per orbem sparsa est, grātēs dignās

tibi persolvere possumus. **Dī** tibi praemia digna **ferant**, sī qua nūmina piōs respectant, sī quis ūsquam iūstitia est et mēns cōnscia rēctī est.

Quae laeta saecula tam tē tulērunt? Quī tantī parentēs tālem genuērunt? Dum in freta fluviī current, dum umbrae in montibus convexa lūstrābunt, dum polus sīdera pascet, semper honōs nōmenque tuum laudēsque manēbunt, quaecumque terrae mē vocant."

Sīc fātus est, amīcum **Īlionēa** dextrā Serestumque laevāque petit, post aliōs, fortemque Gyān fortemque Cloanthum.

Obstipuit prīmō aspectū Aenēae Sīdōnia Dīdō cāsūque tantō virī huius deinde, et sīc ōre locūta est:

"Quī tē, nāte deā, per tanta perīcula cāsus īnsequitur? Quae vīs immānibus ōrīs applicat? Tūne ille Aenēās quem Dardaniō Anchīsae alma Venus **ad** undam Simoëntis Phrygiī genuit? Atque equidem meminī **Teucrum** ē patriīs Graecīs fīnibus expulsum esse et ad **Sīdōna** venīre. Nova rēgna petēbat auxiliō Bēlī. Genitor meus Bēlus tum opīmam Cyprum vastābat et victor diciōne tenēbat. Tempore ex illō iam cāsus urbis Trōiānae mihi cognitus est nōmenque tuum rēgēsque Pelasgī. Ipse hostis Trōiānōs īnsignī laude ferēbat sēque ortum esse antīquā ab eādem stirpe volēbat. Quārē agite, Ō iuvenēs, tēctīs nostrīs succēdite! Mē quoque iactātam per multōs labōrēs similis fortūna dēmum voluit cōnsistere in hāc terrā. Nōn ignāra malī discō miserīs succurrere."

Notes

dī = deī
ferant – this is a jussive subjunctive (see Unit 18)
Īlionēa – accusative sg. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
ad – *along*
Sīdōna – accusative sg. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
Teucrum – this Teucer is different from the Teucer mentioned earlier (see the *Aeneid* excerpt in Unit 6)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

Anchīsēs, Anchīsae (m.) *Anchises*
applicō (1) *to steer*
aspectus, -ūs *sight, view*
Bēlus, -ī *Belus (king of Phoenicia)*
cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitus *to learn;* (perf.) *to know*
cōnscius, -a, -um *aware*
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus *to run*
Cyprus, -ī *Cyprus*
dēmum *finally*
dignus, -a, -um *worthy*
discō, -ere, didicī *to learn*
egēnus, -a, -um [+ gen.] *lacking*

exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustus   *to exhaust*
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus   *to drive out*
fluvius, -ī   *stream*
grātēs, grātium (f.)   *thanks*
imprōvīsus, -a, -um   *unexpected*
laevus, -a, -um   *left; stupid*
miseror (1)   *to pity*
opīmus, -a, -um   *fertile*
ops, opis (f.)   *wealth; power*
orior, -īrī, ortus sum   *to rise*
patrius, -a, -um   *fatherly, paternal; native*
Pelasgus, -a, -um   *Greek, Pelasgian*
perīculum, -ī   *danger*
persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus   *to pay*
quārē   *therefore; why*
rēctum, -ī   *right*
respectō (1)   *to gaze at*
semper   *always*
Serestus, -ī   *Serestus*
Sīdōn, Sīdōnis (f.)   *Sidon (Phoenician city)*
sociō (1)   *to ally, welcome*
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus   *to scatter*
stirps, stirpis (f.)   *stock; lineage*
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus   *to enter*
succurrō, -ere, succurrī, succursus   *to help* [+ dat.]
Teucer, Teucrī   *Teucer (a banished Greek)*
ubīque   *everywhere, anywhere*
ūsquam   *at all*

UNIT 17
Indirect reflexives

Background

The *reflexive pronoun* was introduced in Unit 27 of *IBL*. Its role is to refer back to the subject of the clause. The reflexive pronominal forms are:

Nom.	–
Gen.	**suī**
Dat.	**sibi**
Acc.	**sē**
Abl.	**sē**

- The reflexive adjectival form is: **suus**, **-a**, **-um**.

  - Recall that these reflexive pronominal and adjectival forms are used only for the 3rd person: *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*. The personal pronouns and adjectives (Unit 27 of *IBL*) are used for 1st and 2nd persons.

Up till now we have seen examples only of *direct reflexives*.

- A direct reflexive refers back to the subject *of its own clause*:

  Vir sē amat.
  The man loves himself.

  Suam fīliam vīdērunt.
  They saw their own daughter.

An *indirect reflexive* is a reflexive pronoun/adjective which is in a subordinate clause but does *not* refer to the closest subject, namely, the subject of the subordinate clause. Rather, it refers to the subject of the main clause.

- Indirect reflexives do not exist in English but the starred examples below are what English would look like if they did:

> *The man thinks that the cashier gave **him** the wrong change.*
> [*the man = him*]
> **The man thinks that the cashier gave **himself** the wrong change.*
> [*the man = himself*]
> *The children are afraid that that the professor did not hear them.*
> [*children = them*]
> **The children are afraid that the professor did not hear themselves.*
> [*children = themselves*]

Latin structure

The same reflexive pronouns and adjective are used as indirect reflexives.

> **Cōgitāvit mīlitēs omnēs sē laudātūrōs esse.** [**sē** refers to subject of **cōgitāvit**]
> *He thought that all the soldiers would praise him.*

> **Verētur nē sē interficiant.** [**sē** refers to subject of **verētur**]
> *He fears that they will kill him.*

Indirect reflexives are limited to those subordinate clauses which express a *thought* or *intention* of the subject of the main verb.

- Thus, they are largely restricted to indirect statement (Unit 4), purpose clauses (Unit 7), indirect questions (Unit 11), doubting clauses (Unit 25), and fearing clauses (Unit 26).

Ambiguity can certainly arise, though, since the reflexive can still refer to the subject of the subordinate clause!

> **Cōgitāvit mīlitēs omnēs sē laudātūrōs esse.** [**sē** refers to **mīlitēs**]
> *He thought that all the soldiers would praise themselves.*

> **Verētur nē sē interficiant.** [**sē** refers to subject of **interficiant**]
> *He fears that they will kill themselves.*

Such ambiguity is nonetheless resolved by the context. As part of a connected text the reference of **sē** or **suus** is usually rather clear.

- Occasionally the emphasizing pronoun **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum** is used to lay stress on one of the entities in a complex sentence. Its person–gender–number agreement can help to resolve ambiguity.

> **Cōgitāvit mīlitēs omnēs sē ipsōs laudātūrōs esse.** [**sē ipsōs** refers to **mīlitēs**]
> *He thought that all the soldiers would praise themselves.*

Notes

• It is not infrequent for **suus** in particular to be used multiple times in the same sentence with different references each time. Again, the context helps to resolve the meaning.

○ The following comes from Caesar's *Gallic Wars.*

Ariovistus respondit:	[main clause]
Ariovistus responded:	
Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet,	[protasis of a conditional]
If he himself [= *Ariovistus*] *did not prescribe to the Roman people*	(see Unit 24)
quem ad modum <u>suō</u> iūre ūterētur,	[indirect question]
in which way they might exercise their own [= *Roman people*] *right*	**suō = populus Rōmānus**
nōn oportēre	[apodosis of a conditional
it is not proper	(Unit 24) in indirect statement]
<u>sēsē</u> ā populō Rōmānō in <u>suō</u> iūre impedīrī	[indirect statement]
that he [= *Ariovistus*] *be impeded by the Roman people in his own* [= *Ariovistus*] *right.*	**sēsē = Ariovistus** **suō = Ariovistus**

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed. Pay particular attention to whom the reflexives refer to.

1	mihi videntur, illīus furentēs ac volāticōs impetūs in sē ipsōs convertī	(Cicero *Har.*)
2	ego multōs hominēs per sē ipsōs moderātōs esse fateor	(Cicero *Arch.*)
3	Pompeius ā mē petīvit ut sēcum et apud sē essem cottīdiē	(Cicero *Att.*)
4	is omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus relīquerat mihi dōnāvit	(Cicero *Att.*)
5	ā Caesare invītor sibi ut sim lēgātus	(Cicero *Att.*)
6	in eīs urbibus quae ad sē dēfēcerant praesidia impōnit	(Sallust *Jug.*)
7	ille habet quod sibi dēbēbātur	(Petronius)
8	lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit sibi mīrum vidērī	(Caesar *Gal.*)
9	Agrippa Atticum flēns ōrābat ut sē sibi suīsque comitibus reservāret	(Nepos *Att.*)
10	ignēs fierī prohibuit quō occultior esset suus adventus	(Caesar *Civ.*)

Exercise 2

In which sentence from Exercise 1 does the reflexive refer to the agent and not to the actual grammatical subject of any clause?

Exercise 3

Translate into Latin.

1 He comes so that the crowd may rejoice around him.
2 The citizens repented that the enemies had been able to destroy their city.
3 Neptune thought that Jupiter gave the winds to him.
4 Sparing no one, the salty sea keeps the sailors off, hoping that they may be saved, from the riverbank.
5 She responded to Neptune that he ought to give joy to her.

Reading: Aeneas sends Achates to fetch gifts

Sīc memorat Dīdō. Simul **Aenēān** in rēgia dūcit tēcta, simul dīvōrum in templīs indīcit honōrem. **Nec minus** intereā sociīs ad lītora mittit vīgintī taurōs, magnōrum suum horrentia centum terga, pinguīs cum mātribus centum agnōs, mūnera **laetitiamque diēī**.

At domus interior splendida rēgālī luxū īnstruitur, mediīsque parantur convīvia tēctīs. Sunt arte labōrātae vestēs ostrōque superbō et ingēns argentum in mēnsīs. Caelāta sunt in aurō fortia facta patrum, seriēs longissima rērum ducta per tot virōs antīquā ab orīgine gentis.

Aenēās – neque enim patrius amor cōnsistere mentem passus est – rapidum **Achātēn** ad nāvēs praemittit, ut Ascaniō ferat haec et ipsum ad moenia dūcat. Omnis cūra cārī parentis in Ascaniō stat. Mūnera praetereā Īliacīs ē ruīnīs ērepta ferre iubet: pallam cum signīs rigentem aurō et circumtextum vēlāmen croceō acanthō. Sunt ōrnātūs Argīvae **Helenae**, quōs illa ē Mycēnīs extulerat, **cum** Pergama inconcessumque hymenaeum peteret. Sunt mātris Lēdae mīrābilia dōna. Praetereā fert Achātēs scēptrum, quod Īlionē, **maxima** nātārum Priamī, ōlim gesserat. Sunt etiam collō monīle bācātum, et duplicem corōnam gemmīs aurōque. Haec celerāns Achātēs iter ad nāvēs tendēbat.

At Cytherēa novās artēs, nova cōnsilia in pectore versat, ut **faciem et ōs** Cupīdō mūtātus prō dulcī Ascaniō veniat, dōnīsque furentem incendat rēgīnam atque ossibus implicet ignem. Quippe domum ambiguam Venus timet Tyriōsque bilinguēs. Ūrit eam atrōx Iūnō et **sub noctem** cūra recursat.

Notes

Aenēān – accusative sg. of a Greek name (see Unit 36)
nec minus – *likewise* (literally *and not less*)
laetitiamque diēī – *wine*
Achātēn – accusative sg. of a Greek name (see Unit 36)
cum – *when* (see Unit 21)
Helenae – a Greek, married to the Greek Menelaus, who fled with the Trojan Paris, thus
    bringing the wrath of the Greeks upon the Trojans and starting the Trojan war
maxima – *oldest*
faciem et ōra – Greek accusatives (see Unit 30 of *IBL*)
sub noctem – *at night*

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

acanthus, -ī   *acanthus plant*
agnus, -ī   *lamb*
ambiguus, -a, -um   *unreliable*
Argīvus, -a, -um   *of Argos; Argive*
ars, artis (f.)   *art; skill; deceit*
atrōx, atrōcis   *dreadful*
bācātus, -a, -um   *with pearls*
bilinguis, bilingue   *bilingual; deceitful*
caelō (1)   *to engrave*
circumtexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus   *to embroider*
collum, -ī   *neck*
convīvium, -ī   *feast*
corōna, -ae   *crown*
croceus, -a, -um   *yellow*
Cupīdō, Cupīdinis (m.)   *Cupid*
faciēs, -ēī   *face*
gemma, -ae   *gem*
Helena, -ae   *Helen*
honor, honōris (m.)   *honor; offering*
hymenaeus, -ī   *marriage*
Īlionē, Īlionēs (f.)   *Ilione*
implicō (1)   *to enfold*
incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus   *to set on fire*
inconcessus, -a, -um   *forbidden*
indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dīctus   *to proclaim*
īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus   *to construct; teach*
interior, interius   *inner*
iter, itineris (nt.)   *journey, trip*
labōrō (1)   *to work; produce*
Lēda, -ae   *Leda*
luxus, -ūs   *luxury*
minor, minus   *less*

monīle, monīlis (nt.)   *collar*

mūnus, mūneris (nt.) *gift*
mūtō (1) *to change*
ōrnātus, -ūs *ornament*
os, ossis (nt.) *bone*
ostrum, -ī *purple*
palla, -ae *robe*
praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to send forth*
recursō (1) *to return*
rēgālis, rēgāle *royal*
rigēns, rigentis *rigid*
seriēs, -ēī *series*
splendidus, -a, -um *brilliant*
sūs, suis (m/f) *pig*
taurus, -ī *bull*
timeō, -ēre, timuī *to fear*
ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustus *to burn*
vēlāmen, vēlāminis (nt.) *garment*
versō (1) *to twist; ponder*
vestis, vestis (f.) *clothing; tapestry*
vīgintī *twenty*

UNIT 18
Hortatory and jussive subjunctives

Background

Unit 12 introduced some uses of the *independent subjunctive.* This unit presents two more.

- The hortatory subjunctive and jussive subjunctives are similar to imperatives.

  ○ Recall that imperatives (Unit 28 of *IBL*) are used to give commands.

Ī urbem!	*Go to the city!*
Vidēte senātōrem!	*See the senator!*

Since commands are given to a person one is speaking to (i.e. 2nd person *you*), the imperative is limited to 2nd person forms. In order to give a 1st person or 3rd person command, English uses ***let*** followed by the object pronouns ***us***, ***me***, ***him***, ***her***, ***them***, ***it***:

Let us go to the city!
Let us not eat that!

Let him go for a walk!
Let them not leave!

  ○ Technically, *let* is itself an imperative, though it is impersonal and it is not directed toward any 2nd person in particular.

Latin structure

In order to express a 1st or 3rd person command, Latin uses the present subjunctive. A present subjunctive in the 1st person conveying a command is termed the *hortatory subjunctive*:

Eāmus ad urbem!	*Let us go to the city!*
Laudēmus rēgem novum!	*Let us praise the new king!*

A present subjunctive in the 3rd person conveying a command is termed the *jussive subjunctive*:

Eant!	*Let them go!*
Fīat rēgīna!	*Let her be made a queen!*

The negative for both is **nē**:

Nē eāmus!	*Let us not go!*
Nē eant!	*Let them not go!*

Advanced topics

The present subjunctive in the 2nd person can express an indefinite subject, which may be translated with the aid of ***let one***. It does not refer to a specific subject but conveys a universal truth of sorts (see the advanced topics of Unit 12 for another use of a 2nd person verbal form to express an impersonal).

Sīs laetus!	*Let one be happy!*	*Be happy!*
Vīvās bene!	*Let one live well!*	*Live well!*

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	sed maneam, opinor	(Plautus *Trin.*)
2	hoc quod coepī prīmum ēnārrem	(Terence *Hau.*)
3	optēmus potius ut eat in exsilium quam querāmur	(Cicero *Catil.*)
4	sed nē difficilia optēmus	(Cicero *Ver.*)
5	exeant, proficīscantur	(Cicero *Catil.*)
6	lēgātī proficīscantur: bellum nihilō minus parētur	(Cicero *Phil.*)
7	eāmus intrō, ut arcessātur faber	(Plautus *Capt.*)
8	valeant cīvēs meī! Sint incolumēs, sint flōrentēs, sint beātī!	(Cicero *Mil.*)
9	et eāmus ad adversāriōs nostrōs	(St. Jerome)
10	misericordiā commōtus nē sīs	(Cicero *Mur.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Nē morēmur!
2 Flōrēs mollēs sint!
3 Venēna occurrantur!
4 Gaudeāmus quiēte!
5 Āligerī auxiliō nē cōnfugiant!

Exercise 3

Convert the number of the nouns and pronouns in Exercise 2. If singular, make them plural. If plural, make them singular.

Exercise 4

Translate the following into Latin.

1 Let them not deceive us!
2 Let us not fear!
3 Let him speak to him!
4 Let the power of Juno not delay!
5 Let her not don a bitter face!

Reading: Venus gives Cupid orders

Ergō Venus āligerum **Amōrem** hīs dictīs adfātur:

"Nāte, meae vīrēs, mea magna potentia, sōlus, nāte, quī tēla **Typhōea** patris summī temnis, ad tē cōnfugiō. Supplex tua nūmina poscō. Nōta tibi sunt, ut frāter tuus Aenēās in pelagō omnia circum lītora iactētur odiīs Iūnōnis acerbae. Saepe cum meō dolōre doluistī. Nunc Phoenissa Dīdō illum tenet blandīsque vōcibus morātur. Vereor quō illum vertant Iūnōnia hospitia. Haud tantō cardine rērum Iūnō cessābit.

Quōcircā **ante** capere dolīs et cingere flammā Dīdōnem rēgīnam meditor, nē quō ā nūmine mūtētur, sed magnō Aenēae amōre mēcum teneātur. Nunc accipe nostram mentem quā facere id possīs. Rēgius puer, mea maxima cūra, Ascanius accītū cārī genitōris Aenēae ad urbem Sīdōniam īre parat. Dōna ē pelagō et restantia ē flammīs Trōiae Ascanius fert. Hunc ego sōpītum somnō super alta Cythēra aut super Īdalium sacrātā sēde recondam, nē scīre dolōs nostrōs possit mediusve occurrere possit. Tū faciem illīus noctem ūnam nōn amplius falle dolō! Et indue nōtōs vultūs puerī, ut, cum tē in gremiō accipiet laetissima Dīdō

rēgālēs inter mēnsās laticemque Lyaeum, cum dabit amplexūs atque ōscula dulcia fīget, occultum ignem īnspīrēs fallāsque venēnō."

Pāret Amor dictīs cārae genetrīcis, et ālās exuit et gressū Iūlī gaudēns incēdit. At Venus Ascaniō placidam quiētem per membra inrigat, et fōtum in gremiō dea tollit in altōs Īdaliae lūcōs, ubi mollis amāracus illum aspīrāns flōribus et dulcī umbrā complectitur.

Notes

Amōr – *Cupid*
Typhōea – refers to a giant whom Jupiter had struck down with his thunderbolts
ante – *first*

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

accītus, -ūs   *summons*
acerbus, -a, -um   *bitter*
adfor (1)   *to speak to*
āliger, -a, -um   *winged*
amāracus, -ī   *marjoram*
amplexus, -ūs   *hug*
amplius   *more*
aspīrō (1)   *to blow*
blandus, -a, -um   *persuasive*
cessō (1)   *to cease, hesitate*
complector, -ī, -plexus sum   *to embrace*
cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī   *to flee for help*
Cythēra, -ōrum   *Cythera (an island)*
ergō   *therefore*
exuō, -ere, exuī, exūtus   *to shed*
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus   *to deceive; copy; escape (notice)*
flōs, flōris (m.)   *flower*
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum   *to rejoice*
gremium, -ī   *bosom*
Īdalium, -ī   *Mount Idalium*
induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtus   *to don*
inrigō (1)   *to diffuse*
īnspīrō (1)   *to breathe in*
Iūnōnius, -a, -um   *of Juno*
latex, laticis (m.)   *liquid*
Lyaeus, -a, -um   *of Bacchus (god of wine)*
meditor (1)   *to plan*
mēns, mentis (f.)   *mind; intention*
mollis, molle   *soft*
moror (1)   *to delay*
occurrō, -ere, occurrī, occursus   *to counteract*
pareō, -ēre, paruī, paritus [+ dat.]   *to obey*

Phoenissa, -ae *Phoenician woman*
potentia, -ae *power*
quiēs, quiētis (f.) *quiet; rest*
quōcircā *therefore*
recondō, -ere, -condidī, -conditus *to hide*
sacrō (1) *to consecrate*
sōlus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**] *alone*
sōpītus, -a, -um *sleeping*
Typhōeus, -a, -um *Typhoean*
venēnum, -ī *poison*
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum *to fear*
vultus, -ūs *face; feature*

UNIT 19
Causal clauses

Background

Causal clauses express a reason or an explanation for something. That is, they give a *cause*. In English they are introduced by the subordinating conjunctions *since* and *because*.

> **Since he won the lottery**, he quit his job.
> The student failed the test, **because he did not study for it**.

There is a subtle underlying question in the meaning of causal clauses. Is the explanation given actually true or not? The one speaking/writing the sentence may either take the contents of the causal clause as *fact* or may simply be reporting a *possible* scenario. This difference in meaning can be expressed in English by adding adverbial phrases modifying the verb of the causal clause:

> The student failed the test, because he **actually** did not study for it.
> The student failed the test, because he **allegedly** did not study for it.

In the first sentence the speaker/writer believes that the watertight reason why the student failed is because he truly did not study for the test. In the second example, the speaker/writer is simply reporting that the opinion exists that the student failed because he did not study for the test, but the speaker/writer – by using the adverb *allegedly* – is emphasizing that this is only an idea and is not fact. Perhaps the reality is that the student studied for the test but simply studied the wrong chapter. Who knows? The speaker/writer certainly does not!

Latin structure

Latin *causal clauses* are introduced by one of the following subordinate conjunctions:

quandō	*since*	**quia**	*because*
quandōquidem	*since*	**quod**	*because*
quoniam	*since*	**cum**	*since, because*

The conjunctions differ with respect to what mood the verb is in. **Cum**, on the one hand, always and only takes the subjunctive according to the sequence of tenses.

> **Cum agricola frūmentum vēndat, in agrō saltat.** [primary sequence]
> *Because the farmer sells his grain, he dances in the field.*

> **Cum agricola frūmentum vēndiderit, in agrō saltat.** [primary sequence]
> *Because the farmer sold his grain, he dances in the field.*

> **Cum agricola frūmentum vēnderet,** [secondary sequence]
> **in agrō saltābat.**
> *Because the farmer was selling his grain, he was dancing in the field.*

> **Cum agricola frūmentum vēndidisset,** [secondary sequence]
> **in agrō saltābat.**
> *Because the farmer had sold his grain, he was dancing in the field.*

Do not confuse the conjunction **cum** with the preposition **cum** *with*. The latter will always be followed by a noun in the ablative, whereas the former will be linked to a verb.

> **Cum agricola frūmentum vēndat, cum uxōre saltat.** [primary sequence]
> *Because the farmer sells his grain, he dances with his wife.*

All four of the other conjunctions take both the indicative and the subjunctive. The difference in mood is tied to whether the clause is viewed as expressing an *actual fact* or an *alleged fact*. What English expresses via adverbs like *actually* and *allegedly*, Latin expresses via the mood of the subordinate clause's verb. The indicative indicates that the statement is true, while the subjunctive indicates that it is alleged.

> **Quod agricola frūmentum vēndit, in agrō saltat.**
> *Because the farmer (actually) sells grain, he dances in the field.*

> **Quod agricola frūmentum vēndat, in agrō saltat.** [primary sequence]
> *Because the farmer (allegedly) sells grain, he dances in the field.*

> **Nōn vēnistī, quoniam pluerat.**
> *You did not come because it had (actually) rained.*

> **Nōn vēnistī, quoniam pluisset.** [secondary sequence]
> *(Allegedly) you did not come because it had rained.*

Do not be confused by the placement of *allegedly* in the last example above. Although it is in the main clause it is qualifying the entire sentence. Only the causal clause's verb is in the subjunctive.

Advanced topics

With verbs of emotion **quod** is the conjunction of choice.

> **Gaudē quod spectant oculī tē mīlle loquentem.** (Horace)
> *Rejoice that a thousand eyes are watching you speaking*

A *relative* pronoun may have the force of a causal conjunction. In the following two examples **quī** is equivalent to **quod ego** and **cum is** respectively. Note the indicative in the first example, since the speaker is talking about his own reasons for doing something and therefore they are not alleged.

> **Errāverim fortasse quī mē aliquid putāvī.** (Pliny the Younger)
> *I may perhaps have erred since I thought myself something.*

> **Scelus expendisse merentem Lāocoönta ferunt, sacrum quī cuspide rōbur laeserit et tergō scelerātam intorserit hastam.** (Vergil)
> *They carry Laocoon, deserving to pay for (his) crime, because he had struck the holy oak with a lance and had hurled a wicked spear at (its) back.*

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge quō coepistī (Cicero *Catil.*)
2 quid plūra commemorem, cum hoc ipsum (Nepos *Han.*) glōriantem audierim
3 quoniam iam nox est, in vestra tēcta discēdite! (Cicero *Catil.*)
4 fīlium suum, quod is contrā imperium in hostem (Sallust *Cat.*) pugnāverat, necārī iussit
5 sequitur ut līberātōrēs sint tuō iūdiciō, quandōquidem (Cicero *Phil.*) tertium nihil potest esse
6 laetātus sum quod mihi licēret rēcta dēfendere (Cicero *Fam.*)
7 quia nātūra mūtārī nōn potest, idcircō vērae (Cicero *Amic.*) amīcitiae sempiternae sunt
8 amantēs dē formā iūdicāre nōn possunt, quia (Quintilian) sēnsum oculōrum praecipit animus
9 eris, quandōquidem meōs amōrēs cum longā (Catullus) voluistī amāre poenā
10 quoniam ipse prō sē dīcere nōn posset, verba fēcit (Nepos *Milt.*) frāter eius Stēsagorās

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin. Translate *because* as **cum** in each.

1 She painted the cup, because it was not glowing.
2 They occasionally try to shear the curtains, because they wish to remove them.
3 The female servants were unable to begin, because the baskets had been filled with napkins.
4 The napkins made with bristles are unable to remove the water, because they have been shorn.
5 An unaccustomed man honored male and female servants, because they had filled his basket.

Exercise 3

Return to Exercise 2 and now translate all the sentences using **quod**. Assume that all the reasons given are actual ones.

Reading: Cupid, as Ascanius, enters Dido's palace

Iamque ībat dictō pārēns et dōna rēgia Cupīdō laetus Tyriīs portābat **Achātē** duce. **Cum** venit, rēgīna iam sē in aureā spondā aulaeīs sub superbīs composuit, **mediam**que locāvit. Iam pater Aenēās et iam Trōiāna iuventūs conveniunt. Strātō super ostrō **discumbitur**. Dant manibus famulī lymphās Cereremque ē canistrīs expediunt tōnsīsque villīs mantēlia ferunt. Quīnquāgintā intus famulae, quibus cūra est in ōrdine longam penum struere et flammīs penātēs adolēre. Sunt centum aliae totidemque ministrī parēs aetāte, quī dapibus mēnsās **onerent** et pōcula **pōnant**.

Nec nōn Tyriī per līmina laeta frequentēs convēnērunt, iussī torīs pictīs discumbere. Mīrantur dōna Aenēae, mīrantur Iūlum – flagrantēs deī vultūs simulātaque verba – pallamque et pictum croceō acanthō vēlāmen. Praecipuē īnfēlīx Dīdō, pestī dēvōta futūrae, mentem explēre nequit ardēscitque **tuendō**. Pariter puerō dōnīsque movētur.

Ubi ille complexū Aenēae collō pependit, magnum amōrem falsī genitōris implēvit. Rēgīnam petit. Haec oculīs, haec pectōre tōtō haeret et interdum in gremiō fovet. Īnscia est Dīdō quantus deus miserae īnsīdat. At ille memor mātris Veneris paulātim abolēre Sychaeum incipit et vīvō amōre praevertere temptat iam prīdem residēs animōs dēsuētaque corda.

Notes

Achātē – an ablative sg. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
cum – *when* (see Unit 21)
mediam – this agrees with an understood **spondam**
onerent and **pōnant** are relative clauses of characteristic (see Unit 14)
nec nōn – *likewise*
tuendō – *in watching*; this is a gerund (see Unit 28)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

aboleō, -ēre, abolēvī, abolitus   *to remove*
adoleō, -ēre, adoluī, adultus   *to worship; honor*
ardēscō, -ere, arsī   *to burn*
aulaeum, -ī   *curtain*
canistrum, -ī   *basket*
complexus, -ūs   *embrace*
dēsuētus, -a, -um   *unused, unaccustomed*
dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus   *to doom*
discumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus   *to recline*
famula, -ae   *female servant*
famulus, -ī   *male servant*
flagrō (1)   *to burn; glow*
frequēns, frequentis   *crowded*
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus   *to begin*
interdum   *occasionally*
īnscius, -a, -um   *unaware*
īnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus   *to settle on*
lympha, -ae   *water*
mantēle, mantēlis (nt.)   *napkin*
minister, ministrī   *manservant*
nequeō, nequīre, nequīvī, nequītus   *to be unable*
pār, paris   *equal*
paulātim   *gradually*
penus, -ūs (f.)   *provisions of food*
pestis, pestis (f.)   *plague, destruction*
pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictus   *to paint; embroider*
pōculum, -ī   *cup*
praevertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus   *to outstrip*
prīdem   *long ago*
quīnquāgintā   *fifty*
reses, residis   *inactive*
sponda, -ae   *couch*
struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus   *to arrange*
temptō (1)   *to try; examine*
tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsus   *to shear*
torus, -ī   *couch*
totidem   *as many*
villus, -ī   *hair; bristle*

UNIT 20
Concessive clauses

Background

Concessive clauses express an idea whose sense is surprising if not wholly opposite to that of the main clause. They are introduced by *although* or *even though*. Often the conjunctions *nevertheless* or *but* modify the main verb.

> ***Although he won the lottery***, *Fred was not happy.*
> *They bought a new car,* ***although they really didn't need one***.
> ***Even though it's raining***, <u>*nevertheless*</u> *we're going for a walk.*

Latin structure

Concessive clauses are introduced by one of the following subordinating conjunctions, which are differentiated by whether they take the subjunctive, indicative, or both:

Subjunctive	Indicative	Both
cum *although*	**quamquam** *although*	**etsī** *although, even if*
licet *although*		**etiamsī** *although, even if*
quamvīs *although*		

Like their English equivalents, the conjunctions **tamen** *nevertheless* or **sed** *but* often occur in the main clause.

Subjunctive only clauses

The three conjunctions which take only the subjunctive follow the sequence of tenses.

- Do not confuse **cum** with either the preposition meaning *with* or the causal conjunction meaning *since*, *because* (Unit 19). Context will help to determine the difference, as will the frequent presence of **tamen** or **sed**.

  > **Cum sōl fulgat, tamen nēmō forīs ambulat.**   [primary sequence]
  > *Although the sun shines, nevertheless no one is walking outside.*

  > **Cum dux vēnisset, nihil cōnfectum est.**   [secondary sequence]
  > *Although the leader had come, nothing was completed.*

- Since **licet** is historically a verb (specifically an impersonal verb (Unit 16)) in the present tense, it maintains its verbal character in allowing only the primary subjunctives to follow it:

  > **Licet ibi sit, tamen eum nōn videō.**   [primary sequence]
  > *Although he is there, nevertheless I do not see him.*

- **Quamvīs** also derives historically from a verb (namely **volō**, Unit 23 of *IBL*) and more literally means *however much you please.* Its verbal character has become more bleached than that of **licet**, however, and it may, therefore, command verbs in primary and secondary sequence, although the former is far more frequent.

  > **Quamvīs sōl fulgat, tamen nēmō forīs ambulat.**   [primary sequence]
  > *Although the sun shines, nevertheless no one is walking outside.*

- **Quamvīs** also occurs as an adverb meaning *however much* or *as you will*. It is important to differentiate such adverbial uses from its uses as a concessive conjunction. The difference in use can be elucidated from the syntax. Specifically, a subjunctive verb must follow **quamvīs** when it means *although*, though not necessarily when it means *however much* or *as you will*.

  > **Deinde estō quamvīs saevus et indomitus** (Catullus)
  > *Then be as you wish, cruel and untamed.*

Indicative only clauses

- **Quamquam** takes only the indicative.

  > **Quamquam rēgīna dormiēbat, custōdēs in cubiculum cucurrērunt.**
  > *Although the queen was sleeping, the guards ran into the bedroom.*

Subjunctive/indicative clauses

- **Etsī** and **etiamsī** consist of the conditional conjunction **sī**. As a result they follow the rules for *conditional sentences* (Unit 24) in determining which mood their verb is in.

○ When the sentiment in the concessive clause is contrary to fact or less certain, the subjunctive is used.
○ When the sentiment is closer to actual fact, the indicative is used.
○ **Etsī** has a preference for use with the indicative and **etiamsī** for use with the subjunctive.

Etsī ibi es, tamen tē nōn videō.
Although you are there, nevertheless I do not see you.

Etiamsī ibi essēs, tamen tē nōn viderem.
Although you would be there, nevertheless I would not see you.

Advanced topics

In later authors such as Tacitus, **quamquam** nearly always takes the subjunctive.

. . . iussit quamquam esset in domō Tiberiī fīlius iuvenis
. . . he ordered although there was a young son in the house of Tiberius

On the other hand, **quamvīs** occurs with the indicative both in poetry and in later authors.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	nam quamquam ferus hostis erat, tamen illud ab ūnō corpore et ex ūnā pendēbat orīgine bellum	(Ovid *Met.*)
2	quamquam fēstīnās, nōn est mora longa	(Horace *Od.*)
3	quamquam mihi nōn sūmō tantum neque adrogō, iūdicēs	(Cicero *Planc.*)
4	quamquam prosperā pugnā terruerit incolās ac lītore potītus sit	(Tacitus *Agricola*)
5	cum recordāre etiamsī secus acciderit, tē tamen rēctē vērēque sēnsisse	(Cicero *Fam.*)
6	etiamsī initiō cautior fuerit	(Livy)
7	sed quamvīs liceat absentis ratiōnem habērī, tamen omnia sunt praesentibus faciliōra	(Cicero *ad Brut.*)
8	quamvīs sordida rēs et invenusta est	(Catullus)
9	hūc accēdit quod, quamvīs ille fēlīx sit, sīcut est, tamen in tantā fēlīcitāte nēmō potest esse	(Cicero *S. Rosc.*)
10	quamquam pernīx hic est homō	(Plautus *Ps.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin. Use **cum** for each.

1 Although Bacchus pours the gilded bowl, the sheep nevertheless do not celebrate.
2 The nobles dip the mixing bowls, although there is no water.
3 Although she was not touching the harp, all the female servants rejoiced.
4 They redoubled the applause, although Diomedes had opposed the treachery.
5 The moon hung from the rainy and wintry ceiling of the sky, although the Little Bear constellation was accustomed not to accompany.

Exercise 3

Rewrite the sentences in Exercise 2 using **quamquam**.

Reading: The feast

Postquam prīma quiēs epulīs erat, mēnsaeque remōtae sunt, crātērās magnōs statuunt et vīna corōnant. Fit strepitus in tēctō vōcemque per ampla ātria volūtant. Dēpendent lychnī dē laqueāribus aureīs incēnsī et noctem fūnālia vincunt.

Hīc rēgīna gravem pateram gemmīs aurōque poposcit implēvitque merō, quam Bēlus et omnēs ā Bēlō solitī sunt. Tum facta sunt silentia in tēctīs.

"Iuppiter, **hospitibus** nam tē dare iūra loquuntur. Laetum esse hunc diem Tyriīsque et profectīs ā Trōiā velīs. Nostrīque minōrēs **huius** meminerint. Adsit laetitiae dator Bacchus et bona Iūnō. Et vōs, Ō Tyriī, faventēs celebrāte coetum!"

Dīxit sīc Dīdō et in mēnsam laticum **honōrem** lībāvit, prīmaque, lībātō, tenus ōre attigit. Tum Bitiae dedit increpitāns. Ille impiger hausit spūmantem pateram et **plēnō aurō** sē prōluit; post aliī procerēs.

Citharā aurātā crīnītus Iōpās personat, quem maximus Atlās docuit. Hic canit errantem lūnam sōlisque labōrēs, unde hominum genus et pecudēs, unde imber et ignēs, Arctūrum pluviāsque Hyadas geminōsque Triōnēs. Canit quid **tantum** sōlēs hībernī properent sē Ōceanō tingere, vel quae mora obstet tardīs noctibus. Ingeminant plausū Tyriī, Trōesque sequuntur.

Nec nōn īnfēlīx Dīdō noctem variō sermōne trahēbat. Longum amōrem bibēbat, multa super Priamō rogitāns, super Hectore multa. Rogitābat nunc quibuscum armīs fīlius Aurōrae vēnisset, nunc quālēs equī Diomēdis fuissent, nunc quantus Achillēs fuisset.

"Immō age et dīc nōbīs, hospes, ab orīgine prīmā," inquit, "īnsidiās Danaōrum cāsūsque tuōrum virōrum errōrēsque tuōs. Nam tē iam septima aestās portat omnibus in terrīs et in flūctibus errantem."

Notes

hospitibus – *to guests and hosts*
huius – genitive object of **meminerint**
honōrem – this is an offering to the gods
aurō – this describes the color of the pouring liquid
Hyadas – this is an accusative plural of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
tantum – *so much*; it is an adverbial accusative (see Unit 30 of *IBL*)
nec nōn – *likewise*

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

amplus, -a, -um   *full*
Arctūrus, -ī   *Arcturus (a bright star)*
Atlās, Atlantis (m.)   *Atlas*
ātrium, -ī   *hall*
attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus   *to touch*
aurātus, -a, -um   *gilded*
Aurōra, -ae   *Aurora (goddess of the dawn)*
Bitiās, Bitiae (m.)   *Bitias*
celebrō (1)   *to celebrate*
cithara, -ae   *harp, lyre*
corōnō (1)   *to wreathe; place wreathes around*
crātēr, crātēris (m.)   *mixing bowl*
crīnītus, -a, -um   *long-haired*
dator, datōris (m.)   *giver*
dēpendeō, -ēre   *to hang from*
Diomēdēs, Diomēdis (m.)   *Diomedes (a Greek)*
error, errōris (m.)   *wandering; trick*
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus   *to favor* [+ dat.]
fīō, fierī, factus sum   *to be made, become*
fūnāle, fūnālis (nt.)   *lamp*
hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus   *to drain*
hībernus, -a, -um   *wintry*
hospes, hospitis (m.)   *guest; host*
Hyades, Hyadum (f.)   *Hyades (constellation of the rainy season)*
immō   *rather*
impiger, impigra, impigrum   *eager*
increpitō (1)   *to challenge*
ingeminō (1)   *to redouble*
īnsidiae, -ārum   *treachery*
Iōpās, Iōpae (m.)   *Iopas*
laquear, laqueāris (nt.)   *ceiling*
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum   *to speak*
lūna, -ae   *moon*
lychnus, -ī   *lamp*
merum, -ī   *unmixed wine*
obstō, -stāre, -stitī, -status   *to oppose; hinder*

patera, -ae   *bowl*
pecus, pecudis (f.)   *sheep; animal*
personō, -āre, -sonuī, -sonitus   *to play*
plausus, -ūs   *applause*
pluvius, -a, -um   *rainy*
procer, proceris (m.)   *noble*
prōluō, -ere, -luī, -lūtus   *to drench*
properō (1)   *to hurry, hasten*
rogitō (1)   *to ask eagerly, inquire eagerly*
septimus, -a, -um   *seventh*
silentium, -ī   *silence*
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum   *to be accustomed*
tardus, -a, -um   *slow*
tenus [+ abl.]   *up to*
tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus   *to dip*
Triōnēs, Triōnum (m.)   *Little Bear constellation*
volūtō (1)   *to roll*

UNIT 21
Temporal clauses I – *when(ever)*

Background

Temporal clauses express an activity which occurs at some designated time with respect to that of the main verb.

- If the action of the temporal clause occurs simultaneously with that of the main clause, it is introduced by *when*.
- If the action of the temporal clause occurs subsequent to that of the main clause, it is introduced by *before*.
- If the action of the temporal clause occurs prior to that of the main clause, it is introduced by *after*.

> **When the sun is setting**, *I am eating dinner.*
> *She was looking out the window waiting,* **when he was walking down the street**.
> **Before the president arrives**, *security needs to be tightened.*
> **After the election takes place**, *the TV campaign ads end.*

When has a few different shades of meaning, which will have effects on how it is translated into Latin:

- expressing strictly simultaneous action

  > **When he arrives**, *I will be watering the flowers.*

- expressing the situation or circumstances which make the main verb true

  > **When he arrives**, *we will go.*

  - The *arriving* is a necessary circumstance for the subsequent *going*.
  - There is a much stronger link between the actions of the *when* clause and those of the main clause in such sentences.

- expressing a habitual action, that is, one which occurs repeatedly

  - in such circumstances **whenever** may be a more suitable conjunction.

> **Whenever it rains**, *it pours.*

The remainder of this unit focuses on temporal clauses best translated as *when*. The other types of temporal clauses will be dealt with in the following unit.

Latin structure

Latin has a variety of conjunctions to express *when*.

• Several of these conjunctions have already been seen in other contexts.

1 when – *expressing simultaneous action*

• The following four conjunctions are used to indicate a simultaneous action and are best translated as *when*.

> **cum   quandō   ubi   ut**

• They all take the indicative.
  ○ All of these have different meanings which have been seen elsewhere (**cum** *since*, *because*, *although*, *with* (Units 19 and 20, Unit 7 of *IBL*), **quandō** *since* (Unit 19), **ubi** *where* (Unit 26 of *IBL*), **ut** *that* (Units 7, 8, 13, 14). Context will determine the best translation.

Ubi lēgātī advēnērunt, mīlitēs pugnābant.
When the legates arrived, the soldiers were fighting.

Quid agēs, cum adveniēmus?
What will you be doing, when we will arrive?

2 when – *expressing circumstance*

• Only **cum** is used in this context.
  ○ When the action refers to *present* or *future* time, the *indicative* is used.
  ○ When the action refers to *past* time, the *subjunctive* is used.

Cum adveniunt, īmus. (present; hence indicative)
When they arrive, we go.

Cum advenient, ībimus. (future; hence indicative)
When they will arrive, we will go.

Cum advēnissent, īvimus. (past; hence subjunctive)
When they had arrived, we went.

3 whenever – *expressing repeated action*

- Only **cum** is used in this context.

  ○ The indicative is used, and more specifically:

    ■ the *perfect* is used when the main verb is present
    ■ the *pluperfect* is used when the main verb is imperfect.

Cum pluit, effundit.   [perfect with the present]
Whenever it rains, it pours.

Cum pluerat, effundēbat.   [pluperfect with the imperfect]
Whenever it rained, it was pouring.

Summary of *cum* clauses

Since *cum* has been encountered in several units under different guises, it is useful to summarize its various uses:

Use	Translation	Notes
Preposition	*with*	takes a noun in the ablative
Conjunction		
• **causal**	*since, because*	subjunctive only
• **concessive**	*although*	subjunctive only
• **temporal**		
○ **simultaneous**	*when*	indicative
○ **circumstantial**	*when*	indicative (present/future) subjunctive (past)
○ **habitual**	*when(ever)*	indicative (perfect and plperf.)

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 haec implēre nōn valuit, quandō nūlla potest contrā   (Josephus *Ap.*)
  nōs blasphēmia prōvenīre
2 veniat quandō volt, atque ita nē mihi sit morae   (Plautus *Bac.*)
3 fābor enim, quandō haec tē cūra remordet   (Vergil *Aeneid*)
4 ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est   (Caesar *Gal.*)
5 ubi ea diēs, quem cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit   (Caesar *Gal.*)
6 meminī cum mihi dēsipere vidēbāre   (Cicero *Fam.*)

7 etiam tum vīvit quom esse crēdās mortuam   (Plautus *Per.*)
8 cum poscēs, posce Latīnē!   (Juvenal)
9 cum in iūs dūcī dēbitōrem vīdissent, undique convolābant (Livy)
10 cum Caesar Ancōnam occupāvisset, urbem relīquimus (Cicero *Fam.*)

Exercise 2

Answer the following questions which relate to Exercise 1.

1 What is the more frequent equivalent of **vidēbāre**?
2 What is an older way to write **cum**?
3 Which word is an older form of an irregular verb?

Exercise 3

Translate the following. Use every conjunction where it may apply.

1 Whenever they build camps by means of fir, they renew battles.
2 When he is restrained by the hands of soldiers, he cannot flee.
3 When they had enclosed the camp, the unmarried ones overthrew the soldiers.
4 When I see Troy, I urge that the citizens go to the hiding places.
5 When you (sg.) are wandering, swans will be piercing the silence.

Reading: The Trojans open their gates

Conticuērunt omnēs intentīque ōra tenēbant. Inde torō ab altō pater Aenēās sīc
orsus est:

"Īnfandum dolōrem, rēgīna, iubēs mē renovāre, ut Trōiānās opēs et lāmentābile
rēgnum ēruerint Danaī. Iubēs mē dīcere misserrima multa quae ipse vīdī et
quōrum pars fuī. Quī mīles tālia **fandō** Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut mīles dūrī
Ulixī temperet ā lacrimīs? Et iam nōx ūmida dē caelō praeciptat suādentque
cadentia sīdera somnōs. Sed sī tantus amor tibi est cāsūs nostrōs cognōscere et
breviter Trōiae suprēmum labōrem audīre, quamquam animus meminisse horret
lūctūque refūgit, incipiam.

Frāctī bellō fātīsque repulsī, ductōrēs Danaōrum tot iam lābentibus annīs
aedificant equum īnstar montis dīvīnā Palladis arte. Sectā abiete costās intexunt.
Vōtum prō reditū simulant. Ea fāma vagātur. Hūc virī corpora, quae sortītī sunt,
fūrtim inclūdunt caecō laterī. Penitus cavernās ingentēs uterumque armātīs
mīlitibus complent.

Est in cōnspectū Tenedos, nōtissima fāmā īnsula et dīves opum dum rēgna
Priamī manēbant. Nunc tantum sinus et statiō male fīda carīnīs est. Hūc Graecī
sē prōvectī sunt ut dēsertō in lītore condant. Nōs ratī sunt illōs abīvisse et ventō

petīvisse Mycēnās. Ergō omnis Teucria longō lūctū sē solvit. Panduntur portae,
iuvat nōs īre et Dōrica castra et dēsertōs locōs lītusque relictum vidēre. Hīc
Dolopum manus tendēbat, hīc saevus Achillēs tendēbat. Classibus hīc locus est,
hīc aciē certāre solēbant.

Pars stupet innūptae Minervae dōnum exitiāle et mōlem equī **mīrantur**.
Prīmus Thymoetēs hortātur dūcī intrā mūrōs et arce locārī. Sīve dolō erat seu
iam Trōiae fāta sīc ferēbant. At Capys et eī, quōrum sententia melior mentī erat,
iubent aut pelagō īnsidiās Danaōrum praecipitāre aut suspecta dōna subiectīs
flammīs ūrere, aut cavās latebrās uterī terebrāre et temptāre."

Notes

fandō – *by speaking*; it is an ablative sg. of a gerund (see Unit 28) taking the direct
   object **tālia**

mīrantur – Note how the subject is singular (**pars**) but the idea of plurality that this
   noun entails is reflected in this verb, though not in the verb of the first clause (**stupet**).

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

abiēs, abietis (f.) *fir*
aedificō (1) *to build*
armō (1) *to arm*
carīna, -ae *keel of ship*
castra, -ōrum *camp*
caverna, -ae *cavern*
compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus *to fill*
conticēscō, -ere, conticuī *to become silent*
dēsertus, -a, -um *isolated; deserted*
Dolopes, Dolopum (m.) *Greeks from Thessaly*
Dōricus, -a, -um *Doric, Greek*
ēruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus *to overthrow*
exitiālis, exitiāle *deadly*
fīdus, -a, -um *faithful; safe*
fūrtim *secretly*
hortor (1) *to urge*
inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus *to enclose*
inde *thereupon; from there*
innūptus, -a, -um *unmarried, unwed*
īnstar *in the likeness of*
intentus, -a, -um *intent, eager*
intexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus *to weave*
lāmentābilis, lāmentābile *pitiable*
latebra, -ae *hiding place*
lūctus, -ūs *grief*
male *badly*
manus, -ūs (f.) *hand; force*
melior, melius *better*

mīles, mīlitis (m.)   *soldier*
Minerva, -ae   *Minerva*
Myrmidones, Myrmidonum (m.)   *Myrmidons (Greeks from Thessaly)*
praecipitō (1)   *to rush headlong*
prōvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus   *to convey*
quamquam   *although*
reditus, -ūs   *return*
refugiō, -ere, -fūgī   *to flee*
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus   *to leave*
renovō (1)   *to renew*
reor, rērī, ratus sum   *to think*
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus   *to repel*
sortior, -īrī, sortītus sum   *to draw by lots*
statiō, statiōnis (f.)   *station; anchorage*
subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus   *to throw under; lower*
suprēmus, -a, -um   *last*
tantum   *only*
temperō (1)   *to regulate; restrain*
Tenedos, Tenedī (f.)   *Tenedos (island)*
terebrō (1)   *to drill into*
Teucria, -ae   *Troy*
Thymoetēs, Thymoētae (m.)   *Thymoetes*
Ulixēs, Ulixeī (m.)   *Ulysses*
ūmidus, -a, -um   *damp*
uterus, -ī   *womb; belly*
vagor (1)   *to wander*
vōtum, -ī   *prayer; offering*

UNIT 22
Temporal clauses II – *before* and *after*

Background

The previous unit primarily dealt with time clauses that occur simultaneously with other clauses and are introduced by *when*. This unit deals with time clauses that occur either subsequent to the action of the main clause or prior to it, being introduced by *before* and *after*, respectively.

Temporal clause is:

Before she studied for the exam, *she bought the textbook.* subsequent
After she passed the exam, *she celebrated with friends.* prior

It may seem intuitively odd that *before* introduces a temporal clause which occurs *after* the action of the main clause while *after* introduces a temporal clause which occurs *before* the action of the main clause. Latin does the same thing!

- *Before* is synonymous with *until* in certain contexts – when the main clause is negative – and in such situations the temporal clause *does* indicate a prior action.

    *They did not go, **before/until they saw the queen**.*

Latin structure

1 before

Priusquam and **antequam** take the indicative when the clause states a fact, but the subjunctive when the clause expresses a wish, anticipation, or intent. In the latter, the subjunctive follows the sequence of tenses:

Priusquam vēnī, aliquis cecinit.   **Antequam relīquī, aliquis advēnit.**
Before I came, someone sang.   *Before I left, someone arrived.*

Priusquam vēnīrem, aliquis cecinit.   **Antequam relinquerem, aliquis advēnit.**
Before I could come, someone sang.   *Before I could leave, someone arrived.*

Priusquam and **antequam** can both undergo *tmesis*, the splitting of a word into two parts separated from each other in a sentence. The first part (**prius** or **ante**) often occurs in the main clause. *Before* is to be translated before whichever clause **quam** is in:

Prius aliquis cecinit, quam vēnī.   **Ante aliquis advēnit, quam relīquī.**
Someone sang, before I came.   *Someone arrived, before I left.*

In those clauses expressing fact there is a proclivity for:

- the *perfect* indicative to be used when referring to present time or past time.
- the *future perfect* indicative to be used when referring to future time.

Present

Membrīs ūtimur priusquam didicimus . . .
We use (our) limbs before we know (Cicero)

Past

Lēgātī nōn ante profectī quam impositōs in nāvēs mīlitēs vīdērunt.
The envoys did not set out before they saw the soldiers placed on the ships
   (Cicero)

Future

Neque dēfatīgābor antequam illōrum viās . . . percēperō
And I will not grow weary before I will have learned their ways. (Cicero)

2 after

Postquam, which may also undergo tmesis, is predominantly followed by the *perfect indicative*, occasionally by the *pluperfect indicative*.

Mīlitēs Caesaris pugnāvērunt, postquam Gallī vīsī sunt.
Caesar's soldiers fought, after the Gauls were seen.

Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit.
After Caesar arrived there, he demanded hostages. (Caesar)

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 velintne priusquam fīnitimī sentiant?   (Caesar *Gal.*)
2 omnia experīrī certum est priusquam pereō.   (Terence *An.*)
3 quid hōrum fuit quod nōn priusquam datum est   (Cicero *Fam.*)
   ademptum sit?

4　cōnantibus, priusquam id efficī posset, adesse　　　　(Caesar *Gal.*)
　　Rōmānōs nūntiātur
5　antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam　　(Cicero *Catil.*)
6　Hēracliō, aliquantō antequam est mortuus, omnia trādiderat　(Cicero *Ver.*)
7　postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar　　　　(Caesar *Gal.*)
　　in proximum collem subdūxit
8　quō postquam subiit, nymphārum trādidit ūnī armigerae　(Ovid *Met.*)
　　iaculum pharetramque arcūsque retentōs
9　inde nōn prius ēgressus est quam rēx eum in fīdem　　(Nepos *Them.*)
　　reciperet
10　nōn prius dīmittunt quam ab hīs sit concēssum　　　　(Caesar *Gal.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin.

1　Before he could mock him, the crime was done.
2　After the shepherds conceal the wild beasts with wood, they will look around.
3　The zeal not felt voluntarily, we looked around before we trusted the citizens.
4　Bind (pl.) tight the device, after it stands firm.
5　We finally will repress the prisoners, before they might lack hope.

Reading: Laocoon Argues against the Greeks

"Scinditur incertum vulgus studia in contrāria. Prīmus ibi ante omnēs magnā comitante catervā Lāocoōn, ardēns summā ab arce dēcurrit et procul hortātur:

　'Ō miserī cīvēs, quae tanta īnsānia? Crēditis āvectōs esse hostēs? Aut ūlla dōna Danaōrum putātis carēre dolīs? Sīc nōtus est Ulixēs? Aut hōc in lignō inclūsī Achīvī occultantur, aut haec māchina **in** nostrōs mūrōs fabricāta est ut domōs īnspiciat et dēsuper urbī veniat, aut aliquī error latet. Equō nē crēdite, Teucrī! Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs etiam dōna ferentēs.'

　Sīc fātus validīs vīribus ingentem hastam in latus inque curvam compāgibus alvum ferī contorsit. Stetit illa tremēns, uterōque recussō īnsonuērunt cavae cavernae gemitumque dedērunt. Et, sī fāta deōrum nōn **fuissent**, sī mēns nōn laeva **fuisset**, Lāocoōn **impulisset** nōs Argolicās latebrās ferrō foedāre Trōiaque nunc **stāret**, Priamīque arx alta **manērēs**.

　Ecce, iuvenem intereā post terga revīnctum manūs Dardaniī pāstōrēs ad rēgem magnō cum clāmōre trahēbant. Quī ultrō obtulerat sē ignōtum pāstōribus, ut hoc ipsum strueret Trōiamque aperīret Achīvīs. Fīdēns **animī** in utrumque parātus est, seu versāre dolōs seu certae mortī occumbere. Undique **vīsendī** studiō Trōiāna iuventūs circumfūsa ruit certantque inlūdere captō. Accipe nunc Danaōrum īnsidiās et crīmine ab ūnō disce omnēs! Namque ut cōnspectū in mediō turbātus, inermis, cōnstitit atque oculīs Phrygia agmina circumspexit et inquit:

'Heu, quae mē tellūs, quae mē aequora possunt accipere? Aut quid iam miserō mihi dēnique restat? Mihi nōn apud Danaōs ūsquam locus est, et super vōs ipsī **Trōes** īnfēnsī poenās cum meō sanguine poscitis.'

Quō gemitū conversī sunt animī et compressus est omnis impetus. Hortāmur eum fārī quō sanguine crētus sit, quidve ferat et memorāre quae fīdūcia sit huic captō."

Notes

in – against
fuissent – *they had been*; this and the following four verbs are parts of conditional sentences (see Unit 24)
fuisset – *had been*
impulisset – *he would have forced*
stāret – *it would stand*
manērēs – *you would remain*
animī – a locative
vīsendī – *of looking at*; this is the genitive sg. of a gerund (see Unit 28)
super – *in addition*
Trōes – nominative pl. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

alvus, -ī (f.)   *belly, womb*
Argolicus, -a, -um   *Argive, Greek*
captus, -ī   *prisoner*
careō, -ēre, caruī, caritus [+ abl.]   *to lack*
circumspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus   *to look around*
cīvis, cīvis (m/f)   *citizen*
comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus   *to repress*
cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -status   *to stand firm*
contorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortus   *to hurl*
crētus, -a, -um   *born*
crīmen, crīminis (nt.)   *crime*
curvus, -a, -um   *curved*
dēcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus   *to run down*
dēnique   *finally*
ecce   *behold*
fabricō (1)   *to make*
ferus, -ī   *wild beast*
fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum [+ dat.]   *to trust*
foedō (1)   *to mar*
heu   *alas*
ibi   *then*
impetus, -ūs   *violence, attack*
incertus, -a, -um   *uncertain*
īnfēnsus, -a, -um   *hostile*

inlūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsus   *to mock*
īnsānia, -ae   *madness*
īnsonō, -āre, -sonuī   *to resound*
īnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus   *to inspect*
Lāocoōn, Lāocoöntis (m.)   *Laocoön*
lignum, -ī   *wood*
māchina, -ae   *device*
occultō (1)   *to conceal*
pāstor, pāstōris (m.)   *shepherd*
putō (1)   *to think*
recutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus   *to strike*
revinciō, -īre, -vīnxī, -vīnctus   *to bind tight*
studium, -ī   *zeal; inclination*
ultrō   *voluntarily*
undique   *from all sides*
uterque, utraque, utrumque   *each, both*
versō (1)   *to twist; ponder; keep using*
vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsus   *to look at; gaze*

UNIT 23
Dum clauses

Background

While the previous two units dealt with temporal clauses, they did not exhaust the entire arsenal of temporal conjunctions by any means. *While* and *until* are two additional subordinating conjunctions which deal with contemporaneous action, much like *when*.

- Specifically, *while* may indicate an action which is completely coextensive with another action; that is, the extent of time of both the action of the main clause and that of the *while* clause coincide.

    While he was singing a song, *he was taking a shower.*

    ○ To make the complete coextension of the main verb *taking a shower* and the subordinate verb *singing* clear, let's imagine *he* took a 10-minute shower starting at 7:00 am. This means that he was also singing for those same 10 minutes.

Verbs	*Complete coextension*
singing	7:00 am to 7:10 am
taking a shower	7:00 am to 7:10 am

        ■ Other conjunctions express a necessary condition, which abstractly can be understood as a complete coextension since the condition needs to be satisfied in order for the verb of the main clause to occur at the same time:

            as long as   provided that
            As long as the weather holds out, *we're going to have a picnic.*

- *While* may indicate an action which is partially coextensive with that of another action; that is, the action of the main verb occurs for only part of the time that the action of the verb of the *while* clause occurs.

    While I was waiting for my friend, *it began to rain.*

    ○ To make this partial coextension clear, imagine that I begin waiting for my friend at 8:00 pm and that he finally arrives at 8:30. Meanwhile, at 8:15 the skies opened and it began to rain.

Verbs	*Partial coextension*
waiting	8:00 pm – 8:30 pm
began to rain	8:15 pm – 8:30 pm

- *Until* indicates an action which is not coextensive at all with that of another verb. Rather, it marks the boundary at which the action of the main verb terminates and the verb of the *until* clause commences.

  Until she finds her wallet, *she has no money.*

  ○ To make the lack of coextension clear, imagine *she* is looking for her wallet from 12:00 to 12:15. Since she has no wallet during this time, she also has no money. At 12:16, however, she finds the wallet and thus she has money once again.

Verbs	*No coextension*
finding	12:16 pm
has no money	12:00 pm – 12:15 pm

Latin structure

The relationship between complete, partial, and no coextension-type subordinate clauses is also muddled in Latin, since the same conjunctions, primarily **dum**, are used for all three. Nonetheless, the mood of the verb can sometimes give a hint as to the level of coextension.

Complete coextension

The following four conjunctions translate as *while* or *as long as*

> **dum   dōnec   quoad   quamdiū**

These take the indicative:

Dum vir cecinit, sē lavāvit.
While the man sang, he washed himself.

Quamdiū hīc est, auxiliō est.
As long as he is here, he is a help.

Provided that is translated by:

> **dum   dummodo   modo**

While *provided that* also expresses complete coextension, it inherently has only an anticipated or intended meaning and not a factual one. As a result, the subjunctive is used in such sentences in Latin.

- Since the action is coextensive with that of the main verb, only the present and imperfect subjunctives are ever possible.
- The negative of the *provided that* clause is **nē**.

  ○ This type of clause is also called a *clause of proviso*.

    Dum mīlitēs fortiter pugnent, rēx urbem   [primary sequence]
    superat.
    Provided that the soldiers fight bravely, the king conquers the city.

    Dum mīlitēs fortiter pugnārent,   [secondary sequence]
    rēx urbem superāvit.
    Provided that the soldiers fought bravely, the king conquered the city.

    Dum nē mīlitēs fortiter pugnent, inimīcī   [primary sequence]
    urbem superant.
    Provided that the soldiers do not fight bravely, the enemies conquer the city.

Partial coextension

Dum alone introduces a partially coextensive clause and is translated *while*. In such situations the **dum** clause takes the present indicative regardless of whether the action is taking place in the present or past.

- This use of the present even in past tense contexts is termed the *historic present.*

    Dum vir canit, domō fīlia cucurrit.
    While the man sang, (his) daughter ran from the home.

No coextension

The following three conjunctions, translated as *until*, indicate no coextension:

dum   dōnec   quoad

They take the indicative when reporting a fact, but the subjunctive when the action is anticipated, intended, or designed.

In nāve mānsī dum advesperāscēbat.   [actual fact]
I stayed on the ship until it grew dark.

In nāve mānsit dum advesperāsceret.   [alleged]
He stayed on the ship until it (should grow) grew dark.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est (Caesar *Gal.*)
2 sacrīsque litātīs indulgē hospitiō . . . dum nōn (Vergil *Aeneid*)
   tractābile caelum
3 verterit in tacitōs iuvenālia corpora piscēs, dōnec (Ovid *Met.*)
   idem passa est
4 nē quōquam exsurgātis, dōnec ā mē erit signum datum (Plautus *Bac.*)
5 quō lubeat nūbant, dum dōs nē fīat comes (Plautus *Aul.*)
6 quoad correptum gravī valētūdine, priusquam (Suetonius *Dom.*)
   plānē efflāret animam, prō mortuō dēserī iussit
7 Tītyre, dum redeō, brevis est via, pasce capellās (Vergil *Ecl.*)
8 sūmpsit sine teste, habuit quamdiū voluit (Cicero *Cael.*)
9 quamdiū in mundō sum lūx sum mundī (St. Jerome)
10 dummodo mōrāta rēctē veniat, dōtāta est satis (Plautus *Aul.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin.

1 While he was returning in vain, we were confessing our unpleasant jealousy.
2 Provided that the mad, deceitful men withdraw, the innocent will not be silent.
3 While they are deprived of fear, they do not mourn the treason of the wicked.
4 The Ithacans were silent until the companions should return from darkness.
5 The charge of treason will be a stigma until death arrives.

Reading: Sinon tells his story

"Ille haec dēpositā tandem formīdine fātur:

'Cūncta equidem vēra tibi fatēbor, rēx, quodcumque fuerit. Neque mē esse Argolicā dē gente negābō. Hoc prīmum fateor. Nec, sī miserum Sinōnem fortūna improba fīnxit, vānum etiam mendācemque finget. Fandō aliquod nōmen **Palamēdis** forte ad tuās aurēs pervēnit, quem falsā sub prōditiōne Pelasgī īnsontem īnfandō indiciō dēmīsērunt necī, quia bella vetābat. Nunc **cassum lūmine** lūgent. Illī mē comitem et cōnsanguinitāte propinquum pauper pater meus in arma mīsit prīmīs ab annīs. Dum stābat Palamēdēs incolumis regnō, rēgumque vigēbat in conciliīs, ego eius nōmen decusque gessī. Postquam invidiā pellācis Ulixeī – haud ignōta loquor – **superīs ab ōrīs concessit**, ego adflīctus vītam in tenebrīs lūctūque trahēbam et cāsum īnsontis amīcī mēcum indignābar. Nec tacuī dēmēns. Mē, sī fors qua **tulisset**, sī ad Argōs patriōs umquam victor

remeāvissem, prōmīsī ultōrem esse. Verbīs odia aspera mōvī. Hinc mihi prīma lābēs malī erat. Hinc semper Ulixēs crīminibus novīs **terrēre**, hinc Ulixēs **spargere** vōcēs ambiguās in vulgum et cōnscius suī malī **quaerere** arma. Nec requiēvit enim, dōnec Calchante ministrō . . .

Sed quid ego haec autem nēquīquam ingrāta revolvō? Quid moror? Sī omnēs Achīvōs ūnō ōrdine habētis, idque audīre sat est, iamdūdum sūmite poenās! Hoc Ithacus Ulixēs velit et magnō mercentur **Atrīdae**.'

'Tum vērō ardēmus scītārī et quaerere causās. Ignārī scelerum tantōrum artisque Pelasgae sumus.'"

Notes

Palamēdis – a Greek whom Ulysses had sentenced to death on account of false charges
cassum lūmine – a euphemism for *dead*
superīs ab orīs concessit – another euphemism for *death*
tulisset – *would have brought*; this is a pluperfect subjunctive in a conditional sentence (see Unit 24)
remeāvissem – *I would have returned*; this is a pluperfect subjunctive in a conditional sentence (see Unit 24)
terrēre, **spargere**, and **quaerere** – these are being used in place of indicative verbal forms
Atrīdae – nominative pl. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36); the sons of Atreus are Agamemnon (king of Mycenae who was murdered by his wife after the Trojan war) and Menelaus (the husband of Helen, who had fled with the Trojan Paris)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

autem   *moreover; however*
Calchās, Calchantis (m.)   *Calchas*
cassus, -a, -um [+ abl.]   *deprived of, without*
comes, comitis (m.)   *companion*
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus   *to withdraw*
concilium, -ī   *council*
cōnsanguinitās, cōnsanguinitātis (f.)   *kinship; blood relationship*
decus, decoris (nt.)   *ornament; glory*
dēmēns, dēmentis   *mad*
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus   *to lay down*
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum   *to confess*
fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictus   *to make, mold*
formīdō, formīdinis (f.)   *fear*
improbus, -a, -um   *wicked*
incolumis, incolume   *safe*
indicium, -ī   *charge*
ingrātus, -a, -um   *unpleasant*
īnsōns, īnsontis   *innocent*
invidia, -ae   *jealousy*
Ithacus, -a, -um   *Ithacan*

lābēs, lābis (f.)   *stigma*
lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus   *to mourn*
mendāx, mendācis   *lying*
negō (1)   *to deny*
nēquīquam   *in vain*
nex, necis (f.)   *death*
Palamēdēs, Palamēdis   *Palamedes*
pauper, pauperis   *poor*
pellāx, pellācis   *deceitful*
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus   *to arrive*
prōditiō, prōditiōnis (f.)   *treason*
propinquus, -a, -um   *near*
remeō (1)   *to return*
requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētus   *to rest*
revolvō, -ere, revolvī, revolūtus   *to tell*
sat   *sufficient, enough*
scītor (1)   *to inquire*
Sinōn, Sinōnis (m.)   *Sinon*
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus   *to take up; exact*
taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitus   *to be silent*
tenebrae, -ārum   *darkness*
ultor, ultōris (m.)   *avenger*
vigeō, -ēre   *to be strong; flourish*
vīta, -ae   *life*

UNIT 24
Conditional sentences

Background

A *conditional sentence* expresses a condition and the consequence that follows from that condition. The condition and consequence may be either factual or ideal. The difference is indicated by the verbal form.

- A conditional sentence consists of two clauses:
  - *protasis* – expresses the condition; it is introduced by *if*
  - *apodosis* – expresses the consequence; usually introduced by *then* or nothing.

Protasis	Apodosis
If it rains,	*(then) the train will be late.*
If it rains,	*(then) the train is late.*
If it had rained,	*(then) the train would have been late.*

There are three types of conditional sentences:

- General or logical conditions
  - The condition and consequence make no reference as to whether they are true.

If it rains,	*the train is late.*	[present]
If it rained,	*the train was late.*	[past]
If it rains	*the train will be late.*	[future]

    - Note that the protasis of the future condition is usually in the present tense in English.

- Ideal conditions
  - The condition and consequence are possible of fulfillment. Logically only a future time is permissible.

If it should rain,	*the train would be late.*	[future]

- Unreal or contrary-to-fact conditions

  ○ The condition and consequence are expressing a situation which is not possible of fulfillment. In the following this entails, respectively, that it is *neither* raining *nor* had it rained.

If it were raining,	*the train would be late.*	[present]
If it had rained,	*the train would have been late.*	[past]

- A fourth type, *mixed conditions*, takes a protasis from one type of condition and an apodosis from another type.

If it had rained,	*the train would be late.*
[unreal past protasis]	[unreal present apodosis]

Related to conditional sentences are *conditional clauses of comparison*.

- They compare a subordinate clause containing a *hypothetical* idea with the idea of a main clause.

  *It looks **as if it were raining**.*
  *It looks **as if had rained**.*

- Such clauses are introduced by *as if* and are effectively just protases of unreal or contrary-to-fact conditions.

Latin structure

Latin, like English, expresses the differences between the three types of conditional sentences by varying its verbal tenses and moods. It differs from English with respect to the exact tenses and moods it uses for each specific conditional type. There is, however, some overlap between the two languages. To begin with, protases are introduced by **sī** *if* in the positive and by **nisī** *if . . . not* in the negative.

1 General or logical conditions

As in English, both the protasis and the apodosis take the indicative, with the specific tense determining the time.

Sī venīs, laetī sumus. [present]
If you come, we are happy.

Sī vēnistī, laetī erāmus. [past]
If you came, we were happy.

Sī veniēs, laetī erimus. [future]
If you (will) come, we will be happy.

The *future perfect* may also be used in the protasis of future conditions. Such a situation emphasizes that the action of the protasis must be completed in order for the consequence to follow.

Sī vēneris, laetī erimus.   [future]
If you (will) come, we will be happy.

● This is not expressible via English words but only via placing extra stress on *if*.

2 Ideal conditions

Both clauses are in the *present subjunctive*.

Sī veniās, laetī sīmus.
If you should come, we would be happy.

3 Unreal or contrary-to-fact conditions

Present contrary to-fact-conditions demand the *imperfect subjunctive* in both clauses.
    Past contrary-to-fact conditions demand the *pluperfect subjunctive* in both clauses.

Sī venīrēs, laetī essēmus.   [present]
If you were coming, we would be happy.

Sī vēnissēs, laetī fuissēmus.   [past]
If you had come, we would have been happy.

4 Mixed conditions and as if *clauses*

Latin too allows mixed conditions. The following has a past contrary-to-fact protasis and a present contrary-to-fact apodosis.

Sī vēnissēs, laetī essēmus.
If you had come, we would be happy.

● Conditional clauses of comparison are introduced by the following, all translated as *as if*:

velut sī   quāsī   ut sī   ac sī   tamquam sī

○ Since these express unreal situations, only the subjunctive is possible. The tense is determined by the sequence of tenses.

Ille laetē canit, velut sī vēnerim.   [primary sequence]
He sings happily, as if I came.

Ille laetē canit, velut sī veniam.   [primary sequence]
He sings happily, as if I were coming.

Ille laetē cecinit, velut sī vēnissem.   [secondary sequence]
He sang happily, as if I had come.

Ille laetē cecinit, velut sī venīrem.   [secondary sequence]
He sang happily, as if I came.

The following chart summarizes the basic conditional clause types along with
key elements of their translations:

	Protasis	*Apodosis*
General/Logical	indicative	indicative
Ideal	present subjunctive *should*	present subjunctive *would*
Unreal present	imperfect subjunctive *were*	imperfect subjunctive *would*
Unreal past	pluperfect subjunctive *had*	pluperfect subjunctive *would have*

Advanced topics

After **sī** and **nisī** the indefinite pronoun (**aliquis**, **aliquid**) and indefinite adjec-
tives (**aliquī**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**) appear without **ali-**.

Sī quis vēnisset, cōnātī essēmus.   [secondary sequence]
If someone had come, we would have tried.

Sī combines with the clitic **-ve** to produce **sīve** *whether*. **Sīve . . . sīve** means
whether . . . or.
    The negative of a protasis is **sī nōn** rather than **nē** when it is immediately
contradicting another statement (see Exercise 1, #1 for an example).

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 sī fēceris magnam habēbō grātiam. Sī nōn fēceris,   (Cicero *Fam.*)
   ignōscam
2 sī latet ars, prōdest   (Ovid *Am.*)
3 sī exerceās, conteritur   (Gellius)
4 nōn . . . possem vīvere nisī in lītterīs vīverem   (Cicero *Fam.*)
5 sī quis ā dominō prehenderētur, cōnsēnsu mīlitum   (Caesar *Civ.*)
   ēripiēbātur
6 haud rogem tē, sī sciam   (Plautus *Men.*)
7 sī intus esset, ēvocārem   (Plautus *Ps.*)
8 nisī Lātīnī arma suā sponte sūmpsissent, captī et dēlētī   (Livy)
   erāmus
9 sīve habēs quid, sīve nihil habēs, scrībe tamen!   (Cicero *Att.*)
10 vōbis rēgnum trādō firmum, sī bonī eritis, sīn malī,   (Sallust *Jug.*)
   imbēcillum

Exercise 2

Return to Exercise 1 and determine which type of conditional sentence each is:
general, ideal, unreal, or mixed.

Exercise 3

Translate the following into Latin.

1 If they were departing, we would speak the truth.
2 If you (sg.) had longed for destruction, you would have been shut off.
3 The soothsayer demands aid, if we pity him.
4 Unless something should lurk in the muddy lake, we would construct high
  sedges.
5 If we refuse pure death, we will not be carried back to the maple sanctuaries
  of the soothsayers.

Reading: Sinon lies to the Trojans

"Prōsequitur pavitāns et fictō pectore fātur:
    'Saepe fugam Danaī mōlīrī cupīvērunt Trōiā relictā et fessī longō bellō
discēdere. Fēcissent utinam! Saepe illōs aspera hiems pontī interclūsit et Auster
euntēs terruit. Praecipuē cum iam hic equus contextus trabibus acernīs stāret,

sonuērunt nimbī tōtō in aethere. Suspēnsī mittimus Eurypylum scītātum esse
ōrācula Phoebī. Is ex adytīs haec trīstia dicta reportat:

"Sanguine plācāvistis ventōs et virgine caesā, **cum** prīmum Īliacās, Danaī,
vēnistis ad ōrās. Sanguine **quaerendus est** reditus vōbīs animāque Argolicā
litandum est."

'Ut quae vōx ad aurēs vulgī vēnit, obstipuērunt animī gelidusque tremor per
īma ossa cucurrit. Cui fāta parant? Quem Apollō poscit? Hīc **Ithacus** vātem
Calchanta magnō tumultū prōtrahit in mediōs. Quae sint ea nūmina dīvōrum
Ulixēs flāgitat. Et mihi iam multī crūdēle scelus artificis huius dīxērant, et tacitī
vidēbant quae ventūra sint.

Bis quīnōs diēs silet Calchās tēctusque recūsat prōdere vōce suā quemquam
aut oppōnere quemquam mortī. Vix tandem, magnīs clāmōribus Ithacī āctus,
compositō cum Ulixe rumpit vōcem, et mē dēstinat ārae. Adsēnsērunt omnēs
et, quae sibi quisque timēbat, in exitium ūnīus miserī conversa tulērunt.

Iamque diēs īnfanda aderat. Mihi sacra parābantur et salsae frūgēs et circum
tempora vittae pōnēbantur. Ēripuī, fateor, mē lētō. Vincula rūpī, līmōsōque in
lacū per noctem obscūrus in ulvā dēlituī, dum vēla darent. Nec mihi iam est
spēs ūlla **videndī** patriam antīquam, nec dulcēs nātōs exoptātumque parentem,
quōs Danaī forsan poenās ob meum effugium reposcent et culpam hanc miserōrum
morte piābunt. Tē, Priame, per superōs et cōnscia nūmina vērī, per intemerātam
fidem, sī qua est quae restet adhūc mortālibus ūsquam, ōrō, miserēre labōrum
tantōrum, miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis!'"

Notes

cum – to be taken with **vēnistis**
quarendus est – *ought to be sought*; this is a passive periphrastic (see Unit 30)
litandum est – *it ought to be appeased*; this is another passive periphrastic
Ithacus = Ulixēs
videndī – *of seeing*; this is the genitive of a gerund (see Unit 28)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

acernus, -a, -um   *of maple*
adsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus   *to assent*
adytum, -ī   *sanctuary*
Apollō, Apollinis (m.)   *Apollo*
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus   *to cut down*
compositum, -ī   *agreement*
contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus   *to construct*
culpa, -ae   *blame*
cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus   *to desire*
dēlitēscō, -ere, -lituī   *to hide, lurk*
dēstinō (1)   *to mark, appoint*
dignus, -a, -um   *worthy; deserved*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus   *to depart*
effugium, -ī   *escape*
Eurypylus, -ī   *Eurypylus*
exitium, -ī   *destruction*
exoptō (1)   *to long for*
fidēs, -eī   *faith*
fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictus   *to make, mold; feign*
flāgitō (1)   *to demand*
gelidus, -a, -um   *cold*
intemerātus, -a, -um   *pure*
interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus   *to shut off*
lacus, -ūs   *lake*
lētum, -ī   *death*
līmōsus, -a, -um   *muddy*
litō (1)   *to appease*
misereor, -ērī, miseritus sum [+ gen.]   *to pity*
mōlior, -īrī, mōlītus   *to construct, build; undertake*
obscūrus, -a, -um   *dark; hidden*
oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus   *to expose*
ōrāculum, -ī   *oracle*
pavitō (1)   *to shiver*
piō (1)   *to appease*
prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum   *to follow; continue*
prōtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus   *to drag forward*
quīnī, -ae, -a   *five each*
quisque, quaeque, quidque   *each one, each thing*
recūsō (1)   *to refuse*
reportō (1)   *to carry back*
reposcō, -ere   *to demand*
rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus   *to break; utter*
sacer, sacra, sacrum   *holy, consecrated*
salsus, -a, -um   *salty*
suspēnsus, -a, -um   *anxious*
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus   *to cover; hide; protect*
tempus, temporis (nt.)   *temple (of head)*
tremor, tremōris (m.)   *tremble*
tumultus, -ūs   *tumult*
ulva, -ae   *sedge*
vātēs, vātis (m/f)   *soothsayer*
vērum, -ī   *truth*
vitta, -ae   *garland*
vix   *hardly; with difficulty*

UNIT 25
Doubting clauses

Background

English expresses *doubt* along the same lines as it expresses *fear* (Unit 26) and *prevention* (Unit 27). It uses a head verb or adjective which explicitly states the sensation, such as *doubt*, *doubtful*, or *dubious*. To this a subordinate clause introduced by *that* is appended:

*I doubt **that they're going to get home in time**.*
*It is far too doubtful **that we're going to win the match**.*
*It is dubious **that the politicians will compromise**.*

The subordinate clause can also be introduced by *if* or *whether* with no difference in meaning:

*I doubt **whether they're going to get home in time**.*
*It is far too doubtful **if we're going to win the match**.*

Latin structure

Latin requires an expression of doubt as well:

> **dubitō (1)**   *to doubt*
> **dubius, -a, -um**   *doubtful*

It also also requires a subordinate clause whose introductory conjunction depends on whether the expression of doubt is positive or negative.

> *Positive*: **doubt**   *Negative*: **not doubt**
>
> **num**   **quīn**
> **an**
> **utrum**

- All four possibilities translate as *that*, *whether*, or *if*
- As will be seen, doubting clauses share with fearing clauses (Unit 26) and clauses of prevention (Unit 27) a separation of introductory conjunctions based on whether the main clause is positive or negative.

The verb of the subordinate clause is in the subjunctive according to the sequence of tenses (Unit 10)

Dubitāmus num vērē loquāris.   [primary sequence]
We doubt whether you speak truly.

Dubitāvimus num vērē loquerēris.   [secondary sequence]
We doubted whether you were speaking truly.

Dubium est utrum sīs hīc.   [primary sequence]
It is doubtful whether you are here.

Dubitāvit an mē vīdisset.   [secondary sequence]
She doubted whether she had seen me.

Nōn dubitāmus quīn veniant.   [primary sequence]
We do not doubt whether they are coming.

Dubium nōn erat quīn Iuppiter laetus esset.   [secondary sequence]
It was not doubtful whether Jupiter was happy.

Notes

In positive doubting sentences, the subordinate clause is effectively identical to an *indirect question* (Unit 11)

- As in *indirect questions* a subsequent activity can be expressed via a periphrastic (see Unit 30):

    Dubitāmus num eam vīsūrī sīmus.   [primary sequence]
    We doubt whether we will see her.

    Nōn dubitāvit quīn nōs vīsūra esset.   [secondary sequence]
    She did not doubt that she would see us.

- **dubitō (1)** also means *to hesitate*, in which case it takes an infinitive and not a *doubting clause*

    Dubitāsne ingredī?
    Do you hesitate to enter?

Advanced topics

- Occasionally verbs of *doubting* may be followed by an indirect statement (Unit 4). See Exercise 1 for some examples.
- When the subject of a doubting clause is an interrogative such as **quis** *who* or **quī homō** *which man*, the conjunction **quīn** is required, as is the case with negative verbs of doubting.

> **Quis dubitat quīn rēgīna veniat?**
> *Who doubts that the queen is coming?*

○ This patterning of interrogatives with negatives is unsurprising, since cross-linguistically the two often share grammatical properties. In most dialects of English, for example, the adverb *anymore* can appear only in interrogative and negative sentences, and not in positive sentences (a * indicates that a sentence is ungrammatical):

> *Do you wonder if they still come anymore?*
> *They do not come anymore.*
> *They come anymore.* [intended meaning: *They come nowadays*]

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 nōn dubium est quīn uxōrem nōlit fīlius   (Terence *Ad.*)
2 nōn dubitārī dēbet quīn fuerint ante Homērum poētae   (Cicero *Brut.*)
3 nōn dubitem dīcere omnēs sapientēs semper esse beātōs   (Cicero *Fin.*)
4 nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum   (Caesar *Gal.*)
   Helvetiī possent
5 cum esset nōn dubium quid iūdicārī necesse esset   (Cicero *Clu.*)
6 nisī forte id etiam dubium est, quō modō iste praetor   (Cicero *Ver.*)
   factus sit
7 an dubium tibi est eam esse hanc?   (Plautus *Mil.*)
8 nōn equidem dubitō quīn prīmum inimīca bonōrum   (Catullus)
   lingua exsecta avidō sit data vulturiō
9 nōn dubitō quīn ad tē statim veniam   (Cicero *Att.*)
10 nōn dubitāvit crūs meum serrātō vexāre morsū   (Petronius)

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin.

1 I doubt whether he forgets the statue of Pallas.
2 Grandsons, do not hesitate to appease the image with a promise!
3 We did not doubt that the creator of the vulnerable statue might testify.
4 Thus it was doubtful whether Jupiter might hate the sweat of the soldiers in his temple.
5 It is not doubted that the swords may root out the oak from the kingdom.

Reading: Sinon tells of the Trojan horse

"Hīc ē lacrimīs vītam damus et miserēscimus ultrō. Ipse Priamus prīmus manicās atque arta vincula levārī virō iubet. Dictīs ita fātur amīcō:

'Quisquis es, noster eris. Oblīvīscere hinc iam āmissōs Grāiōs! Mihi rogantī haec vēra ēdissere! Quō mōlem hanc immānis equī statuērunt Graecī? Quis auctor? Quid petunt? Quae rēligiō? Aut quae māchina bellī?'

Ille dolīs īnstrūctus et arte Pelasgā sustulit exūtās vinculīs palmās ad sīdera et ait:

'Vōs aeternī ignēs, et nōn violābile vestrum nūmen testor. Vōs ārae ēnsēsque nefandī, quōs fūgī, vittaeque deōrum, quās hostia gessī. Fās mihi Grāiōrum sacrāta iūra resolvere. Fās mihi ōdisse virōs atque omnia ferre **sub aurās**, sī qua tegunt. Teneor nōn lēgibus patriae ūllīs. Tū, Trōia servāta, modo maneās in prōmissīs fidemque servēs, sī vēra feram, sī magna rependam.

Omnis spēs Danaōrum et fīdūcia coeptī bellī semper Palladis auxiliīs stetit. Sed enim impius Tȳdīdēs scelerumque inventor Ulixēs adgressī sunt āvellere sacrātō ā templō fātāle Palladium, caesīs custōdibus summae arcis. Corripuērunt sacram effigiem manibusque cruentīs virgineās dīvae vittās ausī sunt contingere. Ex illō tempore spēs Danaōrum flūxit ac retrō sublāpsa relāta est. Frāctae vīrēs sunt. Āversa est deae mēns.

Nec dubiīs mōnstrīs ea signa Trītōnia dedit. Vix positum erat in castrīs simulācrum, arsērunt coruscae flammae lūminibus arrēctīs, salsusque sūdor per artūs īvit. Terque dea ipsa ā solō, mīrābile **dictū**, ēmicuit parmamque ferēns hastamque trementem. Extemplō Calchās canit fugā **temptanda esse** aequora nec posse Pergamam Argolicīs tēlīs exscindī, nī illī ōmina repetant. Nūmen redūcant, quod pelagō et curvīs carīnīs sēcum āvēxit.

Et nunc patriās Mycēnās ventō petīvērunt, arma deōsque parant vel comitēs pelagōque remēnsō imprōvīsī aderunt. Ita dīgerit ōmina Calchās. Monitī hanc prō Palladiō effigiem prō nūmine laesō statuērunt, ut nefās trīste piārētur. Hanc tamen immēnsam rōboribus textīs mōlem Calchās attollere caelōque ēdūcere iussit, nē recipī portīs aut dūcī in moenia posset, nec populum **sub antīquā rēligiōne** tuērī posset. Nam sī vestra manus dōna Minervae violāvisset, tum magnum exitium imperiō Priamī Phrygibusque futūrum sit. Quod ōmen deī in

ipsum vātem convertant! Sīn manibus vestrīs vestram in urbem ascendisset, ultrō Asia magnō bellō Pelopēa ad moenia ventūra sit. Nostrōs nepōtēs ea fāta maneant.'

Tālibus īnsidiīs periūrīque arte Sinōnis crēdita est rēs. Captī sumus dolīs lacrimīsque coāctīs, nōs, quōs neque Tȳdīdēs nec Achillēs domuērunt, nōn annī decem, nōn mīlle carīnae."

Notes

sub aurās – *into the light of day*
dictū – *to see*; this is a supine (see Unit 32)
temptanda esse – *ought to be tried*; this is a passive periphrastic (see Unit 30)
sub antīquā rēligiōne – *as a replacement for the Palladium, an instrument of their old religion*

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

adgredior, -ī, -gressus sum   *to approach; attack*
auctor, auctōris (m.)   *author; creator*
āvellō, -ere, -vulsī, -vulsus   *to tear away*
contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus   *to touch*
decem   *ten*
dīgerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestus   *to explain*
domō, -āre, domuī, domitus   *to tame*
ēdisserō, -ere, -disseruī, -dissertus   *to tell*
effigiēs, -ēī   *image*
ēmicō, -āre, -micuī, -micātus   *to dash out*
ēnsis, ēnsis (m.)   *sword*
exscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus   *to root out*
fātālis, fātāle   *fatal*
hostia, -ae   *sacrifice; victim*
immēnsus, -a, -um   *vast*
imperium, -ī   *command; kingdom*
inventor, inventōris (m.)   *inventor*
ita   *thus*
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus   *to remain; await*
manicae, -ārum   *handcuffs*
miserēscō, -ere   *to pity*
moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus   *to warn*
mōnstrum, -ī   *marvel; monster*
nefās (nt.)   *sin, wrong*
nepōs, nepōtis (m.)   *grandson; descendant*
oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum [+ gen.]   *to forget*
ōdī, ōdisse   *to hate*
Palladium, -ī   *statue of Pallas*
parma, -ae   *shield*
Pelopēus, -a, -um   *of King Pelops (a Greek)*

periūrus, -a, -um   *lying*
prōmissum, -ī   *promise*
quis   *who?*
rēligiō, rēligiōnis (f.)   *offering; religion*
remētior, -īrī, -mēnsus sum   *to go back over; cross again*
resolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus   *to free*
respendō, -ere, -spendī, -spēnsus   *to repay*
retrō   *back*
rōbur, rōboris (nt.)   *oak; strength*
simulācrum, -ī   *image, statue*
sublābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum   *to slip down*
sūdor, sūdōris (m.)   *sweat*
sustlit   see ***tollō***
testor (1)   *to testify*
texō, -ere, texuī, textus   *to weave*
Trītōnia, -ae   *Minerva*
ultrō   *voluntarily; furthermore*
violābilis, violābile   *vulnerable*
violō (1)   *to violate*
virgineus, -a, -um   *virgin*

UNIT 26
Fearing clauses

Background

Unsurprisingly, a fearing construction involves first and foremost a word expressing the notion of fear. Often what is feared is simply a noun, serving as a direct object of the verb:

*I fear **snakes**.*
*The students feared **the exam**.*

What is feared may also be in a prepositional phrase depending on a noun of fearing:

*I had no fear **of my neighbor**.*

However, a clause expressing a verbal action or state may also cause fear. Such a clause is a *fearing clause*:

*I fear **that I will get stuck in the snake exhibit**.*
*The students feared **that they would never finish the exam**.*
*I had no fear **that the soldiers would come home soon**.*

Latin structure

The verbs expressing fear in Latin are most commonly:

> **metuō, metuere, metuī**   *to fear*
> **timeō, timēre, timuī**   *to fear*
> **vereor, verērī, veritus sum**   *to fear*

For examples of other words, either verbs or non-verbs, introducing fearing clauses, see Exercise 1.

The fearing clause itself is introduced by:

| **nē** in the positive |
| **ut** in the negative |

It takes the subjunctive according to the sequence of tenses (Unit 10).

Vereor nē urbs dēleātur.　　　[primary sequence]
I fear that the city may be destroyed.

Timēbam ut meus fīlius venīret.　[secondary sequence]
I was afraid that my son might not come.

Veritus sum nē discēssissēs.　　[secondary sequence]
I feared that you had left.

Verēmur ut discēsseris.　　　　[primary sequence]
We fear that you have not left.

The use of **ut** alone in a negative clause and **nē** in a positive one is certainly striking.

- The historical roots underlying this construction were two independent thoughts:

  ○ A verb of fearing:　**Vereor.** *I fear*
  ○ An optative subjunctive expressing what is wished (Unit 12)　**Nē urbs dēleātur.** *May the city not be destroyed!*

- Since one fears that the wish may not come true, the optative subjunctive acquired a negative overtone when it was subordinated to a verb of fearing into a single complex sentence.
- Since the conjunctions introducing the wish (**ut** and **nē**) were not changed, they simply acquired the opposite meaning:

  ○ negative overtone + **ut** *that* = **ut** meaning *that . . . not*
  ○ negative overtone + **nē** *that . . . not* = **nē** meaning *that*

Notes

The negative **ut** is replaced by **nē . . . nōn**:

- often when the verb of fearing itself is negative:

  Nōn verentur nē urbs nōn dēleātur.
  They do not fear that the city may not be destroyed.

- when the notion of fear is *not* expressed by an explicit verb of fearing but by an expression involving a noun:

    Timor incēssit mīlitēs nē urbem nōn caperent.
    Fear seized the soldiers that they might not capture the city.

Nonetheless, **nē . . . nōn** is attested with some of the more common verbs of fearing, as one example in Exercise 1 shows.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam	(Cicero *Leg.*)
2	metuō nē id cōnsiliī cēperimus quod nōn facile explicāre possīmus	(Cicero *Fam.*)
3	timeō nē tibi nihil praeter lacrimās queam reddere	(Cicero *Planc.*)
4	id pavēs, nē dūcās tū illam, tū autem, ut dūcās	(Terence *An.*)
5	ōrnāmenta quae locāvī metuō ut possim recipere	(Plautus *Cur.*)
6	verēbātur enim vidēlicet nē quid apud vōs populumque Rōmānum dē exīstimātiōne suā dēperderet	(Cicero *Font.*)
7	veritī nē noctū cōnflīgere cōgerentur aut nē ab equitātū Caesaris tenērentur	(Caesar *Civ.*)
8	pavor cēperat mīlitēs nē mortiferum esset vulnus Scīpiōnis	(Livy)
9	sēdit quī timuit nē nōn succēderet	(Horace *Ep.*)
10	timeō ut sustineās	(Cicero *Fam.*)

Exercise 2

Translate into Latin.

1 The girl fears that she may not escape from the scaly coils of the snake.
2 We had feared that he might not disperse the branches by the ax.
3 Girls, do not fear that Cassandra may be stopped at the solemn shrine!
4 I was fearing that, after the rope had been twisted, terror might encircle the lifeless ones.
5 They fear that the wheels are breaking because of the storms.

Reading: The fate of Laocoon and the entrance of the horse

"Hīc aliud ōmen māius multō miserīs nōbīs obicitur atque imprōvida pectora turbat. Lāocoōn, ductus sorte Neptūnō sacerdōs, sollemnēs ad ārās taurum ingentem mactābat. Ecce autem geminī anguēs immēnsīs orbibus ā Tenedō tranquillum per altum incumbent pelagō. Horrēscō referēns. Pariter ad lītora tendunt. Pectora quōrum arrēcta inter flūctūs, iubae sanguineae superant undās. Pars cētera pontum pōne **legit** sinuantque immēnsa volūmine terga. Fit sonitus spūmante salō. Iamque arva tenēbant. Ardentēs oculōs sanguine et igne suffectī sunt, sībila ōra linguīs vibrantibus lambēbant.

Diffugimus vīsū exsanguēs. Illī agmine certō **Lāocoönta** petunt. Et prīmum parva corpora duōrum nātōrum uterque serpēns implicat et miserōs artūs morsū dēpascitur. Post ipsum Lāocoönta auxiliō subeuntem ac tēla ferentem corripiunt. Spīrīs ingentibus ligant. Et iam bis **medium** amplexī sunt, bis collō squāmea terga circumdant, superant capitibus et cervīcibus altīs. Ille simul manibus tendit dīvellere nōdōs, perfūsus vittās saniē ātrōque venēnō. Clāmōrēs simul horrendōs ad sīdera tollit. Quālis mūgītus, cum saucius taurus āram fūgit et incertam **secūrim** cervīce excussit. At geminī dracōnēs lāpsū dēlūbra ad summa effugiunt saevaeque petunt Trītōnidis arcem, Sub pedibus deae clipeīque teguntur.

Tum vērō tremefacta per pectora cūnctīs novus pavor īnsinuat. Scelus expendisse merentem Lāocoönta fantur, quī cuspide sacrum rōbur **laeserit** et tergō scelerātam hastam **intorserit**. **Dūcendum** ad sēdēs in templō simulācrum esse **ōranda** que nūmina dīvae esse conclāmant.

Dīvidimus mūrōs et moenia urbis pandimus. Accingunt omnēs operī. Pedibus **lāpsūs rotārum** subiciunt, et stuppea vincula collō intendunt. Scandit fātālis māchina mūrōs fēta armīs. Puerī circum innūptaeque puellae sacra canunt fūnemque manū contingere gaudent. Illa subit mediaeque urbī mināns inlābitur. Ō patria, Ō divōrum domus Īlium et incluta bellō moenia Dardaniōrum! Quater ipsō in līmine portae substitit atque arma in uterō quater sonitum dedērunt. Īnstāmus tamen immemorēs caecīque furōre. Mōnstrum īnfēlīx in sacrātā sistimus arce. Tunc etiam fātīs futūrīs aperit Cassandra ōra, quae deī iussū nōn umquam crēdita sunt ā Teucrīs. Nōs miserī, quibus ultimus est ille diēs, dēlūbra deōrum fēstā fronde per urbem vēlāmus."

Notes

legit – *skims*

Lāocoönta – accusative sg. of a Greek name (see Unit 36)

medium – *waist*

secūrim – this is an *i*-stem accusative sg. which is in variation with *-em* (see Unit 16 of *IBL*)

laeserit and **intorserit** – perfect subjunctives in causal relative clauses (see Unit 19)

dūcendum – *ought to be led*; a passive periphrastic (see Unit 30)

ōranda – *ought to be prayed for*; another passive periphrastic

lāpsūs rotārum – *glidings of wheels = rolling wheels*

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

amplector, -ī, amplexus sum *to encircle; embrace*
anguis, anguis (m.) *snake*
Cassandra, -ae *Cassandra (a prophetess)*
cēterus, -a, -um *remaining, other*
clipeus, -ī *shield*
conclāmō (1) *to shout*
dēlūbrum, -ī *shrine*
dēpascor, -ī, -pāstus sum *to devour*
diffugiō, -ere, -fūgī *to disperse*
dīvellō, -ere, -vulsī, -vulsus *to tear apart*
dracō, dracōnis (m.) *serpent*
duo, duae, duo *two*
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī *to escape*
expendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsus *to pay for*
exsanguis, exsangue *pale, lifeless*
fēstus, -a, -um *festive*
fētus, -a, -um *pregnant; fat*
frōns, frondis (f.) *branch*
fūnis, fūnis (m.) *rope*
horrēscō, -ere, horruī *to shudder*
immemor, immemoris *heedless*
imprōvidus, -a, -um *thoughtless*
inclutus, -a, -um *famous*
inlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum *to glide in*
īnsinuō (1) *to creep*
intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus *to stretch*
intorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortus *to hurl at*
iuba, -ae *mane; crest*
iussus, -ūs *command*
lambō, -ere, lambī *to lick*
lāpsus, -ūs *gliding*
ligō (1) *to bind*
lingua, -ae *tongue*
mactō (1) *to sacrifice*
mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritus *to deserve; merit*
mūgītus, -ūs *lowing*
obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus *to set before*
opus, operis (nt.) *task, work*
parvus, -a, -um *small*
pavor, pavōris (m.) *terror*
perfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus *to soak*
pōne [+ acc.] *behind*
puella, -ae *girl*
quater *four times*
sanguineus, -a, -um *bloody*
saniēs, -ēī *blood*

saucius, -a, -um   *wounded*
scandō, -ere, scandī, scānsus   *to climb*
scelerātus, -a, -um   *wicked*
secūris, secūris (f.)   *ax*
serpēns, serpentis (m.)   *snake*
sībilus, -a, -um   *hissing*
sinuō (1)   *to fold, twist*
sistō, -ere, stetī, status   *to stop*
sollemnis, sollemne   *solemn*
sonitus, -ūs   *sound*
spīra, -ae   *fold, coil*
squāmeus, -a, -um   *scaly*
stuppeus, -a, -um   *of hemp*
subsistō, -ere, -stitī   *to stop*
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus   *to supply*
tranquillus, -a, -um   *tranquil*
tremefaciō, -ere, tremefēcī, tremefactus   *to alarm*
Trītōnis, Trītōnidis (f.)   *Minerva*
tunc   *then*
ultimus, -a, -um   *last, final*
umquam   *ever*
vēlō (1)   *to cover*
vibrō (1)   *to vibrate*
volūmen, volūminis (nt.)   *fold, coil*

UNIT 27
Clauses of prevention

Background

The following are all instances of someone preventing someone else from doing something:

> *They prevented **me from sleeping**.*
> *We prohibited **him from leaving**.*
> *I forbid **her from speaking**.*

Note that a verb of prevention is present, specifically: *prevent*, *prohibit*, *forbid*. Other verbs of prevention include *deter*, *hinder*, *obstruct*.

The action or state that is prevented is expressed in English by *from* + a participle, with the subject of the participle being in the accusative.

- hence *me*, *him*, and *her* in the examples above and not the nominatives *I*, *he*, and *she*.

The verb *forbid* may also take a dependent infinitival phrase:

> *I forbid **her to speak**.*

Latin structure

To begin with, Latin prevention sentences consist of a verb of preventing, the most common being:

> **dēterreō, -ēre, dēterruī, dēterritus**   *to deter, prevent*
> **impediō, -īre, impedīvī, impedītus**   *to prevent*
> **obstō, -āre, obstitī, obstatus**   *to hinder*
> **recūsō (1)**   *to refuse*
> **teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus**   *to keep from*

These verbs introduce a dependent clause indicating what is prevented. This subordinate clause is introduced by:

- **quōminus** or **nē** when the verb of prevention is positive
- **quōminus** or **quīn** when the verb of prevention is negative

The verb of the dependent clause is in the subjunctive, following the sequence of tenses (Unit 10).

- Only the contemporaneous subjunctives (*present and imperfect*) are possible, since the thing which is prevented cannot have occurred prior to the act of preventing.
  - ○ This is similar to the situation with purpose clauses (Unit 7) and result clauses (Units 13 and 14).

- The conjunctions **quōminus**, **nē**, and **quīn** all effectively translate as *from* in the English counterparts of prevention clauses.
  - ○ Observe that **nē** is not translated as ***from . . . not***.
    - ■ This is identical to the situation with *fearing clauses* (Unit 26) in which the overarching negative overtone of the verb of fearing cancels the inherently negative meaning of **nē**.
    - ■ Likewise, in *prevention clauses* the verb of prevention has an inherently negative meaning which cancels the inherently negative meaning of **nē**.

- Negating the verb in a prevention clause seems to be rare to non-existent in Latin.
  - ○ This is unsurprising, since even in English one is more inclined to state what action or state someone is preventing from occurring rather than what non-action or non-state someone is preventing from occurring:

    The parents forbade the child from being sad.

    instead of:

    The parents forbade the child from not being happy.

Examples

Mīlitēs impedīvērunt quōminus/nē inīmicī   [secondary sequence]
  vēla darent.
The soldiers prevented the enemies from setting sail.

Tempestātēs nōn impedīverant quōminus/quīn   [secondary sequence]
  nautae vēla darent.
The storms had not prevented the sailors from setting sail.

Nōn obstō quōminus/quīn canis currat.　　　[primary sequence]
I do not prevent the dog from running.

Iuppiter recūsat quōminus/nē hominēs pācem　[primary sequence]
　inveniant.
Jupiter objects to men finding peace.

Rēgīna dēterrēbit quōminus/nē rēx fētur.　　[primary sequence]
The queen will prevent the king from speaking.

Additional notes

The following two verbs of prevention most frequently take infinitives and not
prevention clauses:

> **prohibeō, -ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus**　*to prohibit*
> **vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus**　*to forbid; oppose*

Mīlitēs inimīcōs vēla dare prohibent.
The soldiers prohibit the enemies from setting sail.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1　neque impediō quōminus, sī tibi ita placuerit, etiam hīsce　(Cicero *Fam.*)
　eum ornēs glōriolae īnsignibus
2　impedior nē plūra dīcam　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　(Cicero *Sul.*)
3　quid obstat quōminus sit beātus?　　　　　　　　　　　(Cicero *N.D.*)
4　aetās nōn impedit quōminus litterārum studia teneāmus.　(Cicero *Sen.*)
5　potuistī prohibēre nē fieret　　　　　　　　　　　　　(Cicero *Off.*)
6　parentēs prohibentur adīre ad līberōs　　　　　　　　　(Cicero *Ver.*)
7　continērī quīn complectar nōn queō　　　　　　　　　　(Plautus *Rud.*)
8　servitūs mea mihi interdīxit nē quid mīrer meum malum　(Plautus *Per.*)
9　quamquam rīdentem dīcere vērum quid vetat?　　　　　(Horace *S.*)
10　quī diēs tōtōs aut vim fierī vetat aut restituī factam iubet　(Cicero *Caec.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following. The verb to use for each sentence is indicated.

1 We hinder the spoils from being entrusted to Neoptolemus.   [**obstāre**]
2 The weary watchmen were prevented from having   [**impedīre**]
   serene sleep.
3 The phalanx prevents the two-horse chariots from   [**prohibēre**]
   defending the shrine.
4 The insolent inventor had not been forbidden from   [**vetāre**]
   loosening his hands.
5 The male servant will have refused that the sentinels bury   [**recūsāre**]
   an unworthy man.

Reading: Hector appears to Aeneas

"Vertitur intereā nox et ruit ex Ōceanō umbrā magnā involvēns caelum terramque
polumque Myrmidonumque dolōs. Fūsī per moenia Teucrī conticuērunt. Sopor
fessōs artūs complectitur.

Et iam Argīva phalānx īnstrūctīs nāvibus ībat ā Tenedō per amīca silentia
tacitae lūnae lītora nōta petēns. Cum flammās rēgia puppis extulerat, Sinōn
dēfēnsus fātīs inīquīs deōrum laxat fūrtim Danaōs inclūsōs in uterō et pīnea
claustra. Equus patefactus illōs ad aurās reddit. Laetī ex cavō rōbore sē prōmunt:
Thessandrus Sthenelusque ducēs et dīrus Ulixēs, quī lāpsī sunt per fūnem
dēmissum, Acamāsque Thoāsque Pēlīdēsque Neoptolemus prīmusque Machāōn
et Menelāus et ipse dolī fabricātor Epēos. Invādunt urbem somnō vīnōque
sepultam. Caeduntur vigilēs, portīsque patentibus accipiunt omnēs sociōs atque
agmina cōnscia iungunt.

Tempus erat in quō prīma quiēs mortālibus aegrīs incipit et dōnum dīvōrum
grātissimum serpit. In somnīs, ecce, ante oculōs maestisismus Hector vīsus est
mihi adesse largōsque flētūs effundere, ut quondam raptātus bīgīs, āterque cruentō
pulvere perque pedēs tumentēs trāiectus lōrīs. Ille mihi quantum mūtātus ab illō
Hectore quī redit exuviās Achillī indūtus est, vel Danaōrum puppibus Phrygiōs
ignēs iaculātus est. Squālentem barbam et concrētōs sanguine crīnēs vulneraque
illa gerēbat, quae plūrima circum mūrōs patriōs accēpit. Ultrō flēns ipse vidēbar
compellāre virum et maestās vōcēs exprōmere:

'Ō lūx Trōiae, spēs Ō fīdissima Teucrōrum, quae tanta mora tē tenuit? Quibus
ab ōrīs, Hector exspectāte, venīs? Ut tē post multa fūnera tuōrum virōrum, post
variōs labōrēs hominumque urbisque tē dēfessī aspicimus! Quae causa indigna
serēnōs vultūs foedāvit? Aut cūr haec vulnera cernō?'

Ille nihil dīcit nec mē quaerentem vāna verba morātur. Sed graviter gemitūs
īmō dē pectore dūcēns, ait:

'Heu fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs ā flammīs ēripe! Hostis habet mūrōs. Ruit altō
ā culmine Trōia. Sat patriae Priamōque datum est. Sī Pergama **dextrā** dēfendī

possent, etiam **hāc** dēfēnsa fuissent. Sacra suōsque penātēs tibi commendat Trōia. Hōs cape comitēs fātōrum! Hīs moenia magna quaere, quae pererrātō pontō dēnique statuēs!'

Sīc ait et manibus vittās Vestamque potentem aeternumque ignem adytīs ē penetrālibus effert."

Notes

dextrā – **dextrā manū**
hāc – **hāc manū**

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

Acamās, Acamantis (m.) *Acamas*
aeger, aegra, aegrum *sick; weary*
amīcus, -a, -um *friendly*
barba, -ae *beard*
bīgae, -ārum *two-horse chariot*
commendō (1) *to entrust*
compellō (1) *to address*
concrētus, -a, -um *congealed*
cōnscius, -a, -um *aware; confederate*
culmen, culminis (nt.) *top; summit*
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus *to defend*
Epēos, Epēī (m.) *Epeos*
exprōmō, -ere, -prōmpsī, prōmptus *to bring out*
exspectō (1) *to await*
exuviae, -ārum *clothing; spoils; skin*
fabricātor, fabricātōris (m.) *inventor*
fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētus *to weep*
grātus, -a, -um *pleasing*
indignus, -a, -um *unworthy*
inīquus, -a, -um *unjust*
invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus *to get in; invade*
involvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus *to wrap*
laxō (1) *to loosen*
lōrum, -ī *rein; strap*
Machāōn, Machāonis (m.) *Machaon*
Menelāus, -ī *Menelaus*
Neoptolemus, -ī *Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus)*
nihil *nothing*
patefaciō, -ere, patefēcī, patefactus *to open*
Pēlīdēs, Pēlīdae (m.) *descendant of Peleus*
penetrālis, penetrāle *inner*
pererrō (1) *to wander through*
phalānx, phalangis (f.) *phalanx*
pīneus, -a, -um *of pine*

prīmus, -a, -um *first; chief*
prōmō, -ere, prōmpsī, prōmptus *to bring out*
redeō, redīre, redīvī, reditus *to return*
sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī, sepultus *to bury*
serēnus, -a, -um *serene*
serpō, -ere, serpsī, serptus *to crawl*
sopor, sopōris (m.) *sleep*
squāleō, -ēre, squāluī *to be filthy*
Sthenelus, -ī *Sthenelus*
Thessandrus, -ī *Thessandrus*
Thoās, Thoantis (m.) *Thoas*
tumeō, -ēre, tumuī *to swell*
vigil, vigilis (m/f) *watchman, sentinel*

UNIT 28
Gerunds

Background

Verbal roots can form nouns, functioning in the different roles that nouns do: subject, object, object of preposition.

- Such verbal nouns are *gerunds*.
- English forms gerunds by suffixing *-ing* to the verbal root.

  ○ Observe that English gerunds are identical in form to *participles* (Unit 33 of *IBL*) which also end in *-ing*.

  > ***Running*** *is a healthy activity.*   [subject]
  > *I like* ***running****.*   [direct object]
  > *He lost weight by* ***running****.*   [object of preposition]

Present infinitives can also serve as verbal nouns, though they are limited to subject and object roles:

> ***To run*** *is a healthy activity.*   [subject]
> *I like* ***to run*** *every afternoon.*   [direct object]

Being verbal, gerunds can take objects [first two examples below] and also be modified by adverbial phrases [third example] just like verbs:

> *I enjoy* ***preparing dinner****.*
> *He lost weight by* ***eating healthy foods****.*
> *I like* ***running often****.*

Latin structure

The gerund is formed by:

- dropping *-re* from the 2nd principal part

amāre	→ **amā-**	*to love*
docēre	→ **docē-**	*to teach*
vincere	→ **vince-**	*to conquer*
capere (capiō)	→ **cape-**	*to seize*
audīre	→ **audī-**	*to hear*

- shortening the final vowel in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, while converting the 3rd-*iō* and 4th conjugations' final vowels to **-ie-**:

amā-	→ **ama-**
docē-	→ **doce-**
vince-	→ **vince-**
cape-	→ **capie-**
audī-	→ **audie-**

- adding the affix **-ndum**:

ama-	→ **amandum**	*loving*
doce-	→ **docendum**	*teaching*
vince-	→ **vincendum**	*conquering*
capie-	→ **capiendum**	*seizing*
audie-	→ **audiendum**	*hearing*

Since the gerund is a noun it is declined. It follows the 2nd declension neuter singular:

Nom.	–
Gen.	**amandī**
Dat.	**amandō**
Acc.	**amandum**
Abl.	**amandō**

- Only two of the seven irregular verbs of Latin possess gerunds:

īre *to go*	→	**eundum**
ferre *to carry*	→	**ferendum**

- Note that the gerund does not form a nominative. This role is filled by the present infinitive, which acts as a neuter noun.

    Vidēre ēnsēs est facile.
    Seeing the swords is easy.

- The gerund is identical in form to the neuter singular of the future passive participle, also known as the gerundive (see the following unit).

    Amāre est dōnum deōrum.   [nominative]
    To love is the gift of the gods.

    Rōmānīs studium pugnandī erat.   [genitive]
    The Romans had a desire of fighting.

    Hic mīles idōneus pugnandō est.   [dative]
    This soldier is suitable for fighting.

    Ad interficiendum vēnimus.   [accusative]
    We came to kill.

    Hoc vincendō fortiōrēs erimus.   [ablative[
    By conquering it we will be stronger.

Expressing purpose

Three special constructions involving the gerund are used to express purpose:

- **ad** + accusative of gerund

    Ad hoc videndum vēnimus.
    We came to see it.

- genitive of gerund + **causā** *for the sake of*

    Hoc videndī causā vēnimus.
    We came for the sake of seeing it.
    We came to see it.

- genitive of gerund + **gratiā** *for the sake of*

    Hoc videndī gratiā vēnimus.
    We came for the sake of seeing it.
    We came to see it.

The accusative of the gerund is limited to the purpose construction with **ad**.

- The present infinitive serves any other accusative role, including direct object:

    Amō currere.
    I love to run.

While gerunds can take direct objects, this seems to be limited to both early and post-classical authors.

- In Classical Latin a gerund takes a direct object only when the object is a neuter pronoun or adjective as seen in some of the examples given above.

    Early Latin and Post-Classical
    Parentēs videndī gratiā ībō.
    I will go in order to see the parents.

Where a gerund would take a non-pronominal direct object, the gerundive is used instead (see the next unit).

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 nihil enim ā mē fierī ita vidēbunt ut sibi sit dēlinquendī locus	(Cicero *Att.*)
2 nūlla rēs tantum ad dīcendum prōficit quantum scrīptiō	(Cicero *Brut.*)
3 equitēs quoque tegendō satis latebrōsum locum	(Livy)
4 cupidus redeundī domum	(Terence *Hec.*)
5 male fīdem servandō abrogant fīdem	(Plautus *Trin.*)
6 dē bene beātēque vīvendō disputāre	(Cicero *Fin.*)
7 hominis mēns discendō alitur et cōgitandō	(Cicero *Off.*)
8 ex discendō capiunt voluptātem	(Cicero *Fin.*)
9 ignōrant cupidī maledīcendī plūs invidiam quam convīcium posse	(Quintilian)
10 ad nōn pārendum senātuī	(Livy)

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin.

1　The reason of withdrawing from the city was sufficient.
2　Let us join our sons-in-law in order to besiege the opposing men.
3　Concealing the cows and crops was difficult.
4　Assail (sg.) the battle line with your glistening blade in order to halt the glory of Fury.
5　The terryfing horror of dying fell upon the mad neighbors.

Reading: The frenzy of war begins

"Dīversō intereā lūctū moenia miscentur et magis atque magis, quamquam sēcrēta erat domus parentis meī Anchīsae arboribusque obtēcta recessit, clārēscunt sonitūs armōrumque ingruit horror. Excutior somnō et summī tēctī fastīgia **ascēnsū superō**. Arrēctīs auribus astō. Velutī cum in segetem flamma furentibus Austrīs incidit, aut rapidus montānō flūmine torrēns agrōs sternit, sata laeta **boum**que labōrēs sternit praecipitēsque silvās trahit. Stupet īnscius pāstor altō dē vertice sonitum accipiēns.

Tum vērō manifesta fidēs Sinōnis, Danaōrumque patēscunt īnsidiae. Iam Dēiphobī ampla domus dedit ruīnam Volcānō superante. Iam domus proximī Ūcalegontis ardet. Sīgēa freta lāta igne relūcent. Exoritur clāmorque virōrum clangorque turbārum.

Arma āmēns capiō. Nec satis ratiōnis in armīs est, sed ardent animī glomerāre manum bellō et concurrere in arcem cum sociīs. Furor īraque mentem praecipitat. Sciēns pulchrum esse in armīs mōrī succurrit.

Ecce autem tēlīs Achīvōrum ēlāpsus Panthūs, Panthūs Othryadēs, sacerdōs arcis Phoebī, āmēns sacra ad līmina cursū tendit. Manū victōsque deōs parvumque nepōtem ipse trahit.

'In quō locō rēs summa est, Panthū? Quam arcem prehendimus?'

Vix ea fātus eram cum taliā gemitū reddit:

'Vēnit **summa** diēs et inēluctābile tempus Trōiae. Fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium et ingēns glōria Teucrōrum. Ferus Iuppiter omnia Argōs trānstulit. Incēnsā in urbe Danaī dominantur. Arduus in mediīs moenibus astāns equus fundit armātōs victorque Sinōn incendia miscet īnsultāns. Aliī portīs bipatentibus adsunt, quot mīlia umquam magnīs Mycēnīs vēnērunt. Obsēdērunt aliī angusta viārum tēlīs oppositīs. Stat ferrī aciēs mūcrōne coruscō stricta, parāta necī. Vix prīmī vigilēs portārum proelium temptant et in caecō **Mārte** resistunt.'

Tālibus Othryadae dictīs et nūmine dīvōrum in flammās et in arma feror, quō trīstis Erīnys, quō fremitus vocat, sublātus ad aethera clāmor. Addunt sē sociōs Rhīpeus et maximus armīs Ēpytus, oblātī per lūnam. Hypanis Dymāsque laterī nostrō adglomerant, iuvenisque Coroebus Mygdonidēs, quī illīs diēbus ad Trōiam forte vēnerat īnsānō **Cassandrae** amōre incēnsus. Gener auxilium Priamō Phrygibusque ferēbat. Coroebus īnfēlīx, quī nōn spōnsae furentis praecepta audīverit!"

Notes

ascēnsū superō – *I climb*
boum = **bovum**
summa – *last*
in caecō Mārte – *in blind battle = battling in the dark*
Cassandrae – daughter of Priam whom Coroebus loved and wished to marry

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

adglomerō (1)   *to join*
āmēns, āmentis   *mad, insane*
angustum, -ī   *narrowness*
arduus, -a, -um   *towering over*
ascēnsus, -ūs   *ascent*
bipatēns, bipatentis   *double*
bōs, bovis (m/f)   *ox, cow*
clārēscō, -ere, clāruī   *to become clear*
clangor, clangōris (m.)   *clang, noise*
Coroebus, -ī   *Coroebus*
coruscus, -a, -um   *waving; glistening*
Dēiphobus, -ī   *Deiphobus (a Trojan)*
Dymās, Dymantis (m.)   *Dymas*
Ēpytus, -ī   *Epytus*
Erīnys, Erīnyos (f.)   *Fury*
exorior, -īrī, -ortus sum   *to rise up*
fremitus, -ūs   *roar*
gener, -ī (m.)   *son-in-law*
glōria, -ae   *glory*
horror, horrōris (m.)   *horror*
Hypanis, Hypanis (m.)   *Hypanis*
incidō, -ere, -cidī   *to fall upon*
inēluctābilis, inēluctābile   *inescapable*
ingruō, -ere, -gruī   *to assail*
īnsānus, -a, -um   *insane*
īnsultō (1)   *to insult, taunt*
manifestus, -a, -um   *manifest*
montānus, -a, -um   *of a mountain*
morior, -ī, mortuus sum   *to die*
mūcrō, mūcrōnis (m.)   *edge; blade*
Mygdonidēs, Mygdonidae (m.)   *son of Mygdon*
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus   *to besiege*
obtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus   *to conceal*
oppositus, -a, -um   *opposing*
Othryadēs, Othryadae (m.)   *son of Othrys*
Panthūs, Panthī (m.)   *Panthus*
patēscō, -ere, patuī   *to lie open*
praeceps, praecipitis   *head first*

praeceptum, -ī   *advice*
prehendō, -ere, prehendī, prehēnsus   *to take*
proelium, -ī   *battle*
proximus, -a, -um   *nearest; neighbor*
quot   *as many; how many*
ratiō, ratiōnis (f.)   *reason*
recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus   *to withdraw*
relūceō, -ēre, -lūxī   *to reflect*
resistō, -ere, -stitī   *to halt; resist*
Rhīpeus, -ī   *Rhipeus*
sata, -ōrum   *crops*
satis   *enough, sufficient*
sēcrētus, -a, -um   *remote*
seges, segetis (f.)   *crop*
Sīgēus, -a, -um   *of Sigeum (a promontory)*
spōnsa, -ae   *bride*
sublātus   see ***tollō***
torrēns, torrentis (m.)   *torrent*
Ūcalegōn, Ūcalegontis (m.)   *Ucalegon*
Volcānus, ī   *Vulcan (god of fire)*

UNIT 29
Gerundives

Background

The *gerundive* is a verbal adjective which has a sense of obligation or necessity. It is *passive* in voice and *future* in tense.

- The closest English gets to expressing this is via a relative clause whose verb is either *ought* or *must*

    *The books, **which ought to be read**, are on the table.*
    *I will give the money to the man, **who must be paid**.*
    *We see the cats, **which ought to be fed** by us.*

Latin structure

The Latin *gerundive* (also called the *future passive participle*) is formed identically to the *gerund* ([Unit 28](#)). Being an adjective, however, it takes 1st–2nd declension adjective endings and is not confined to the neuter singular as the gerund is:

amandus, -a, -um	*ought to be loved, must be loved*
docendus, -a, -um	*ought to be taught, must be taught*
vincendus, -a, -um	*ought to be conquered, must be conquered*
capiendus, -a, -um	*ought to be seized, must be seized*
audiendus, -a, -um	*ought to be heard, must be heard*

Deponent verbs form gerundives and, surprisingly, they are translated as passive, like non-deponent verbs.

pollicendus, -a, -um	*ought to be promised*
sequendus, -a, -um	*ought to be followed*

Uses

The *gerundive* has four uses, three of which will be discussed now, the fourth in the next unit.

1 As an adjective expressing obligation or necessity

- This use is confined to verbs which express an emotion of some sort.

    Rēgīna amanda urbem servat. [nominative]
    The queen, who ought to be loved, saves the city.

    Inimīcōs metuendōs inveniēmus. [accusative]
    We will find the enemies who ought to be feared.

2 In place of the gerund when the latter would take a direct object which is not a neuter pronoun or adjective. This is often termed gerundive attraction

- The sense of obligation and necessity is lost.
- The future and passive senses are also both lost.

    Librīs legendīs discimus. [ablative]
    We learn by reading books.

    Diēs hic castrīs oppugnandīs dicitur. [dative]
    This day is appointed for attacking the camps.

- Since the gerundive substitutes for the gerund when it takes an object, the gerundive may also occur in the three purpose constructions in which the gerund occurs:

    ad + accusative
    genitive + **causā**
    genitive + **gratiā**

    Ad inimīcōs vinciendōs venimus.
    We come to conquer the enemies.

    Urbium vinciendārum causā venimus.
    We come to conquer the cities.

    Lōrārum laxandārum gratiā venimus.
    We come to loosen the reins.

*3 To express purpose modifying the direct object of a handful of verbs without the intermediary of the preposition **ad***

● All the special senses of the gerundive are lost in this construction.

> **Pontem faciendum cūrat.**
> *He arranges for the building of the bridge.*

> **Attribuit nōs interficiendōs hominī.**
> *He assigned our killing to the man.*
> *He assigned the man to kill us.*

Note that in the last example the agent of the gerundive is in the dative. This is termed the *dative of personal agent.* This will be discussed further in the next unit.

Advanced topics

The gerundive always takes singular agreement when modifying the reflexive pronoun **suī**, even if plural is intended:

> **Multī cīvitātis prīncipēs *suī cōnservandī* causā profūgērunt.**
> *Many leaders of the state fled in order to save themselves.*

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficīscātur	(Caesar *Gal.*)
2	fīnem fēcī eius ferendī	(Caesar *ad Brut.*)
3	exercendō cottīdiē mīlite hostem opperiēbātur	(Livy)
4	Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrat	(Nepos *Con.*)
5	dīvitī hominī id aurum servandum dedit	(Plautus *Bac.*)
6	inter spoliandum corpus hostis exspīrāvit	(Livy)
7	patriam dīripiendam relīquimus	(Cicero *Fam.*)
8	mē Albānī gerendō bellō ducem creāvēre	(Livy)
9	aggerundā aquā sunt dēfessī	(Plautus *Poen.*)
10	neuter suī prōtegendī corporis memor	(Livy)

Exercise 2

Translate into Latin.

1 The plunderer advances in order to discover safety.
2 The cub, which had to be hurried, fell into thorns.
3 Do not step (sg.) through the thick bramble, which ought to be burned.
4 In order to explain herself, the religious woman hurried here.
5 The alarmed people, rushing in, seize the wolf which ought to be raised for slaughter.

Reading: Aeneas and his comrades rush in

"Quōs ubi cōnfertōs audēre in proelia vīdī, incipiō super hīs:

'Iuvenēs, fortissima frūstrā pectora sunt! Sī vōbīs est cupīdō mē audentem extrēma sequī, vidēbitis quae fortūna nōbīs sit. Excessērunt adytīs ārīsque relictīs omnēs **dī**, quibus imperium hoc steterat. Succurritis urbī incēnsae. In media arma ruāmus et moriāmur! Ūna salūs est victīs: nūllam salūtem spērāre.'

Sīc animīs iuvenum furor additus est. Inde, lupī ceu raptōrēs ātrā in nebulā, quōs caecōs improba rabiēs ventris exēgit catulīque relictī cum faucibus siccīs exspectant, per tēla et per hostēs vādimus. Haud dubiam in mortem mediaeque urbis iter tenēmus. Nox ātra cavā umbrā circumvolat. Quis clādem illīus noctis, quis fūnera fandō explicet aut possit lacrimīs aequāre labōrēs? Urbs antīqua ruit domināta multōs per annōs. Plūrima inertia corpora per viās sternuntur passim perque domōs rēligiōsaque līmina deōrum. Nec sōlī Teucrī **poenās** sanguine **dant**. Quondam etiam victīs redit in praecordia virtūs, victōrēsque cadunt Danaī. Crūdēlis ubīque lūctus est, ubīque pavor et plūrimae mortis imāginēs.

Prīmus Androgeōs sē nōbīs magnā comitante catervā Danaōrum offert. Īnscius nōs socia agmina esse crēdit, ultrō verbīs amīcīs compellat:

'Fēstīnāte, virī! Nam quae sēgnitiēs tam sēra morātur? Aliī rapiunt feruntque incēnsa Pergama. Vōs celsīs ā nāvibus nunc prīmum ītis?'

Dīxit, et extemplō – neque enim respōnsa fīda satis dabantur – sēnsit mediōs in hostēs dēlāpsus. Obstipuit retrōque pedēs cum vōce repressit. Velutī aliquis quī imprōvīsum anguem in asprīs sentibus humī nītēns pressit trepidusque repentē refūgit attollentem īrās anguem et caerulea colla tumentem, haud secus Androgeōs vīsū tremefactus abībat. Inruimus et eīs dēnsīs armīs circumfundimus. Ignārōs locī passim et formīdine captōs sternimus. Aspīrat prīmō labōrī fortūna."

Notes

dī = **deī**
poenās dant – *they are punished*

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

aliquis, aliquid   *someone, something*
Androgeōs, Androgeō (m.)   *Androgeos*
caeruleus, -a, -um   *dark blue, dark green*
catulus, -ī   *cub*
ceu   *as, just as*
circumvolō (1)   *to fly around*
clādēs, clādis (f.)   *slaughter*
cōnfertus, -a, -um   *crowded*
cupīdō, cupīdinis (f.)   *love, desire*
dēlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum   *to fall into*
dēnsus, -a, -um   *crowed, thick*
exigō, -ere, exēgī, exāctus   *to pass; discover; drive out*
explicō (1)   *to explain*
faucēs, faucium (f.)   *jaw*
fēstīnō (1)   *to hurry*
iners, inertis   *lifeless*
inruō, -ere, -ruī   *to rush in*
lupus, -ī   *wolf*
nītor, -ī, nīsus sum   *to step*
passim   *all about*
praecordia, -ōrum (nt.)   *heart*
raptor, raptōris (m.)   *plunderer*
rēligiōsus, -a, -um   *religious*
reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus   *to check, restrain*
respōnsum, -ī   *response*
salūs, salūtis (f.)   *safety; security*
secus   *otherwise*
sēgnitiēs, -ēī   *laziness*
sentis, sentis (m.)   *thorn, bramble*
sērus, -a, -um   *late*
siccus, -a, -um   *dry; thirsty*
socius, -a, -um   *allied*
trepidus, -a, -um   *alarmed, anxious*
vādō, -ere   *to go on, advance*
venter, ventris (m.)   *belly*

UNIT 30
Periphrastics

Background

A *periphrastic construction* involves more than one word in order to express a meaning.

- English is replete with *periphrastics*, for instance:

  - present progressive active: *I am going to the store.*
  - imperfect progressive passive: *I was being followed by the dog.*
  - future active: *I will go to the store.*
  - pluperfect passive: *I had been seen by the police.*

Periphrasis is opposed to *inflection*, which expresses a meaning by adding affixes to a single word.

- As should be obvious by now, Latin is very rich in inflection.
- We have learned, however, that the passive of the Latin perfect system is a periphrastic construction (Unit 20 of *IBL*), involving two elements, the past participle and a form of the verb **esse**:

perfect passive	**doctus est**
	he has been taught
pluperfect passive	**doctus erat**
	he had been taught
future perfect passive	**doctus erit**
	he will have been taught

Latin also possesses two additional periphrastic constructions, aptly termed the *active periphrastic* and the *passive periphrastic*.

- The active periphrastic is used to express the notions of *capability* and *tendency* and is best translated as *about to* and *going to*.
- The passive periphrastic is used to express the notions of *necessity* and *obligation* and is best translated as *ought to*, *must*, and *have to*.

Latin structure

The active periphrastic consists of the *future active participle* (Unit 33 of *IBL*) plus a form of the verb **esse**.

- The participle conveys the notion of *capability* or *tendency*, while **esse** conveys the tense information.
- The participle agrees in gender and number with the subject.

Present Tense

doctūrus, -a, -um sum	*I am about to teach, I am going to teach*
doctūrus, -a, -um es	*you are about to teach, you are going to teach*
doctūrus, -a, -um est	*s/he, it is about to teach, s/he, it is going to teach*
doctūrī, -ae, -a sumus	*we are about to teach, we are going to teach*
doctūrī, -ae, -a estis	*you are about to teach, you are going to teach*
doctūrī, -ae, -a sunt	*they are about to teach, they are going to teach*

○ Using the 3rd sg. feminine as an example for the other tenses:

imperfect	**doctūra erat**	*she was about to teach, she was going to teach*
future	**doctūra erit**	*she will be about to teach, she will be going to teach*
perfect	**doctūra fuit**	*she has been about to teach, she has been going to teach*
pluperfect	**doctūra fuerat**	*she had been about to teach, she had been going to teach*
future perfect	**doctūra fuerit**	*she will have been about to teach, she will have been going to teach*
present subjunctive	**doctūra sit**	*she may be about to teach, she may be going to teach*
imperfect subjunctive	**doctūra esset**	*she might be about to teach, she might be going to teach*
perfect subjunctive	**doctūra fuerit**	*she may have been about to teach, she may have been going to teach*

pluperfect subjunctive   **doctūra fuisset**
she might have been about to teach,
   she might have been going to teach

infinitive   **doctūrus, -a, -um esse**
to be about to teach

■ Recall that the translation of the subjunctive depends on the type of clause that it is in. *May* or *might* will not necessarily always occur when translating the subjunctive into coherent English.

The passive periphrastic consists of the *gerundive* (Unit 29) plus a form of the verb **esse**.

- The gerundive expresses the notion of *necessity* or *obligation* whereas **esse** expresses the tense.
- The gerundive agrees in gender and number with the subject:

Present tense

docendus, -a, -um sum	*I ought to be taught, must be taught, have to be taught*
docendus, -a, -um es	*you ought to be taught, must be taught, have to be taught*
docendus, -a, -um est	*s/he, it ought to be taught, must be taught, have to be taught*
docendī, -ae, -a sumus	*we ought to be taught, must be taught, have to be taught*
docendī, -ae, -a estis	*you ought to be taught, must be taught, have to be taught*
docendī, -ae, -a sunt	*they ought to be taught, must be taught, have to be taught*

○ Using the 3rd pl. masculine as an example for the other tenses.

■ note how the translation changes to *have to* since *ought* and *must* only occur in the present tense in English

imperfect   **docendī erant**
they had to be taught

future   **docendī erunt**
they will have to be taught

perfect   **docendī fuerunt**
they have had to be taught

pluperfect   **docendī fuerant**
they had had to be taught

future perfect	**docendī fuerint**
	they will have had to be taught
present subjunctive	**docendī sint**
	they may have to be taught
imperfect subjunctive	**docendī essent**
	they might have to be taught
perfect subjunctive	**docendī fuerint**
	they may have had to be taught
pluperfect subjunctive	**docendī fuissent**
	they might have had to be taught
infinitive	**docendus esse**
	to have to be taught

Dative of personal agent

To express a personal agent in the passive periphrastic the *dative* is used:

Inimīcī *mīlitibus* interficiendī sunt.
The enemies ought to be killed by the soldiers.

Discipulī *hominī* docendī erunt.
The students will have to be taught by the man.

Advanced topics

When the verb in a passive periphrastic is an intransitive verb which takes the dative, the dative noun remains in the dative while the personal agent is expressed via the *ablative of agent* (Units 19 and 40 of *IBL*).

persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsus [+ dat.] *to persuade*

Hominī persuādendum est.
The man ought to be persuaded.
(literally: *It ought to be persuaded to the man.*)

Hominī ā cōnsulibus persuādendum est.
The man ought to be persuaded by the consuls.
(literally: *It ought to be persuaded to the man by the consuls.*)

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed. Note that **esse** often is left unexpressed in infinitives of periphrastics.

1 neque sibi hominēs ferōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn in Ītaliam contenderent	(Caesar *Gal.*)
2 illud sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāre tūtum iter per fīnēs datūrum	(Caesar *Gal.*)
3 haud sciō mīrandumne sit	(Caesar *Gal.*)
4 quid nunc faciendum cēnsēs?	(Plautus *Mos.*)
5 graviter adeō vulnerātus praefectus, ut vītae perīculum aditūrus vidērētur	(Caesar *Gal.*)
6 tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fīdem in colloquiō circumventōs	(Caesar *Gal.*)
7 dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs	(Nepos *Han.*)
8 sapientia ars vīvendī putanda est	(Cicero *Fin.*)
9 itaque cēnseō cum tribūnīs plēbis agendum esse ut eōrum ūnus plūrēsve rogatiōnem ferant ad plēbem	(Livy)
10 tamen haec huius modī rēs est quam mē āctūrum esse polliceor	(Cicero *Ver.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin.

1 The mindful things ought to be immediately pursued.
2 I observe that the army will engage in battle.
3 We follow so that Peneleus may not have to die.
4 The eastern army, strong in battle, had been about to rout the shameful armies, when justice was observed.
5 The sight of justice needs to be exulted by men.

Reading: The Trojans concoct a trick

"Atque hīc successū exsultāns amīcīsque Coroebus inquit:

'Ō sociī, quā prīma Fortūna iter salūtis mōnstrat, quāque ostendit sē dextra, sequāmur! Mūtēmus clipeōs Danaōrumque īnsignia nōbīs aptēmus! Dolus an virtūs, quis in bellō requīrat? Arma nōbīs dabunt ipsī inimīcī.'

Sīc fātus est deinde comantem galeam **Androgeō** clipeumque īnsigne decōrum induitur laterīque Argīvum ēnsem accommodat. Hoc Rhīpeus, hoc ipse Dymās omnisque iuventūs laeta facit. Quisque spoliīs sē recentibus armat. Vādimus immixtī Danaīs haud nūmine nostrō multaque proelia per caecam noctem

cōnserimus. Multōs Danaōrum dēmittimus Orcō. Diffugiunt aliī ad nāvēs et lītora fīda cursū petunt. Pars ingentem equum formīdine turpī scandunt rūrsus et nōtā in alvō conduntur.

Heu nihil fās est quemquam invītīs dīvīs fīdere. Ecce trahēbātur virgō Priamēia Cassandra passīs crīnibus ā templō adytīsque Minervae ad caelum ardentia lūmina frūstrā tendēns, lūmina, quod tenerās palmās vincula arcēbant. Nōn tulit hanc speciem furiātā mente Coroebus et sēsē medium in agmen iniēcit peritūrus. Cōnsequimur cūnctī et dēnsīs armīs incurrimus. Hīc prīmum ex altō culmine dēlūbrī tēlīs nostrōrum obruimur. Orītur miserrima caedēs armōrum faciē et Grāiārum errōre iubārum.

Tum Danaī gemitū ēreptae virginis īrā undique collectī invādunt. Ācerrimus Āiāx et geminī Atrīdae Dolopumque exercitus omnis invādunt. Adversī ventī ceu ruptō turbine quondam cōnflīgunt, Zephyrus Notusque et Eurus, laetus eōīs equīs sunt. Strīdent silvae saevitque spūmeus Nēreus īmō fundō et aequora tridente ciet. Illī etiam, sī quōs obscūrā nocte per umbram īnsidiīs fūdimus tōtāque urbe agitāvimus, nunc appārent. Prīmī clipeōs mentītaque tēla agnōscunt atque ōra sonō discordia signant. Īlicet obruimur numerō. Prīmus Coroebus Pēneleī dextrā ad āram **dīvae armipotentis** prōcumbit. Cadit Rhīpeus, iūstissimus ūnus quī fuit in Teucrīs et servantissimus aequī. **Dīs** aliter vīsum est. Pereunt Hypanisque Dymāsque cōnfīxī ā sociīs. Nec tē lābentem, Panthū, tua magna pietās nec īnfula Apollinis tēxit."

Notes

Androgeō – genitive sg. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
dīvae armipotentis = **Minervae**
dīs = **deīs**

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

accommodō (1)   *to fasten*
adversus, -a, -um   *opposite*
aequum, -ī   *equality, justice*
agitō (1)   *to pursue*
an   *or*
armipotēns, armipotentis   *strong in battle*
comāns, comantis   *hairy; crested*
cōnfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus   *to pierce*
cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus   *to dash together*
cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum   *to follow*
cōnserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus   *to engage in (battle)*
dexter, dextra, dextrum   *right; favorable*
discors, discordis   *discordant*
exercitus, -ūs   *army*
exsultō (1)   *to exult; jump out*
fundus, -ī   *bottom*

furiō (1)   *to infuriate*
īlicet   *immediately*
immisceō, -ēre, -miscuī, -mixtus   *to mix with*
incurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus   *to run into*
īnfula, -ae   *badge of honor*
iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus   *to throw into*
īnsigne, īnsignis (nt.)   *badge; insignia; mark*
invītus, -a, -um   *unfriendly*
lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum   *to slip; fall*
mentior, -īrī, mentītus   *to deceive*
Nēreus, -ī   *Nereus (a sea god)*
Orcus, -ī   *Hades (the Underworld)*
Pēneleus, -ī   *Peneleus*
pereō, perīre, perīvī, peritus   *to die; perish*
Priamēius, -a, -um   *of Priam*
prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus   *to sink down*
rūrsus   *back*
servāns, servantis   *mindful*
signō (1)   *to observe; mark*
sonus, -ī   *sound*
speciēs, -ēī   *sight*
spūmeus, -a, -um   *foamy*
successus, -ūs   *success*
tener, -a, -um   *tender*
turpis, turpe   *shameful*

UNIT 31
Fore

Background

Fore is an alternate for **futūrus esse** *to be going to be*, the future active infinitive of **sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus** (Unit 11 of *IBL*).

Since infinitives are a cornerstone of indirect statements (Unit 4), the best examples of **fore** come from such constructions. Observe the following three examples from Caesar's *Dē Bellō Gallicō*:

1 **sīc enim exīstimābat tūtissimam fore Galliam**
   for thus he was thinking that Gaul would be safe

   ○ The line is divided as:

Main clause	*Indirect statement*
sīc enim exīstimābat	**tūtissimam fore Galliam**

   ○ Note that **fore** stands in place of an expected **futūram esse**.

   ■ Since **fore** is only optional here, the subordinate clause **tūtissimam futūram esse Galliam** is a perfectly good alternative way to express the indirect statement.

2 **fore id quod accidit suspicābātur**
   he was suspecting that which happened would be

   ○ This is another example of indirect statement but with a slightly more complex subordinate clause, since it contains a relative clause. The relative clause is placed in brackets.

Indirect statement	*Main clause*
fore id (quod accidit)	**suspicābātur**

   ○ Here **fore** stands in place of expected **futūrum esse**.

   ■ Once again, the indirect statement would have been fine with the longer form: **futūrum esse id quod accidit**

3 **tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur**
nevertheless he was thinking that (it) would be to himself (of) such a great service

○ The line is divided as:

Indirect statement	Main clause
tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore	**arbitrābātur**

○ The indirect statement consists of a double dative (Unit 18 of *IBL*).
○ **fore** stands in place of the expected **futūrum esse**.

  ■ The indirect statement with the longer form would have been acceptable: **tamen magnō sibi ūsuī futūrum esse**.

Latin structure

Fore and **futūrum esse** additionally have two special functions when joined with the **ut** of a result clause (Unit 13). They serve as circumlocutions for:

• the future passive infinitive
• the future active infinitive for verbs lacking a fourth principal part.

In lieu of future passive infinitive

Recall that the future passive infinitive is rare (Unit 3). This poses a problem when a future passive infinitive is needed in an indirect statement. How, then, is the following rendered in Latin?

*I think **that the men will be killed**.*

One would expect a future passive infinitive:

Cōgitō virōs interfectum īrī.

It is more common, however, to use a circumlocution with **fore** or **futūrum esse** plus a *result clause*:

Cōgitō fore ut virī interficiantur.
Cōgitō futūrum esse ut virī interficiantur.

The structure is as follows. Note that the indirect statement consists simply of the infinitive. An understood **id** *it* serves as its subject.

Main clause	Subordinate clause	
	Indirect statement	*Result clause*
Cōgitō	**fore/futūrum esse**	**ut virī interficiantur**

I think that the men will be killed.
I think that it will be that that the men may be killed.   [literal translation]

The tense of the result clause depends on the tense of the verb in the main clause (see Unit 10). When the main clause is non-past, as in the example above, the present subjunctive is used. When the main clause is past, the imperfect subjunctive is used.

Cōgitābam fore ut virī interficerentur.
Cōgitābam futūrum esse ut virī interficerentur.
I was thinking that the men would be killed.
I was thinking that it would be that the men might be killed.   [literal translation]

In lieu of future active infinitive

Some verbs lack a fourth principal part. For example **possum**, **posse**, **potuī** *to be able* (Unit 11 of *IBL*) and **vōlō**, **velle**, **voluī** *to want* (Unit 23 of *IBL*). How, then, does one translate the following?

I think that the boy will not be able to come.
I was thinking that the boy would not be able to come.
I think that the women will want to go.
I was thinking that the women would want to go.

These are straightforward examples of indirect statement. A future active infinitive is expected in all four examples. The problem is that both **possum** and **volō** have no fourth principal part from which to form a future active infinitive:

Cōgitō puerum nōn venīre ???
Cōgitābam puerum nōn venīre ???
Cōgitō fēminās īre ???
Cōgitābam fēminās īre ???

To solve the problem an indirect statement with **fore/futūrum esse** introducing a result clause is again used:

Main clause	*Subordinate clause*	
	Indirect statement	*Result clause*
Cōgitō	**fore/futūrum esse**	**ut puer venīre nōn possit.**
Cōgitābam	**fore/futūrum esse**	**ut puer venīre nōn posset.**
Cōgitō	**fore/futūrum esse**	**ut fēminae īre velint.**
Cōgitābam	**fore/futūrum esse**	**ut fēminae īre vellent.**

Observe that the negative is **fore ut nōn** or **futūrum esse ut nōn** with **nōn** and not **nē**, since the subpart of this construction is a result clause and not a purpose clause (Unit 7).

Also observe the following literal translations and the understood **id** *it* of the indirect statement:

I think that it will be that the boy may not be able to come.
I was thinking that it would be that the boy might not be able to come.
I think that it will be that the women may want to go.
I was thinking that it would be that the women might want to go.

Advanced topics

Fore also serves as a stem for alternate forms of the imperfect subjunctive of the verb **esse** and verbs built from **esse**, such as **adesse** *to be present* and **abesse** *to be absent*. Note that only four alternate forms are attested.

Imperfect subjunctive		
1sg.	**essem**	**forem**
2	**essēs**	**forēs**
3	**esset**	**foret**
1pl.	**essēmus**	–
2	**essētis**	–
3	**essent**	**forent**

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	dī facerent, sine patre forem	(Ovid *Met.*)
2	atque utinam rēx ipse Notō compulsus eōdem adforet Aenēās	(Vergil *Aeneid*)
3	mihi persuāseram fore ut omnia plācārentur	(Cicero *Att.*)
4	putābāmus fore ut Memmiō darētur	(Cicero *Q. fr.*)
5	sīve palmulīs opus foret volāre sīve linteō	(Catullus)
6	mihi prōpōnis amōrem hunc nostrum inter nōs perpetuumque fore	(Catullus)
7	fore sē tūtōs arbitrantur	(Cicero *Ver.*)
8	Ō superī, tūtōs fore crēditis illōs	(Ovid *Met.*)
9	prōmitte hoc fore!	(Plautus *Aul.*)
10	numquam crēdidī fore ut hāc ille vīvā posset animum indūcere uxōrem habēre	(Terence *Hec.*)

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin. Use **fore**.

1 I think that the walls will not be climbed up.
2 I was thinking that the steps would be traversable.
3 I had thought that ineffective doorposts would not be able to be held by joints.
4 I think that the slow stag will be unaccompanied.
5 I think that the parents-in-law will not be able to avoid the precipice.

Reading: The fight moves to the palace

"Īliacī cinerēs et flamma extrēma meī populī, testor! In occāsū vestrō nec tēla nec ūllās vicēs Danaōrum vītāveram. Sī fāta fuissent ut caderem, meruerō manū! Dīvellimur inde, Īphitus et Peliās mēcum, quōrum Īphitus aevō iam gravior est, et Peliās tardus vulnere Ulixeī. Prōtinus ad sēdēs Priamī clāmōre vocātī sumus.

Hīc vērō ingentem pugnam cernimus, ceu cētera bella nūsquam essent, nūllī tōtā in urbe morerentur. Sīc cernimus Mārtem indomitum esse Danaōsque ad tēcta ruere et obsessum līmen **āctā testūdine**. Haerent parietibus scālae postēsque sub ipsōs nītuntur gradibus. Clipeōs ad tēla sinistrīs manibus obiciunt, prehēnsant fastīgia dextrīs.

Dardaniī contrā turrēs ac tōta culmina domōrum convellunt. Hīs tēlīs, quandō fīnem vītae cernunt, iam extrēmā in morte parant sē dēfendere. Aurātās trabēs, decora alta veterum parentum, dēvolvunt. Aliī strictīs mūcrōnibus īmās forēs obsēdērunt, quā in agmine dēnsō servant. Īnstaurātī animī succurrere tēctīs regis auxiliōque levāre virōs vimque addere victīs.

Līmen erat **caecae**que **forēs** et pervius ūsus tēctōrum inter sē, postēsque relictī ā tergō. Īnfēlīx Andromachē incomitāta saepius solēbat sē ferre, dum rēgna manēbant, ad socerōs et puerum **Astyanacta** avō trahēbat. Ēvādō ad fastīgia summī culminis, unde tēla inrita manū iactābant miserī Teucrī. **Turrim** convellimus, quae in praecipitī stat summīsque ā tēctīs sub astra ēducit, unde omnis Trōia et Graecae nāvēs et Achāica castra vidērī solita sunt. Turrim ferrō adgredimur circum, quā summa tabulāta labantēs iūnctūrās dabant. Altīs ē sēdibus impulimus. Ea lāpsa repentē ruīnam cum sonitū trahit et Danaōrum super agmina lātē incidit.

Ast aliī subeunt. Nec saxa nec ūllum genus tēlōrum intereā cessat."

Notes

āctā testūdine – a military strategy in which shields are held all around and over the head, creating a protective dome
caecae forēs – *secret doors*
Astyanacta – accusative sg. of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
turrim – an alternative *i*-stem accusative sg.

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

Achāicus, -a, -um   *Achaean; Greek*
aevum, -ī   *life; age*
Andromachē, Andromachēs (f.)   *Andromache (Hector's wife)*
Astyanax, Astyanactis (m.)   *Astyanax*
avus, -ī   *grandfather*
cinis, cineris (m.)   *ash*
dēvolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus   *to roll down*
ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus   *to raise*
ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus   *to climb up*
fastīgium, -ī   *top; point; roof*
gradus, -ūs   *step; rung of ladder*
incomitātus, -a, -um   *unaccompanied*
indomitus, -a, -um   *untamed*
inritus, -a, -um   *ineffective*
īnstaurō (1)   *to refresh*
Īphitus, -ī   *Iphitus*
iūnctūra, -ae   *joint*
labō (1)   *to waver*
līmen, līminis (nt.)   *threshold; home; passage*
nītor, -ī, nīsus sum   *to step; rest on*
nūsquam   *nowhere*
pariēs, parietis (m.)   *wall*
Peliās, Peliae (m.)   *Pelias*
pervius, -a, -um   *traversable*
postis, postis (m.)   *doorpost*
praeceps, praecipitis (nt.)   *precipice*
prehēnsō (1)   *to grasp*
prōtinus   *immediately*
scālae, -ārum   *ladder*
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum   *left*
socer, -ī   *father-in-law; (pl.) parents-in-law*
tabulātum, -ī   *floor*
turris, turris (f.)   *tower*
ūsus, -ūs   *use*
vicis [gen. sg]   *changing fortune*
vītō (1)   *to avoid*

UNIT 32
Supine

Background

As was mentioned earlier (Unit 28), the present infinitive is the nominative singular of a verbal noun. The other cases of this verbal noun are provided by the *gerund*.

> **Interficere inimīcōs est negōtium mīlitis.**   [nominative]
> *To kill enemies is the task of a soldier.*
>
> **Cicerō cōgitat sapientiam artem *vīvendī* esse.**   [genitive]
> *Cicero thinks that wisdom is the art of living.*
>
> **Puer idōneus est *pugnandō*.**   [dative]
> *The boy is suitable for fighting.*
>
> **Mīlitēs parant ad illud *capiendum*.**   [accusative]
> *The soldiers prepare to capture that.*
>
> **Pāx nōn inveniētur *pugnandō*.**   [ablative]
> *Peace will not be found by fighting.*

Recall that, despite being nouns, the infinitive and gerund are still verbal and can therefore take a direct object.

- This is the case with **inimīcos** and **illud** in the first and fourth examples.

Latin also has another verbal noun which, however, has no counterpart in English. It is the *supine*.

Latin structure

The *supine* is a verbal noun whose uses are very much confined. In fact it consists of only an accusative and an ablative form. It is derived from the *fourth principal part* and takes *fourth declension* endings:

	Accusative	*Ablative*
amō (1) *to love*	**amātum**	**amātū**
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus *to teach*	**doctum**	**doctū**
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus *to conquer*	**victum**	**victū**
audiō, -īre, audīvī, audītus *to hear*	**audītum**	**audītū**

Each case has only one use:

- The accusative is used with verbs of motion to indicate purpose.

  ○ This is an alternative to the purpose construction using the gerund/gerundive (Units 28 and 29).

    Caesar venit Galliam victum.
    Caesar comes to conquer Gaul.

- The ablative is used with certain adjectives as an *ablative of respect* (Unit 8 of *IBL*)

    Bellum est difficile gestū.
    War is difficult to wage.

  ○ Be careful in Exercise 2 below to differentiate those instances which carry the meaning of an ablative of respect from those which bear the meaning of an ablative of cause. Only the former may take the supine, while the latter may be a gerund, depending on the context.

Notes

- The supine is best translated as an English infinitive.
- Being verbal, the supine may take direct objects, such as **Galliam** in the first example above.

Advanced topics

The accusative of the supine is also used in the rare *future passive infinitive*. The formation is:

Accusative of supine + **īrī**

- **īrī** is the present passive infinitive of **īre** *to go*.

    Rūmor venit *datum īrī* gladiātōrēs (Ter. *Hec.*)
    The rumor comes that gladiatorial shows are going to be given.

    Reus *damnātum īrī* vidēbātur (Quintilian)

    The accused seemed about to be condemned.

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium (Caesar *Gal.*)
2 stultitia est, pater, vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs (Plautus *St.*)
3 dictū quam rē facilius est (Livy)
4 admonitum vēnimus tē, nōn flāgitātum (Cicero *de Orat.*)
5 addit etiam sē prius occīsum īrī ab eō quam mē (Cicero *Att.*)
    violātum īrī
6 cum longius eam rem ductum īrī exīstimārent (Caesar *Gal.*)
7 spērat sē absolūtum īrī (Cicero *Sul.*)
8 Ō rem cum audītū crūdēlem tum vīsū nefāriam! (Cicero *Planc.*)
9 nec vīsū facilis nec dictū adfābilis ūllī (Vergil *Aeneid*)
10 multō etiam rem turpiōrem fore et inīquiōrem vīsum īrī (Cicero *Ver.*)
    intellegēbant

Exercise 2

Translate the following into Latin using supines, gerunds, or gerundives.

1 They jump out to tear up the grass.
2 The stream is very slimy to endure.
3 He let the daughter-in-law in, who was terrified to fail.
4 We think that the window will be broken through by the charioteers in order
    to jump out.
5 They thought that the doors ought to be moved from the entrance of the home.

Reading: The Greeks invade the royal chambers

"Vestibulum ante ipsum prīmōque in līmine Pyrrhus exsultat tēlīs et lūce
coruscus aēnā. Quālis ubi coluber mala grāmina pāstus est, quem frīgida brūma
sub terrā tumidum tegēbat, nunc, positīs exuviīs novus nitidusque iuventā, lūbrica
terga sublātō pectore arduus ad lūcem, ad sōlem, convolvit. Linguīs trisulcīs
micat ex ōre. Ūnā ingēns Periphās et equōrum agitātor Achillis, armiger
Automedōn, ūnā omnis Scȳria pūbēs succēdunt tēctō. Flammās ad culmina
iactant.

Pyrrhus ipse inter prīmōs postēs aerātōs dūra līmina correptā bipennī
perrumpit et ā cardine vellit. Iam excīsā trabe firma rōbora cavāvit et **ingentem
fenestram lātō ōre** dedit. Appāret domus intus nūda et ātria longa patēscunt.
Apparent etiam Priamī et veterum rēgum penetrālia. Armātōs stantēs in līmine
prīmō Graecī vident.

At domus interior gemitū miserōque tumultū miscētur, penitusque cavae plangōribus fēmineīs aedēs ululant. Ferit aurea sīdera clāmor. Tum pavidae mātrēs in tēctīs ingentibus errant amplexaeque tenent postēs atque ōscula fīgunt.

Īnstat vī patriā Pyrrhus. Nec claustra nec ipsī custōdēs sufferre valent. Labat ariete crēbrō iānua. Ēmōtī ā cardine postēs prōcumbunt. Fit via vī. Immissī Danaī rumpunt aditūs prīmōsque trucīdant, quōs vident. Lātē loca mīlitibus complent. Nōn sīc, cum aggeribus ruptīs spūmeus amnis exīvit oppositāsque mōlēs ēvīcit gurgite, fertur in arva furēns in cumulō campōsque per omnēs cum stabulīs armenta trahit.

Vīdī ipse furentem caede Neoptolemum geminōsque in līmine Atrīdās. Vīdī Hecubam centumque nurūs Priamumque in ārīs sanguine foedantem ignēs, quōs ipse sacrāverat. Quīnquāgintā illī thalamī, spēs ampla nepōtum, et superbī postēs barbaricō aurō spoliīsque prōcubuērunt. Tenent Danaī quā dēficit ignis.''

Note

ingentem fenestram lātō ōre – *a wide hole*

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

aditus, -ūs *entrance*
aedēs, aedium (f.) *home*
aerātus, -a, -um *of bronze*
agitātor, agitātōris (m.) *charioteer*
amnis, amnis (m.) *stream, river*
ariēs, arietis (m.) *ram; battering ram*
armiger, -a *armor-bearer*
Automedōn, Automedontis (m.) *Automedon*
barbaricus, -a, -um *foreign*
bipennis, bipennis (f.) *double ax*
brūma, -ae *winter*
coluber, colubrī *snake*
convolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus *to coil*
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus *to fail; desert*
ēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus *to move from; dislodge*
ēvincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victus *to surmount*
fēmineus, -a, -um *feminine*
fenestra, -ae *window; opening*
firmus, -a, -um *strong*
frīgidus, -a, -um *cold*
grāmen, grāminis (nt.) *grass*
Hecuba, -ae *Hecuba (wife of Priam)*
iānua, -ae *door*
immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to let in*
lūbricus, -a, -um *slimy*
nitidus, -a, -um *glistening*
nurus, -ūs (f.) *daughter-in-law; young woman*

pavidus, -a, -um   *terrified*
penetrālia, penetrālium   *inner room*
Periphās, Periphantis (m.)   *Periphas*
perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus   *to break through*
plangor, plangōris (m.)   *loud wailing*
Pyrrhus, -ī   *Pyrrhus (a Greek, son of Achilles)*
Scȳrius, -a, -um   *of Scyros, Scyrian (island of Pyrrhus' birth)*
stabulum, -ī   *stable*
sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātus   *to endure*
thalamus, -ī   *bedroom*
trisulcus, -a, -um   *three-forked*
trucīdō (1)   *to slaughter*
ululō (1)   *to howl*
valeō, -ēre, valuī   *to be strong*
vellō, -ere, vulsī, vulsus   *to tear up*
vestibulum, -ī   entrance

UNIT 33
Subjunctive by attraction

Background

Throughout this book we have seen the subjunctive used in an array of situations, both in dependent clauses such as purpose and result clauses and in independent clauses such as wishes and negative commands. Behind each of these uses the original semantic intent of the subjunctive, be it wishing or uncertainty, can be perceived, if even slightly. There are, however, a few related situations in which it is not as readily evident semantically why the subjunctive has come into use.

Latin structure

Latin subordinate clauses which are dependent on certain types of other clauses may take their verbs in the subjunctive. The two main instances of this are when the *dominating verb* (i.e. the verb of the clause upon which the attracted subjunctive verb's clause depends) is:

- a subjunctive itself
- an infinitive.

As will be seen in the examples below, the sequence of tenses (Unit 10) is observed throughout.

I Dominating verb in the subjunctive

A subordinate clause which is dependent upon a clause whose verb is in the subjunctive is itself put into the subjunctive. This occurs whether the commanding clause is itself in a subordinate clause or in a main clause.

Dominating verb is in a subordinate clause

- In the following example from Caesar the verb of the italicized relative clause (**trānsportātī essent**) has been attracted into the subjunctive by the subjunctive verb of the causal clause in which the relative clause is embedded (**populārentur**).

  Aeduī questum veniēbant, quod Harūdēs, *quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent*, fīnēs eōrum populārentur
  *the Aedui came to complain, because the Harudes, **who had recently been carried across into Gaul**, were devastating their borders.*

Dominating verb is in a main clause

The following example from Cicero demonstrates that a subjunctive verb which is pulling an embedded verb into the subjunctive may itself be in a main clause. Here two separate relative clauses, which are italicized, are affected. In this example, the dominating subjunctive verb is a deliberative subjunctive (Unit 12).

  Quis aut eum dīligat *quem metuat* aut eum *ā quō sē metuī putet*?
  Who may love either him whom he fears or him by whom he thinks he is feared?

II Dominating verb as an infinitive

A subordinate clause which is embedded inside of a clause whose verb is an infinitive may also be placed into the subjunctive. While this is not subjunctive by attraction per se, since there is no subjunctive attracting the embedded verb, it is nonetheless classified as such.

- Since infinitives are an essential component of indirect statements, subjunctive by attraction is rather frequent within them.

  Cōgitō virum *quem vīderim* venīre.
  I think that the man whom I saw is coming.

- Infinitives are also common in historical narratives. Here, as well, embedded clauses may be attracted into the subjunctive, as in the following example from Caesar:

  Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, *quod essent pūblicē pollicitī*, flāgitāre.
  Meanwhile Caesar daily demanded from the Aedui the grain, which they had publicly promised.

- Finally, even infinitives which are serving as subjects are sufficient to attract an embedded verb into the subjunctive.

    Currere est perīculōsum quandō nebulae ātrae sint.
    Running is dangerous when the clouds are black.

Notes

- In addition to being dependent upon a subjunctive verb or an infinitive, the *attracted verb* must be an essential or integral part of the thought of the clause upon which it depends. While such an essential or integral semantic value is often noticeable, it is far from being consistently palpable, especially in an English translation. Note the following example from Cicero in which the relative clause is not part of what was being reported, and thus being 'nonessential' to the reported message it is not attracted into the subjunctive:

    Bīthӯniae *quae nunc vestra prōvincia* <u>*est*</u> **vīcōs exustōs esse complūrīs.**
    Many villages of Bithynia, which is now your province, have been burnt.

- The indicative may also be used to emphasize the factual reality of a subordinate clause, as in the following example from Caesar:

    nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, *quod tantum multitūdine* <u>*poterant*</u>**, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent**
    lest, when he has arrayed a battle line, the enemy, who were so able with respect to number, might be able to surround his (men) fighting from the flanks

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	rogat ut cūret quod dīxisset	(Cicero *Quinct.*)
2	pigrī est ingeniī contentum esse iīs quae sint ab aliīs inventa	(Quintilian)
3	multa ab Caesare dicta sunt: bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutenōs quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset	(Caesar *Gal.*)
4	nam quod emās possīs iūre vocāre tuum	(Martial)
5	sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset	(Cicero *Planc.*)
6	nēminem eōrum quī vīverent exciperēs	(Cicero *Planc.*)
7	dī tibi dent quaecumque optēs	(Plautus *As.*)
8	bene quod agās ēveniat tibi	(Plautus *Trin.*)
9	dum illud quod lubeat sciant	(Plautus *Trin.*)
10	numquam hercle dēterrēbor quīn vīderim id quod vīderim	(Plautus *Mil.*)

Exercise 2

Go back to Exercise 1 and determine which verb is the attracted verb and which the dominating verb.

Exercise 3

Translate the following into Latin.

1 I thought that the army of Apollo, whom I had beseeched, was coming.
2 He is permitted to confess that he fears death, which is black and cruel.
3 If only the girl whom I love had not given herself to him!
4 The happy heart of the huntress does not think it feels the pain which the words inflict.
5 Beseeching the gods, who have all, is human.

Reading: The death of King Priam

"Forsan requīrās quae fāta Priamī fuerint. Utī urbis captae cāsum convulsaque līmina tēctōrum vīdit et medium hostem in penetrālibus, arma diū dēsuēta senior trementibus aevō umerīs nēquīquam circumdat et inūtile ferrum cingitur. Moritūrus dēnsōs in hostēs it.

Aedibus in mediīs nūdōque sub aetheris axe ingēns āra fuit. Iuxtā veterrima laurus incumbit ārae atque complectitur umbrā penātēs. Hīc Hecuba et nātae nēquīquam altāria circum, praecipitēs columbae ceu ātrā in tempestāte, condēnsae et dīvōrum simulācra amplexae sedēbant. Ut ipsum Priamum autem sūmptīs iuvenālibus armīs vīdit, inquit:

'Quae mēns tam dīra, miserrime coniūnx, impulit tē hīs tēlīs cingī? Aut quō ruis? Nōn tālī auxiliō nec dēfēnsōribus istīs tempus eget; nōn etiam sī ipse meus nunc Hector adesset. Hūc tandem concēde. Haec āra tuēbitur nōs omnēs, aut moriēris simul.'

Sīc ōre effāta recēpit longaevum ad sēsē et sacrā in sēde locāvit.

Ecce autem Polītēs, ūnus nātōrum Priamī, ēlāpsus est dē caede Pyrrhī, per tēla perque hostēs porticibus longīs fugit et vacua ātria lūstrat saucius. Illum ardēns **īnfēstō vulnere** Pyrrhus īnsequitur. **Iam iamque** manū tenet et premit hastā, ut tandem ante oculōs et ōra parentum ēvāsit. Concidit ac multō cum sanguine vītam fūdit.

Hīc Priamus, quamquam in mediā morte iam tenētur, nōn tamen abstinuit nec vōcī īraeque pepercit. Exclāmat:

'At tibi prō scelere, prō tālibus ausīs, sī in caelō qua pietās, quae tālia cūret, deī persolvant grātēs dignās et praemia dēbita reddant tibi, quī nātī lētum cōram mē cernere fēcistī et parentum vultūs fūnere foedāvistī. At nōn ille **Achillēs**, ex quō mentīris tē, **in** me hostis fuit. Iūra fidemque supplicis ērubuit corpusque exsangue Hectoris sepulcrō reddidit mēque in mea rēgna remīsit.'

Sīc fātus est senior. Tēlum imbelle sine ictū coniēcit, quod prōtinus raucō aere repulsum est. Summō umbōne clipeī nēquīquam pependit. Cui Pyrrhus:

'Referēs ergō haec et nūntius ībis Achillī genitōrī. Illī mea trīstia facta dēgeneremque Neoptolemum nārrāre **mementō**. Nunc morere!'

Hoc dīcēns altāria ad ipsa trementem trāxit et lāpsantem in multō sanguine nātī. Implicāvit comam laevā, dextrāque coruscum ēnsem extulit ac laterī capulō tenus abdidit. Haec fīnis fātōrum Priamī. Hic exitus sorte erat illī: Trōiam incēnsam et prōlāpsa Pergama vidēre. Erat quondam tot populīs terrīsque Asiae superbus rēgnātor. Iacet ingēns truncus in lītore, āvulsumque umerīs caput et sine nōmine corpus."

Notes

īnfēstō vulnere – *with a threatening wound* (which Pyrrhus is ready to inflict)
iam iamque – this repetition is used to emphasize the tenseness of the situation
Achillēs – Recall that Achilles is the father of Pyrrhus. Priam here recounts how Achilles had ransomed the body of Hector, one of Priam's sons, back to him for burial after Achilles had killed him.
in – *against*
mementō – *remember*; this is a future imperative (see Unit 28 of *IBL*)

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

abstineō, -ēre, -stinuī, -stentus   *to refrain*
altāria, altārium   *altar*
ausum, -ī   *daring (deed)*
axis, axis (m.)   *axis*
capulus, -ī   *hilt, handle (of sword)*
columba, -ae   *dove*
concidō, -ere, -cidī   *to fall*
condēnsus, -a, -um   *crowded*
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus   *to hurl*
cūrō (1)   *to care for*
dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris (m.)   *defender*
dēgener, dēgeneris   *degenerate, unworthy*
dēsuētus, -a, -um   *unused, unaccustomed*
effor (1)   *to speak out*
ērubēscō, -ere, -rubuī   *to blush*
ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus   *to climb up; come out*
exclāmō (1)   *to cry out*
exitus, -ūs   *exit, end*
ictus, -ūs   *blow, stroke*
imbellis, imbelle   *harmless*
īnfēstus, -a, -um   *threatening*
inūtilis, inūtile   *futile*
iuvenālis, iuvenāle   *youthful*

iuxtā [+ acc.] *nearby*
laurus, -ī (f.) *laurel*
longaevus, -a, -um *aged*
nārrō (1) *to tell*
nūntius, -ī *messenger*
Polītēs, Polītae (m.) *Polites*
porticus, -ūs *corridor; portico*
prōlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum *to sink into ruin*
raucus, -a, -um *hoarse*
rēgnātor, rēgnātōris (m.) *ruler*
remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to send back*
senior, seniōris (m.) *old man*
sepulcrum, -ī *tomb; burial*
serō, -ere, sēvī, satus *to beget*
truncus, -ī *body; torso*
umbō, umbōnis (m.) *knob*
vacuus, -a, -um *vacant*

UNIT 34
Syncopated verbal forms

Background

Syncope is the dropping of a vowel in a word. Polysyllabic words are particularly susceptible to syncope. In English syncope often occurs in speech.

- The position of the syncopated vowel is indicated by an apostrophe.

No syncope	*Syncope*
camera	*cam'ra*
family	*fam'ly*
hastening	*hast'ning*
did not	*didn't*
is not	*isn't*

- In certain instances an entire syllable may be lost, not just a vowel:

No syncope	*Syncope*
library	*lib'ry*
I would have	*I'd've*

Latin structure

Syncope also occurred in Latin and is particularly well represented by certain specific verbal forms. In the perfect system **-vi-**, **-vē-**, and **-ve-** are optionally dropped when both of the following two conditions hold. They:

- follow **-ā-** or **-ē-**
- precede **-s-** or **-r-**
    - This context amounts to the active forms of the:
        - perfect: 2nd sg., 2nd pl., 3rd pl.
        - pluperfect: all forms
        - future perfect: all forms

- perfect subjunctive: all forms
- pluperfect subjunctive: all forms
- perfect infinitive

The following verbs will be used to illustrate:

amō (1)   *to love*
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus   *to destroy*

Perfect

amā<u>vi</u>stī, dēlē<u>vi</u>stī	→	**amāstī, dēlēstī**
amā<u>vi</u>stis, dēlē<u>vi</u>stis	→	**amāstis, dēlēstis**
amā<u>vē</u>runt, dēlē<u>vē</u>runt	→	**amārunt, dēlērunt**

Pluperfect

amā<u>ve</u>ram, dēlē<u>ve</u>ram	→	**amāram, dēlēram**
amā<u>ve</u>rās, dēlē<u>ve</u>rās	→	**amārās, dēlērās**
. . .		

Future perfect

amā<u>ve</u>rō, dēlē<u>ve</u>rō	→	**amārō, dēlērō**
amā<u>ve</u>ris, dēlē<u>ve</u>ris	→	**amāris, dēlēris**
. . .		

Perfect subjunctive

amā<u>ve</u>rim, dēlē<u>ve</u>rim	→	**amārim, dēlērim**
amā<u>ve</u>rīs, dēlē<u>ve</u>rīs	→	**amārīs, dēlērīs**
. . .		

Pluperfect subjunctive

amā<u>vi</u>ssem, dēlē<u>vi</u>ssem	→	**amāssem, dēlēssem**
amā<u>vi</u>ssēs, dēlē<u>vi</u>ssēs	→	**amāssēs, dēlēssēs**
. . .		

Perfect active infinitive

amā<u>vi</u>sse, dēlē<u>vi</u>sse	→	**amāsse, dēlēsse**

The verb **nōscō**, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus** *to learn, (perf.) to know* exhibits similar contractions in the sequences **-ōvi-**, **-ōvē-**, and **-ōve-**.

Examples

nō<u>vi</u>stī	→	**nōstī**
nō<u>vē</u>runt	→	**nōrunt**
nō<u>ve</u>rim	→	**nōrim**
nō<u>vi</u>sse	→	**nōsse**

The expected syncope occurs when **-ī-** precedes **-vi-**. However, when **-ī-** precedes either **-vē-** or **-ve-**, only the **-v-** is dropped and not their vowels too. Using **audiō**, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītus** *to hear* to illustrate, contrast the following forms with the forms of **amāre**, **dēlēre**, and **nōscere** above.

Perfect			*Pluperfect*		
audīvistī	→	**audīstī**	**audīveram**	→	**audieram**
audīvistis	→	**audīstis**	**audīverās**	→	**audierās**
audīvērunt	→	**audiērunt**	. . .		

Future perfect			*Perfect infinitive*		
audīverō	→	**audierō**	**audīvisse**	→	**audīsse**
audīveris	→	**audieris**			
. . .					

Perfect subjunctive			*Pluperfect subjunctive*		
audīverim	→	**audierim**	**audīvissem**	→	**audīssem**
audīverīs	→	**audierīs**	**audīvissēs**	→	**audīssēs**
. . .			. . .		

Note that the long **-ī-** is shortened when directly before a vowel.

The verb **eō**, **īre**, **īvī**, **itus** *to go* patterns just like any other verb in **-īvī-** except that it seldom syncopates the vowel, just the **-v-**. The vowel is syncopated only optionally in the pluperfect subjunctive and always in the perfect infinitive.

Perfect			*Pluperfect*		
īvistī	→	**iistī**	**īveram**	→	**ieram**
īvistis	→	**iistis**	**īverās**	→	**ierās**
īvērunt	→	**iērunt**	. . .		

Future perfect			*Perfect infinitive*		
īverō	→	**ierō**	**īvisse**	→	**īsse**
īveris	→	**ieris**			
. . .					

Perfect subjunctive			*Pluperfect subjunctive*		
īverim	→	**ierim**	**īvissem**	→	**iissem, īssem**
īverīs	→	**ierīs**	**īvissēs**	→	**iissēs, īssēs**
. . .			. . .		

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	sed eā celeritāte eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt	(Caesar *Gal.*)
2	cum proelium commissum audīssent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt	(Caesar *Gal.*)
3	quem enim vehementer amārat occiderat	(Cicero *Tusc.*)
4	sī revīxissent iī quī haec paene dēlērunt, tum ego redīrem	(Cicero *Red. Sen.*)
5	ut inimīcī meī putārant, sed etiam dēfēnsor fuisset	(Cicero *Planc.*)
6	quem ego nec quī esset nōram	(Plautus *Trin.*)
7	testātus exibō bonam mē cōnscientiam amāsse	(Seneca *Vit. Beat.*)
8	sēmina rērum appellāre suēmus	(Lucretius)
9	sī vestrās forte per aurīs nōmen iit	(Vergil *Aeneid*)
10	nōn enim cessit umquam tumultuantibus atque etiam obviam semper iit	(Suetonius *Jul.*)

Exercise 2

Provide the full, unsyncopated forms of the following verbs.

1	pāstī	6	rediērunt
2	dormierīs	7	laudāstis
3	flēstis	8	subīsse
4	implēsse	9	abolērāmus
5	nescierat	10	dehīstī

Exercise 3

Now convert the forms in Exercise 2 to the opposite number. If singular make plural, and if plural make singular. Provide all possibilities; both syncopated and unsyncopated forms.

Exercise 4

Translate the following into Latin, using syncopated forms where they can occur.

1 The city having been surrounded, they went to Sparta.
2 Because he had allegedly tried to subdue the stag, a solemn prayer was being made.

3 The prisoner had heard that the sailors had known the shrine.
4 I endured what she had carried back.
5 If only they had not gone!

Reading: Aeneas comes upon Helen

"At mē tum prīmum saevus horror circumstetit. Obstipuī. Subīvit cārī genitōris imāgō, ut rēgem aequaevum crūdēlī vulnere vīdī vītam exhālantem. Subīvit dēserta Creūsa et dīrepta domus et cāsus parvī Iūlī. Respiciō et lūstrō quae **cōpia** mē circum sit. Dēseruērunt omnēs dēfessī, et corpora aegra saltū ad terram mīsērunt aut ignibus dedērunt.

Iamque adeō ūnus supereram, cum līmina Vestae servantem et tacitam sēcrētā in sēde latentem **Tyndarida** aspiciō. Dant clāra incendia lūcem mihi errantī passimque oculōs per cūncta ferentī. Illa, praemetuēns sibi īnfēstōs Teucrōs ob Pergama ēversa et praemetuēns poenās Danaōrum īrāsque **dēsertī coniugis**, Trōiae et patriae commūnis Erīnys, sēsē abdiderat. In ārīs invīsa sedēbat.

Exarsērunt ignēs meō in animō. Subit īra cadentem patriam ulcīscī et scelerātās poenās sūmere. Mihi dīcō:

'Scīlicet haec incolumis Spartam patriāsque Mycēnās aspiciet? Partō triumphō ībit rēgīna? Coniugiumque domumque patris nātōsque vidēbit, Īliadum turbā et Phrygiīs cum ministrīs comitāta? Huic occiderit ferrō Priamus? Huic Trōia arserit **ignī**? Huic Dardanium lītus totiēns sanguine sūdāverit? Nōn ita. Namque etsī nūllum memorābile nōmen fēmineā in poenā est, nec habet tālis victōria laudem, laudābor tamen exstīnxisse nefās et sūmpsisse **merentīs** poenās. Animumque explēvisse iuvābit ultrīcis flammae et cinerēs meōrum populōrum satiāvisse.'"

Notes

cōpia – *forces*
Tyndarida – an accusative singular of a Greek noun (see Unit 36)
dēsertī coniugis – Recall that she had abandoned her Greek husband Menelaus in favor of the Trojan Paris.
ignī – an ablative sg. of an *i*-stem; alternative for **igne**
merentīs – accusative pl.; alternative for **merentēs**

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

aequaevus, -a, -um   *of equal age*
circumstō, -āre, -stetī   *to surround*
clārus, -a, -um   *clear; famous; bright*
commūnis, commūne   *mutual, common*
Creūsa, -ae   *Creusa*
dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus   *to desert*
etsī   *although*
exardēscō, -ere, -arsī, -arsus   *to blaze up*

exhālō (1)   *to exhale*
exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus   *to extinguish*
laudō (1)   *to praise*
memorābilis, memorābile   *memorable*
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus   *to die*
pariō, -ere, peperī, partus   *to produce*
praemetuō, -ere   *to fear (the future)*
respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus   *to look back*
saltus, -ūs   *jumping*
satiō (1)   *to satiate*
scīlicet   *of course*
Sparta, -ae   *Sparta*
sūdō (1)   *to sweat*
triumphus, -ī   *triumph*
Tyndaris, Tyndaridis (f.)   *Helen*
ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum   *to avenge*
ultrīx, ultrīcis   *vengeful*
victōria, -ae   *victory*

UNIT 35
Numerals

Background

Numerals come in different shades. Depending on their meaning, there are four different types of numerals:

- Cardinals: one, two, three, four, five . . .
- Ordinals: first, second, third, fourth, fifth . . .
- Distributives: one each, two each, three each, four each, five each . . .
- Adverbs: once, twice, thrice/three times, four times, five times . . .

Latin structure

Latin also possesses four types of numerals. We will focus primarily on the cardinal numerals, since they have the most idiosyncrasies and are most frequent.

Cardinals

The Latin cardinals from 1 to 20 are:

1	ūnus	11	ūndecim
2	duo	12	duodecim
3	trēs	13	tredecim
4	quattuor	14	quattuordecim
5	quīnque	15	quīndecim
6	sex	16	sēdecim
7	septem	17	septendecim
8	octō	18	duōdēvīgintī
9	novem	19	ūndēvīgintī
10	decem	20	vīgintī

Notes

- The teens from 11 to 17 consist of a slightly altered form of **decem** suffixed to some form of the numerals from 1 to 7.
- 18 and 19 count down from 20 and literally mean *two from 20* and *one from 20*, respectively.
- Only the numbers 1, 2, and 3 decline.
  - **Ūnus** is a pronominal adjective and takes the normal 1st–2nd declension adjective endings, with the expected modifications in the genitive and dative (Unit 24 of *IBL*):

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**
Gen.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**
Dat.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**
Acc.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**
Abl.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**

  - The endings of **duo** have some similarities to plural 1st–2nd declension adjective endings and some influences from the 3rd declension, particularly in the dative and ablative forms:

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**
Gen.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**
Dat.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**
Acc.	**duōs, duo**	**duās**	**duo**
Abl.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**

    - **Ambō**, **ambae**, **ambō** *both* is declined identically.

  - **Trēs** only has a two-way gender contrast, with the masculine and feminine being identical:

	Masc./Fem.	*Neut.*
Nom.	**trēs**	**tria**
Gen.	**trium**	**trium**
Dat.	**tribus**	**tribus**
Acc.	**trēs**	**tria**
Abl.	**tribus**	**tribus**

- The Latin tens from 30 to 100 are:

30	**trīgintā**	70	**septuāgintā**
40	**quadrāgintā**	80	**octōgintā**
50	**quīnquāgintā**	90	**nōnāgintā**
60	**sexāgintā**	100	**centum**

  ○ None of these numbers declines.

- The Latin hundreds from 200 to 1000 are:

200	**ducentī**	700	**septingentī**
300	**trecentī**	800	**octingentī**
400	**quadringentī**	900	**nōngentī**
500	**quīngentī**	1000	**mīlle**
600	**sescentī**		

  ○ 200 to 900 take 1st–2nd declension adjective endings.
  ○ **Mīlle** is peculiar:

    ■ In the singular it is indeclinable and acts as an adjective.

      Spectā mīlle animālia quae flūmen trānseunt!
      Look at the 1000 animals which are crossing the river!

    ■ In the plural (that is in *2000*, *3000*, *4000*, etc), however, it acts as a 3rd declension neuter noun and takes a genitive after it. Its forms are:

Nom.	**mīlia**
Gen.	**mīlium**
Dat.	**mīlibus**
Acc.	**mīlia**
Abl.	**mīlibus**

      Spectā trēs mīlia animālium quae flūmen trānseunt!
      Look at the 3000 animals which are crossing the river!

Forming compound numerals

Now that we know how to say the digits, tens, and hundreds, how do we put them together and say something like *27* or *342*?

- A digit can combine with a ten in two different ways:
  - Either like English, in which the digit directly follows the ten:

vīgintī septem	*27*
octōgintā duae puellae	*82 girls*

  - Or like German in which the digit precedes the ten and **et** *and* is placed between the two:

septem et vīgintī	*27*
duae et octōgintā puellae	*82 girls*

  - When the number ends in *1*, the forms of **ūnus**, which lack plural endings, simply agree in gender and case but not number:

fēminās ūnam et sexāgintā	*61 girls*

  - *28*, *38*, *48*, *58*, *68*, *78*, *88* and *29*, *39*, *49*, *59*, *69*, *79*, *89* can either follow the pattern of the other numerals or may follow the pattern of *18* and *19* and count down from the following ten.

septuāgintā octō	*78*
octō et septuāgintā	
duodēseptuāgintā	

  - Numerals consisting of at least three parts do not have **et** and are often ordered from highest to lowest:

trecentī quadrāgintā duo	*342*

    - It is important to observe the difference between **mīlia** and **mīlle** in compound numbers, however:

decem mīlia ~ mīlia decem	*10,000*
mīlle decem	*1,010*

  - Numerals may be followed either by the noun directly or by **ex/ē** + the noun

trīgintā virī	~	**trīgintā ē virīs**	*thirty men*

Ordinals

These are adjectives used to indicate rank. They are declined as 1st–2nd declension adjectives.

1st	**prīmus, -a, -um**	30th	**tricēsimus, -a, -um**
2nd	**secundus, -a, -um**	40th	**quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um**
3rd	**tertius, -a, -um**	50th	**quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um**
4th	**quārtus, -a, -um**	60th	**sexāgēsimus, -a, -um**
5th	**quīntus, -a, -um**	70th	**septuāgēsimus, -a, -um**
6th	**sextus, -a, -um**	80th	**octōgēsimus, -a, -um**
7th	**septimus, -a, -um**	90th	**nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um**
8th	**octāvus, -a, -um**	100th	**centēsimus, -a, -um**
9th	**nōnus, -a, -um**	200th	**ducentēsimus, -a, -um**
10th	**decimus, -a, -um**	300th	**trecentēsimus, -a, -um**
11th	**ūndecimus, -a, -um**	400th	**quadringentēsimus, -a, -um**
12th	**duodecimus, -a, -um**	500th	**quīngentēsimus, -a, -um**
13th	**tertius, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um**	600th	**sescentēsimus, -a, -um**
14th	**quārtus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um**	700th	**septingentēsimus, -a, -um**
15th	**quīntus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um**	800th	**octingentēsimus, -a, -um**
16th	**sextus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um**	900th	**nōngentēsimus, -a, -um**
17th	**septimus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um**	1000th	**mīllēsimus, -a, -um**
18th	**duodēvīcēsimus, -a, -um**		
19th	**ūndēvīcēsimus, -a, -um**		
20th	**vīcēsimus, -a, -um**		

Distributives

These are adjectives used to denote how much of something is allocated to each person or thing. They are declined according to the plural of the 1st–2nd declension. The tens are as follows:

one each	**singulī, -ae, -a**	*six each*	**sēnī, -ae, -a**
two each	**bīnī, -ae, -a**	*seven each*	**septēnī, -ae, -a**
three each	**ternī, -ae, -a**	*eight each*	**octōnī, -ae, -a**
four each	**quaternī, -ae, -a**	*nine each*	**novēnī, -ae, -a**
five each	**quīnī, -ae, -a**	*ten each*	**dēnī, -ae, -a**

Examples

Magister discipulīs singulōs librōs dedit.
The teacher gave the boys one book each.

Ducēs mīlitibus dēnīs imperāvērunt.
The leaders ordered ten soldiers each.

Adverbs

These numerals indicate how many times something happens. Being adverbs, they do not change their forms. The first five are:

once	**semel**	*thrice, three times*	**ter**
twice	**bis**	*four times*	**quater**
		five times	**quīnquiēs**

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1 cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit   (Caesar *Gal.*)
2 cingēbat nōn lātior pedibus quīnquāgintā   (Caesar *Gal.*)
3 lūna quater iūnctīs implērat cornibus orbem   (Ovid *Met.*)
4 dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus   (Caesar *Gal.*)
5 haud sordidae videntur ambae   (Plautus *As.*)
6 dā mī bāsia mīlle, deinde centum, dein mīlle altera, dein   (Catullus)
   secunda centum, deinde usque altera mīlle, deinde centum,
   dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerīmus, conturbābimus illa
7 reliquum est dē sēstertiīs centum mīlibus dē quibus   (Cicero *Fam.*)
   meminī mihi ā tē Myrinā litterās esse adlātās
8 cum semel occidit brevis lūx, nox est perpetua ūna   (Catullus)
   dormienda
9 ex hīs quī arma ferre possent ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo   (Caesar *Gal.*)
10 at licet ambōrum populōs exscindere rēgum   (Vergil *Aeneid*)

Exercise 2

In relation to #9 in Exercise 1, how would one say 1,092?

Exercise 3

Which verbal form in Exercise 1 has an unexpected macron?

Exercise 4

Translate the following into Latin.

1 The undulating smoke aroused the Spartan women five times.
2 The gate of Troy had been conquered by the 37th deity.
3 Thick smoke darkened the pure sight after 89 Spartan women had been scattered.
4 He drew over five lines of troops in order that they might conquer the blamed men.
5 Eight Spartan women each obeyed the restraining deity.

Reading: Venus appears to Aeneas

"Tālia iactābam et furiātā mente ferēbar, cum mihi alma parēns, nōn ante oculīs tam clāra, obtulit sē videndam. Pūrā in lūce per noctem refulsit. Cōnfessa est sē deam esse, quālis et quanta caelicolīs vidērī solet. Dextrā prehēnsum mē continuit roseōque ōre haec īnsuper addidit:

'Nāte, quī tantus dolor indomitās īrās excitat? Quid furis aut quōnam **meī** cūra **tibi** recessit? Nōn prius aspiciēs ubi fessum aetāte parentem Anchīsēn līqueris? An superet coniūnxne Creūsa Ascaniusque puer? Circum quōs **omnīs** undique Grāiae aciēs errant. Nī mea cūra resistat, iam flammae eōs tulerint et inimīcus ēnsis hauserit.

Nōn **tibi** Tyndaridis Lacaenae faciēs invīsa culpāta est. Aut nōn culpātus est Paris. Dīvōrum inclēmentia hās opēs ēvertit, sternitque Trōiam ā culmine. Aspice! Nam ēripiam omnem nūbem, quae nunc obducta tuōs mortālēs vīsūs hebetat et ūmida circum tē cālīgat. Tū **nē** qua iussa parentis timē! Neu praeceptīs pārēre recūsā!

Hīc, ubi disiectās mōlēs āvulsaque saxa saxīs vidēs, mixtōque pulvere undantem fūmum, Neptūnus mūrōs ēmōtaque fundāmenta magnō tridentī quatit. Tōtam ā sēdibus urbem ēruit. Hīc Iūnō saevissima Scaeās portās prīma tenet. Ferrō accīncta furēnsque vocat ā nāvibus agmen socium.

Iam respice! Summās arcēs Trītōnia Pallas īnsēdit in limbō, Gorgone saevā effulgēns. Ipse pater animōs Danaīs vīrīs secundās vīrēs sufficit, ipse deōs in Dardania arma suscitat. Ēripe, nāte, fugam fīnemque impōne labōrī! Nūsquam aberō et tūtum tē patriō in līmine sistam.'

Dīxerat et spissīs in umbrīs noctis sē condidit. Appārent dīrae faciēs inimīcaque Trōiae nūmina magna deōrum."

Notes

meī – this is an objective genitive (see Unit 12 of *IBL*)
tibi – this is an ethic dative (see Unit 18 of *IBL*)
omnīs – alternative accusative pl. of a 3rd declension adjective for **omnēs**
tibi – dative of agent in place of the more common ablative of agent
nē – used here with an imperative, instead of the more usual present subjunctive, to express a negative imperative

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

caelicola, -ae (m/f)   *deity*
cālīgō (1)   *to darken*
cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum   *to confess*
contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus   *to restrain*
culpō (1)   *to blame*
disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus   *to scatter; break up*
effulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī, -fulsus   *to shine out*
excitō (1)   *to arouse*
fūmus, -ī   *smoke*
Gorgō, Gorgonis (f.)   *Gorgon*
hebetō (1)   *to dim*
inclēmentia, -ae   *severity*
Lacaena, -ae   *Spartan (woman)*
limbus, -ī   *fringe*
obdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus   *to draw over*
pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritus [+ dat.]   *to obey*
prius   *before*
pūrus, -a, -um   *pure, bright*
quatiō, -ere, quassus sum   *to shake*
quōnam   *where to?*
Scaeus, -a, -um   *Scaean (of a gate of Troy)*
sistō, -ere, stetī, status   *to stop; settle*
spissus, -a, -um   *thick*
superō (1)   *to conquer; kill; survive*
suscitō   *to arouse*
undō (1)   *to undulate*
vīsus, -ūs   *view, sight*

UNIT 36
Greek nouns

Background

The influence of Greece on Roman civilization cannot be downplayed. It permeated many aspects of Roman society, including language. Some Greek borrowings are easily identifiable by certain rare Latin letters or letter combinations, including:

- *y* used to write Greek upsilon: υ
  - ○ syllaba, -ae *syllable*
    - ■ **stylus, -ī** *writing implement* is, exceptionally, not of Greek origin
- *ph* for Greek phi: φ
  - ○ phalanx, phalangis (f.) *phalanx*
- *th* for Greek theta: θ
  - ○ thermae, -ārum *warm baths*
- *ch* for Greek chi: χ
  - ○ chorus, -ī *chorus*
- *z* for Greek zeta: ζ
  - ○ zōthēca, -ae *private room*

Latin structure

Many words, including the examples given above, were adapted into Latin declension classes. This was not always the situation, however. In the case of some nouns, and especially in the case of proper nouns (i.e. the names of people and places), the words of Greek origin maintain some semblance of their original Greek declensional patterns.

It is important to emphasize at the outset that the rules for the declension of Greek nouns are by no means watertight. Variation occurs within a single noun and between prose and poetry. One should deal with each noun on a case-by-case basis as it is encountered in reading.

Greek 1st declension

Nouns ending in **-ē** are feminine while those ending in **-ās** and **-ēs** are masculine.

- Since the bulk of Greek nouns borrowed into Latin are proper names or words with no plural, only singular forms exist in the Greek 1st declension.
  - This will be true of the 2nd declension as well, although see below for the 3rd declension.

- Observe the following three personal names:

	Feminine	*Masculine*	
Nom.	**Pēnelopē**	**Aenēās**	**Anchīsēs**
Gen.	**Pēnelopēs**	**Aenēae**	**Anchīsae**
Dat.	**Pēnelopae**	**Aenēae**	**Anchīsae**
Acc.	**Pēnelopēn**	**Aenēān, Aenēam**	**Anchīsēn, Anchīsam**
Abl.	**Pēnelopā**	**Aenēā**	**Anchīsā**

  - The vocative is identical to the nominative for feminines. In masculines the **-s** is dropped (**Aenēā**, **Anchīsē**), with nouns in **-ēs** having a variant in **-a** (**Anchīsa**)
  - Some nouns have an ablative in **-ē**, such as **epitomē** *epitome*

Greek 2nd declension

Nouns in **-os** or **-ōs** can be either masculine or feminine. Nouns in **-on** are neuter. **Dēlos** is an island and **Īlion** is a city, while **Androgeōs** is a personal name.

	Dēlos (f.) *Delos*	**Androgeōs** (m.)	**Īlion** (nt.) *Troy*
Nom.	**Dēlos** (f.) *Delos*	**Androgeōs** (m.)	**Īlion** (nt.) *Troy*
Gen.	**Dēlī**	**Androgeī**	**Īliī**
Dat.	**Dēlō**	**Androgeō**	**Īliō**
Acc.	**Dēlon**	**Androgeōn**	**Īlion**
Abl.	**Dēlō**	**Androgeō**	**Īliō**

- **Dēlōs** and **Īlion** both exhibit alternative forms which indicate a more complete transfer to the Latin 2nd declension:

  - nominative **Dēlus** and accusative **Dēlum**
  - **Īlium** alongside **Īlion**.

- **Androgeī** has alternate forms in the genitive and accusative:

  - genitive: **Androgeō**
  - accusative: **Androgeō** and **Androgeōna**.

- The vocative is the same as the nominative in the case of **Androgeōs** and **Īlion**. **Dēlos**, on the other hand, has a Latin 2nd declension vocative, as do other nouns which end in **-os**: **Dēle**.

Greek 3rd declension

There are two classes of third declension nouns.

- Class 1 has all the expected Latin 3rd declension endings, aside from a Greek accusative singular in **-a**.
- Class 2 is a mix of endings of the Latin 2nd and 3rd declensions.

Class 1			
Nom.	**Atlās** (m.) *Atlas*	**āēr** (m.) *air*	**hērōs** (m.) *hero*
Gen.	**Atlantis**	**āeris**	**hērōis**
Dat.	**Atlantī**	**āerī**	**hērōī**
Acc.	**Atlanta**	**āera**	**hērōa**
Abl.	**Atlante**	**āere**	**hērōe**

  - The vocatives are **Atlā**, **āēr**, and **hērōs**, respectively.
  - **Āēr** and **hērōs** both also have the accusatives **āērem** and **hērōem**.

Class 2		
Nom.	**Sōcratēs** (m.) *Socrates*	**Dīdō** (f.) *Dido*
Gen.	**Sōcratis, Sōcratī**	**Dīdūs, Dīdōnis**
Dat.	**Sōcratī**	**Dīdō, Dīdōnī**
Acc.	**Sōcratēn, Sōcratem**	**Dīdō, Dīdōnem**
Abl.	**Sōcrate**	**Dīdō, Dīdōne**

  - The vocatives are **Sōcratēs** or **Sōcratē** and **Dīdō**, respectively.

Some Greek nouns do have plurals. Most are thrown into the Latin 1st declension but a few may exhibit Greek plurals. Most noteworthy are:

- nominative plural in **-es**   **Phryges** *Phrygians*
- accusative plural in **-as**   **Phrygas** *Phrygians*
- genitive plural in **-ōn**   **Geōrgicōn** *of the Georgics* (name of a literary work)
- genitive plural in **-eōn**   **Metamorphōseōn** *of the Metamorphoses* (literary work)

Exercise 1

Translate the following sentences, which come from the authors listed.

1	sī Venus Aenēān gravida temerāsset in alvō	(Ovid *Am.*)
2	tamen hīs Aenēān compellat vōcibus ultrō	(Vergil *Aeneid*)
3	nunc Aenēās media sēcum per moenia dūcit	(Vergil *Aeneid*)
4	nōn tamen Aenēān, quamvīs male cōgitat, odī	(Ovid *Ep.*)
5	quid miserum, Aenēā, lacerās?	(Vergil *Aeneid*)
6	quō fugis, Aenēā?	(Vergil *Aeneid*)
7	nec dī tēxēre Cupencum Aenēā veniente suī	(Vergil *Aeneid*)
8	quod ut aurea vīdit Aenēae genetrīx	(Ovid *Met.*)
9	at Venus Aenēae rēgnat in urbe suī	(Ovid *Am.*)
10	at vērō Aenēās aspectū obmūtuit āmēns	(Vergil *Aeneid*)

Exercise 2

Determine what cases the following singular nouns are in. Use the dictionary to determine their nominative forms and genders

1st Declension	2nd Declension	3rd Declension
1 Leōnidae	5 barbiton	9 aethera
2 Leōnidān	6 Panthī	10 Thalē
3 epitomē	7 Panthūs	11 Oedipoda
4 comētēs	8 barbite	12 Orphēus

Exercise 3

Using the Greek nouns used as examples in this unit, translate the following into Latin.

1 The farmer will find Dido in order that she may give him more firs.
2 Atlas having been injured, the new hero carried the world.
3 If only Androgeos had had water.
4 Let us go to Troy!
5 The son-in-law of Penelope believes that Anchises lingers many years.

Reading: Aeneas' father wishes to die with Troy

"Tum vērō omne Īlium in ignīs cōnsīdere vīsum est et ex īmō Neptūnia Trōia vertī. Ac sunt velutī antīquam ornum summīs in montibus cum ferrō accīsam **crēbrīs**que **bipennibus** agricolae certātim īnstant ēruere. Illa usque minātur et tremefacta comam concussō vertice nūtat, dōnec vulneribus paulātim ēvicta suprēmum congemuit trāxitque ā iugīs āvulsa ruīnam.

Dēscendō ac dūcente deō interque flammam et hostēs expedior. Dant tēla locum flammaeque recēdunt. Atque iam pervēnī ad līmina sēdis patriae, genitor meus, quem tollere in altōs montīs optābam prīmumque petēbam. Abnegat excīsā Trōiā vītam prōdūcere exsiliumque patī. Ait:

'Ō vōs, quibus integer aevī sanguis, solidaeque vīrēs stant suō rōbore, vōs, agitāte fugam! Sī caelicolae voluissent mē dūcere vītam, hās sēdēs mihi servāvissent. Satis et **super** est. Excidia vīdī et captae urbī **superāvī**. Sīc Ō sīc positum corpus meum adfātī discēdite! Ipse manū mortem inveniam. Miserēbitur hostis exuviāsque petet. Facilis iactūra sepulcrī est. Iam prīdem invīsus dīvīs et inūtilis annōs dēmoror ex tempore, quō mē divōrum pater atque hominum rēx adflāvit ventīs fulminis et contigit ignī.'

Tālibus perstābat fīxusque manēbat. Nōs contrā effūsī sumus lacrimīs, coniūnx Creūsa Ascaniusque omnisque domus, nē pater vellet vertere sēcum cūncta fātōque nostrō gravī incumbere. Abnegat inque inceptō et **īsdem** sēdibus haeret."

Notes

crēbrīs bipennibus – *frequent are the ax blows*
super – *beyond*
superāvī – takes the dative here
īsdem – variant of **eīsdem**

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

abnegō (1) *to deny*
accīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus *to cut*
agricola, -ae (m.) *farmer*
certātim *in competition*
coma, -ae *hair; foliage*
concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus *to shake*
congemō, -ere, -gemuī *to groan*
dēmoror (1) *to linger*
dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus *to descend*
expediō, -īre, -pedīvī, -pedītus *to procure; bring out*
exsilium, -ī *exile*
iactūra, -ae *throwing away*
integer, integra, integrum *intact, sound*
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus *to find*
Neptūnius, -a, -um *of Neptune*
nūtō (1) *to sway*
ornus, -ī (f.) *ash*
perstō, -āre, -stitī, -status *to persist*
prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus *to prolong*
solidus, -a, -um *solid*
usque *constantly; even*

UNIT 37
Meter I: weight and feet

Background

English poetry is based on stress.

- The stressed syllable of an English word receives greater emphasis, as reflected by its higher pitch and greater loudness.
  - The first syllable of ___wea___ry is stressed, while the second is unstressed.
- Some words have secondary stresses as well.
  - The first syllable of ***Tennessee*** bears a stress which is not as strong as the main stress of the final syllable but is stronger than the weak, unstressed middle syllable.
- In phrases one syllable may also bear greater stress than the others.
  - The stressed syllable of the verb ***pon***dered trumps the stress of the pronoun subject *I* in the phrase *I **pon**dered*.

English meter involves the positioning of stressed and unstressed syllables in certain specific patterns. Observe the stressed–unstressed rhythm of Edgar Allan Poe's poem *The Raven*. In the following, the bold syllables are stressed.

1 ***Once*** upon a **midnight dreary, while** I **pon**dered **weak** and **weary**
2 ***Over many*** a **quaint** and **cu**rious **volume of** for**gotten lore**,
3 ***While*** I **nodded nearly napping suddenly** there **came** a **tapping**,
4 ***As*** of **some**one **gently rapping, rapping** at my **cham**ber **door**.
5 ***"Tis*** some **visitor**," I **muttered**, "**tapping** at my **cham**ber **door**;
6 ***Only this***, and **nothing more**."

Poe's poem groups pairs of stressed and unstressed syllables into *feet*. This type of foot structure is called a *trochee*.

(once up) **(on** a) **(mid**night) **(drea**ry) **(while** I) **(pon**dered) **(weak** and) **(wea**ry)
(while I) **(nod**ded) **(near**ly) **(nap**ping) **(sud**den) **(ly** there) **(came** a) **(tap**ping)

Additionally, Poe employs eight feet per line, making his poem an *octameter*. Taking the type of foot which predominates along with the number of feet per line gives the type of meter of a work. In the case of *The Raven*, its structure is *trochaic octameter*.

Some poets stick to a certain meter slavishly in a given work. In others, not so much. The breaking of a meter can be used for its own artistic effect. In *The Raven* the astute reader will observe a few instances where the *trochaic octameter* is broken:

- In line 2 the second and fourth feet each consist of three syllables:

  (**o**ver) (**ma**ny a) (**quaint** and) (**cu**rious) (**vol**ume) (**of** for) (**got**ten) (**lore**)

- Lines 2, 4 and 5 end on a stressed syllable, whose second, unstressed foot element is missing.

  ○ Notice that all three lines end on the same phonetic sound *-or(e)*.

- Line 6 is a half-line with only four feet.

Despite these slight inconsistencies, the poem is still termed *trochaic octameter* because trochees predominate throughout and eight feet occur in every line but the last one of a stanza, which is a half-line and thus four feet.

Latin structure: *weight*

Latin poetry also forms syllables into feet and feet into lines. The crucial difference from English is how Latin constructs its feet. While English feet are centered on stress, Latin feet are centered on *weight*, contrasting *heavy* with *light* syllables.

Heavy syllables

- A syllable is *heavy* when it has a long vowel. A vowel is long when:

  ○ it has a macron
  ○ it is a diphthong: **ae**, **oe**, **eu**, **ei**
  ○ it is followed by two consonants. The two consonants do *not* need to be in the same word.

    ■ Remember that **-x-** counts as two consonants since it is pronounced as [ks].
    ■ **h-** is ignored
    ■ When acting as a consonant, **-i-** lengthens the preceding vowel if short. This does not apply to **-i-** which is medial only as a result of prefixing a preposition or adverb to a verb or noun.

☐ Contrast **Troiae** *of Troy* with **biiugī** *chariot* from **bis** *twice* and **iugum** *yoke*. Below, — marks a heavy syllable and ∪ a light one.

$$— \quad — \qquad ∪ \; ∪ \; —$$
Tro-iae   bi-iu-gī

■ The consonant clusters **pr**, **br**, **tr**, **dr**, **cr**, and **gr** (the *muta cum liquidā* clusters) may count as two consonants or as one consonant. The choice is up to the author and it varies from work to work.

Light syllables

- A syllable is *light* when none of the above rules applies. Specifically, the syllable's vowel is short if:

  ○ It does not bear a macron.
  ○ It is not a diphthong.
  ○ It is followed by one consonant and this consonant is neither **-x-** nor an **-i-** between vowels following a prefix.

Finally, the final syllable of a line may be lengthened by a line-final pause if the verse needs a long vowel.

Latin structure: *foot types*

The most common foot-types are:

Two syllables		*Three syllables*	
Trochee	— ∪	Dactyl	— ∪ ∪
Iamb	∪ —	Anapest	∪ ∪ —
Spondee	— —		

There are a wide variety of types of meter employed throughout the history of Latin verse. We will focus only on three common types which beginning students are likely to encounter.

Dacytlic hexameter

As the name suggests, this type of verse uses six feet.

1st foot	dactyl or spondee
2nd foot	dactyl or spondee
3rd foot	dactyl or spondee
4th foot	dactyl or spondee
5th foot	dactyl
6th foot	trochee or spondee

Vergil's *Aeneid* is written in this verse. Its first and last lines are as follows:

arma virumque canō Troiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs

  1   2   3   4   5   6

— ∪ ∪| —   ∪ ∪| — —| — —| — ∪ ∪| ——

(Arma vir)(um que ca)(nō Tro)(iae quī) (prīmus ab) (ōrīs)

vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās

  1   2   3   4   5   6

— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ |— ∪ ∪ |— —| — ∪ ∪ | — —

(vītaque)(cum gemi)(tū fugit)(indig)(nāta sub)(umbrās)

Hendecasyllable

This type of verse has eleven syllables per line, divided into five feet as follows:

1st foot	iamb or spondee
2nd foot	dactyl
3rd foot	trochee
4th foot	trochee
5th foot	trochee or spondee

An example of this verse is Catullus 5:

dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerīmus

   1   2   3   4   5

—   — |— ∪ ∪| —   ∪ | —∪|— —

(dein cum) (mīlia) (multa) (fēce)(rīmus)

Limping iambic

This consists of six feet whose structure is:

1st foot	iamb	(spondee or trochee possible)
2nd foot	iamb	(spondee or trochee possible)
3rd foot	iamb	(spondee or trochee possible)
4th foot	iamb	
5th foot	iamb	
6th foot	spondee or trochee	

Catullus 8 employs this meter:

Miser Catulle, dēsinās ineptīre

     1   2   3   4   5   6

  ∪ —| ∪ —| ∪ —|∪—| ∪—|—∪

(Miser) (Catul)(le, dē)(sinās) (inep)(tīre)

Advanced topics

A *caesura* is a word boundary within a foot.

- If the word boundary immediately follows the head of the foot, or in Latin —, then it is a *masculine caesura.*
- If the word boundary does not immediately follow the head of the foot, or in Latin ∪, then it is a *feminine caesura.*

Different types of meter mandate that a caesura should occur in a specific foot of each line. In dactylic hexameter, for instance, a masculine caesura usually occurs in the third foot and also sometimes in the 4th foot. Observe the first line from Vergil cited earlier.

    A *diaeresis* is a foot boundary that coincides with a word boundary. Note the diaereses between the 4th and 5th feet in the first passage from Vergil.

Exercise 1

Scan the following lines from Ovid's *Metamorphoses*. That is, determine whether the syllables are heavy and light and what the feet are. Try to determine the type of meter this piece is written in. There are two examples of *muta cum liquidā*. How is the vowel in front of each treated? As heavy or light? Recall that line-final vowels can be lengthened where needed.

> Pȳramus et Thisbē, iuvenum pulcherrimus alter,
> altera, quās Oriēns habuit, praelāta puellīs,
> contiguās tenuēre domōs, ubi dīcitur altam
> coctilibus mūrīs cīnxisse Semīramis urbem.
> Nōtitiam prīmōsque gradūs vīcīnia fēcit.
> Tempore crēvit amor; taedae quoque iūre coissent,
> sed vetuēre patrēs; quod non potuēre vetāre,
> ex aequō captīs ardēbant mentibus ambō.

Exercise 2

Translate the poem in Exercise 1.

Exercise 3

Now scan the end of this Catullus piece poem, 8 and try to determine what type of meter is being used. Recall that line-final vowels can be lengthened where needed. Which line does not scan? Which word has a long vowel which was learned as not having a long vowel?

> At tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
> Scelesta, vae tē! Quae tibī manet vīta?
> Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
> Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
> Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?
> At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā!

Exercise 4

Translate the poem in Exercise 3.

Reading: Aeneas wishes to fight again

"Rūrsus in arma mē feror mortemque miserrimus optō. Nam quod cōnsilium aut quae iam fortūna dabātur?

'Mēne efferre meum pedem posse, genitor, tē relictō spērāvistī? Tantum nefās patriō ōre excidit? Sī superīs placet nihil ex tantā urbe relinquī, et sī sedet hoc in animō et tē iuvat tē tuōsque addere peritūrae Trōiae – patet iānua istī lētō. Iamque Pyrrhus, quī nātum ante ōra patris necat et patrem ipsum **ad** ārās obtruncat et quī dē multō sanguine Priamī venit, ille aderit.

Hoc erat, alma parēns, quid mē per tēla, per ignīs ēripis? Ut cernam mediīs in penetrālibus hostem esse et Ascanium patremque meum iuxtāque Creūsam **alterum in alterius** sanguine mactātōs esse? Arma, virī, ferte arma! Vocat lūx ultima victōs. Reddite mē Danaīs! Sinite ut īnstaurāta proelia revīsam! Numquam omnēs inultī hodiē moriēmur!'

Hinc ferrō accingor rūrsus clipeōque sinistram īnsertābam mēque extrā tēcta ferēbam. Ecce autem complexa pedēs meōs in līmine coniūnx haerebat, parvumque Iūlum patrī tendēbat.

'Sī peritūrus abīs, tum nōs rape in omnia tēcum! Sīn tū, expertus, aliquam spem pōnis in armīs sūmptīs, hanc prīmum domum tūtāre! Cui parvus Iūlus, cui pater tuus et ego, coniūnx quondam tua dicta, relinquor?'

Tālia vōciferāns gemitū tēctum omne replēbat."

37

Meter I: weight and feet

Notes

ad – *at*
alterum in alterius – *one after another*

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

extrā [+ acc.]   *outside*
hodiē   *today*
īnsertō (1)   *to insert; slip*
inultus, -a, -um   *unavenged*
necō (1)   *to kill*
numquam   *never*
obtruncō (1)   *to slaughter*
repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus   *to fill*
tūtor (1)   *to watch, protect*
vōciferor (1)   *to shout*

UNIT 38
Meter II: elision and synizesis

Background

It is often the case in meter that a vowel or syllable needs to be syncopated in order to fit the meter. This happens frequently in English and is indicated by an apostrophe. Observe the following line from Shakespeare's Sonnet 117, which is in iambic pentameter.

And given to time your own dear-purchased right

By a simple count there are 11 syllables; one too many! To rectify the situation, the unstressed vowel of *given* may be dropped, yielding:

$$\underset{\smile \; — \;|\; \smile \; — \;|\; \smile \qquad — |\; \smile \qquad — |\; \smile \qquad —}{\overset{1 \qquad 2 \qquad 3 \qquad 4 \qquad 5}{}}$$

And giv'n to time your own dear-purchased right

Latin structure

In Latin meter unstressed vowels, and in one very specific context the following consonant as well, often need to be dropped. There are two such processes: *elision* and *synizesis*. We'll deal with each in turn.

Elision

Elision is the deletion of a word-final vowel when immediately followed by a vowel in the next word. Recall that **h-** is ignored. This can be schematically illustrated as follows where # signifies a word boundary and a superscript letter with a line through it indicates it is not pronounced.

V#   #(h)V   → $^{\text{V̶}}$#   #(h)V

Elision also applies if the first vowel is followed by an **-m-** in the same word. This indicates that final **–Vm** sequences may have started to be pronounced as nasal vowels in Latin.

$$\text{Vm\#} \quad \text{(h)V} \quad \rightarrow \quad {}^{\text{Vm}}\text{\#} \quad \text{(h)V}$$

Take the following line from Vergil's *Aeneid*:

lītora – multum ille et terrīs iactātus et alto (Aeneid I.3)

Trying to scan every syllable results in:

```
      1          2        3      4     5       6       7
 — ∪ ∪|     — ∪ |   —∪ |— — |— — | —∪ ∪ | — —
 (lītora) — (multum) (ille)  (et ter)(rīs iac)(tātus et) (altō)
```

The problems with such a scansion are that it contains one foot too many, its fifth foot is not a dactyl as mandated by dactylic hexameter, and there are some unexpected trochees. In order to fix the line, the **-um** of **multum** and the **-e** of **ille** can be elided, since they both occur directly before a vowel:

```
      1            2           3      4       5       6
 — ∪ ∪|      —          — | — — |— — | —∪ ∪ | — —
 (lītora) — (mult͞u͞m ille)  (et ter) (rīs iac)(tātus et) (altō)
```

It is normal to write elided syllables and not use an apostrophe as does English, although the elided syllables are not pronounced when reading out the line. It is imperative to emphasize that elision occurs only *when needed* and is not obligatory any time the context for it arises.

Synizesis

Synizesis is the deletion of a vowel followed directly by another vowel *inside of the same word*.

$$\text{VV} \quad \rightarrow \quad {}^{\text{V}}\text{V}$$

Take the following line, again from Vergil's *Aeneid*:

ūnius ob noxam et furiās Aiācis Oīleī (Aeneid I.41)

Trying to scan every syllable results in:

$$1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad 7$$
$$—\cup\cup|— \quad —|\cup —| \quad \cup\cup— \quad |——|\cup\cup—|\cup—$$
(ūnius) (ob nox)(am et) (furiās)   (Aiā)(cis Oī)(leī)

This scansion fails for having too many feet, no dactyl in the 5th foot, an iamb, and two anapests!

How can the scansion be fixed? Well, the first two feet actually look quite nice, so let us play with the third foot, since this is where the problems begin. Eliding the **-am** of **noxam** results in:

$$1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6$$
$$—\cup\cup|— \quad — \quad | \quad —\cup\cup|— \quad —|—\cup\cup|—\cup|—$$
(ūnius) (ob nox^(am)) (et furi)(ās   A)(iācis O)(īle)ī

This scansion is a significant improvement, since we now have a dactyl in the 5th foot and have rid ourselves of the iamb and two anapests from our first scansion. The problem, however, is that the final syllable of the line is not in any foot. Applying synizesis to the **-e-** of **Oīleī** solves the problem:

$$1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5$$
$$—\cup\cup|— \quad — \quad | \quad —\cup\cup|— \quad —|—\cup\cup|— \quad —$$
(ūnius) (ob nox^(am)) (et furi)(ās   A)(iācis O)(īl^(e)ī)

As with elision, synizesis does not apply every time the context for it is satisfied. In this line, for instance, the context for synizesis is met in **ūnius**, **furiās** and twice in **Oīleī**. Synizesis of only the third vowel of **Oīleī** is needed, however, since applying synizesis only here can fix the line and result in a scansion that fits the meter.

Exercise 1

Return to and see if you can now make the third line of Exercise 3 scan.

Exercise 2

Scan Catullus 85, a short two-line poem. It is an *elegiac couplet* which consists of a hexameter followed by a pentameter. The pentameter line in elegiac couplets consists of the following structure: two feet, half foot, two feet, half foot. The types of feet used for both lines are dactyls and spondees.

Ōdī et amō. Quārē id faciam fortasse requīrēs.
Nesciō sed fierī sentiō et excrucior

Exercise 3

Translate the poem in Exercise 2.

Exercise 4

Scan the following lines from Catullus 7 and determine the meter. There is an instance of a short vowel before a *muta cum liquidā*. Is this vowel scanned as long or short in this poem?

Quaerīs quot mihi bāsiātiōnēs
tuae, Lēsbia, sint satis superque.
Quam magnus numerus Libyssae harēnae
lāsarpīciferīs iacet Cyrēnīs,
ōrāclum Iovis inter aestuōsī
et Battī veteris sacrum sepulcrum;
aut quam sīdera multa, cum tacet nox,
furtīvōs hominum vident amōrēs:
tam tē bāsia multa bāsiāre
vēsānō satis et super Catullō est,
quae nec pernumerāre cūriōsī
possint nec mala fascināre lingua.

Exercise 5

Translate the passage in Exercise 4.

Reading: A divine sign and Aeneas leaves

"Subitum mīrābile dictū mōnstrum orītur. Namque inter manūs ōraque maestōrum parentum ecce levis apex summō dē vertice Iūlī vīsus est fundere lūmen. Tāctū innoxia flamma lambit mollīs comās et circum tempora pascitur. Nōs pavidī trepidāre metū crīnemque flagrantem excutere et sānctōs ignēs restinguere fontibus. At pater Anchīsēs oculōs ad sīdera laetus extulit et caelō palmās cum vōce tetendit:

'Iuppiter omnipotēns, sī flecteris precibus ūllīs, aspice nōs! Hoc tantum: sī pietāte merēmur, dā deinde augurium, pater, atque haec ōmina firmā!'

Vix ea fātus erat senior, subitōque fragōre intonuit **laevum**, et dē caelō stēlla per umbrās lāpsa et facem dūcēns multā cum lūce cucurrit. Illam super summa

culmina tēctī lābentem clāramque cernimus sē in Īdaeā silvā condere, signan-
temque viam. Tum longō līmite sulcus dat lūcem. Lātē circum loca sulphure
fūmant.

Hīc vērō victus genitor meus sē tollit ad aurās adfāturque deōs et sānctum
sīdus adōrat:

'Iam iam nūlla mora est. Sequor et quā dūcitis adsum, dī patriī. Servāte
domum! Servāte nepōtem! Vestrum hoc augurium, vestrōque in nūmine Trōia
est. Cēdō equidem, nāte, nec tibi comes īre recūsō.'

Dīxerat ille, et iam per moenia clārior ignis audītur, propiusque aestūs incendia
volvunt.

'Ergō age, cāre pater, cervīcī nostrae tē impōne! Ipse subībō umerīs nec labor
iste mē gravābit. Quōcumque rēs cadent, ūnum et commūne perīculum, ūna
salūs nōbīs ambōbus erit. Mihi parvus Iūlus sit comes, et longē servet mea
vestīgia coniūnx.

Vōs, famulī, animīs vestrīs advertite quae dīcam! Est tumulus templumque
vetustum dēsertum Cereris ex urbe. Iuxtāque antīqua cupressus multōs per annōs
servāta est rēligiōne patrum. Hanc ex dīversīs sēdem in ūnam veniēmus. Tū,
genitor, cape sacra manū patriōsque penātīs. Mē, bellō ē tantō dīgressum et
caede recentī, attrectāre est nefās, dōnec mē flūmine **vīvō** abluerō.'

Haec fātus super lātōs umerōs subiectaque colla īnsternor pellem leōnis
fulvum, succēdōque **onerī**. Dextrae manuī sē parvus Iūlus implicāvit sequiturque
patrem nōn passibus aequīs. Pōne venit coniūnx."

Notes

laevum – *on the left*
vīvō – *flowing*
onerī – referring to Anchises

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

abluō, -ere, -luī, -lūtus   *to purify*
advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus   *to turn toward*
apex, apicis (m.)   *point*
attrectō (1)   *to touch, handle*
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus   *to yield*
cupressus, -ī (f.)   *cypress*
dīgredior, -ī, -gressus sum   *to depart*
firmō (1)   *to confirm*
fōns, fontis (m.)   *spring; water; source*
fūmō (1)   *to smoke*
gravō (1)   *to burden*
Īdaeus, -a, -um   *of Mt. Ida*
innoxius, -a, -um   *harmless*
īnsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātus   *to spread*

38

Meter II: elision and synizesis

leō, leōnis (m.)   *lion*
līmes, līmitis (m.)   *path*
mereor, -ērī, meritus sum   *to earn*
passus, -ūs   *pace*
pellis, pellis (f.)   *hide, skin*
prex, precis (f.)   *prayer*
quōcumque   *wherever*
restinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus   *to extinguish*
stēlla, -ae   *star*
subitus, -a, -um   *sudden*
sulphur, sulphuris (nt.)   *sulfur*
tāctus, -ūs   *touch*
trepidō (1)   *to tremble*
tumulus, -ī   *mound*
vestīgium, -ī   *footstep, track*
vetustus, -a, -um   *ancient*

UNIT 39
Archaic Latin

Background

Languages are always changing. Just as the English spoken nowadays is far removed from that spoken by Shakespeare and even further removed from that spoken by Chaucer, Latin too was not a stable entity throughout the many centuries it was spoken. Both this and the following unit try to give a notion of the different stages that preceded and followed the Classical Latin introduced in this book and in *IBL*.

Archaic Latin

Archaic Latin, also termed Old Latin, is the name given to the stage of Latin represented in the earliest known inscriptions down to the middle of the second century BCE. Common authors towards the end of this period include Livius Andronicus, Plautus, and Terence. Differences between this stage of Latin and Classical Latin cut across spelling, verbs, and nouns. This chapter will focus on differences from the last two, though differences in spelling will be noticed in examples illustrating the other two categories. This chapter is by no means exhaustive but provides only a few points to illustrate the differences between Archaic and Classical Latin. As is the usual practice in the study of inscriptions, forms which occur only in inscriptions are capitalized.

Verbs

S-futures and s-subjunctives

Several verbs exhibit a unique stem with an **-s-** suffix, which expressed the future with one set of endings but a subjunctive with another.

- Note that the *-s-* combines with *-g-* and *-c-* as *-x-*

Verb	s-future	s-subjunctive
agere *to do*	**axō** *I will do*	**axim** *I would do*
capere *to take*	**capsō** *I will take*	**capsim** *I would take*
facere *to do*	**faxō** *I will do*	**faxim** *I would do*
prohibēre *to prevent*	**prohibessō** *I will prevent*	**prohibessim** *I would . . .*

- A relic survives in the Classical Latin expression **haud ausim** *I would hardly dare*, from **augēre** *to dare*

Thematic aorist subjunctives

Some verbs exhibit what looks like a present subjunctive built to a past form, termed an aorist, which no longer survives.

Verb	Thematic aorist subjunctive
afferre *to bring*	**attulās** *you might bring*
attingere *to touch*	**attigās** *you might touch*
ēvenīre *to happen*	**ēvenat** *it might happen*

3rd sg. perfect and subjunctive in *-d*

A *-d* occurs in place of Classical Latin *-t* in some perfect forms. Note the vowel before this *-d*

Archaic Latin	Classical Latin
FECED	**fēcit**
SIED	**sit**

Passive infinitive

An older present passive infinitive of 3rd conjugation verbs is attested in **-ier**

Archaic Latin	Classical Latin
FIGIER *to be fixed*	**fīgī**
GNOSCIER *to be learned*	**nōscī**

Nouns

Ablative singulars in -d

This older ablative form is attested for all five declensions

Archaic Latin		Classical Latin
SENTENTIAD	*opinion*	**sententiā**
FILEOD	*son*	**fīliō**
LEGED	*law*	**lēge**
MAGISTRATUD	*magistrate*	**magistrātū**
DIED	*day*	**diē**

1ˢᵗ declension genitive singular in -ās

Archaic Latin		Classical Latin
viās	*of the road*	**viae**
terrās	*of the land*	**terrae**

● A relic of this survives in Classical Latin **paterfamiliās** *master of the house*

2ⁿᵈ declension genitive singular in -o(s)io

Archaic Latin		Classical Latin
POPLIOSIO	*of Publius*	**Publiī**
VALESIOSIO	*of Valerius*	**Valeriī**
TITOIO	*of Titus*	**Titī**

4ᵗʰ declension genitive singular in -uos

Archaic Latin		Classical Latin
SENATUOS	*of the senate*	**senātūs**

Exercise 1

Rewrite the inscription in this and the following exercises in Classical Latin.
Use the translation to help determine the grammatical role of the various words
and the shape of the words so as to know what to look up in the Latin to English
dictionary at the back of the book.

From a tombstone in the late second century BCE:

FVIT ATISTIA VXOR MIHEI
FEMINA OPITVMA VEIXSIT
QVOIVS CORPORIS RELIQVIAE
QVOD SVPERANT SVNT
IN HOC PANARIO
*Atistia was my wife. She lived a very good woman. Of whose body the
remains that are left are in this breadbasket.*

Exercise 2

What appears to be grammatically incorrect in the previous inscription?

Exercise 3

A stone inscription, called the *Lapis Satricanus*, from aound 500 BCE:

STETERAI POPLIOSIO VALESIOSIO SUODALES MAMARTEI
The companions of Publius Valerius have erected (this) to Mars.

Exercise 4

Part of a bronze tablet, the *Senātūs Cōnsultum dē Bacchānālibus*, from 186 BCE:

ITA SENATVS AEQVOM
CENSVIT, VTEIQUE EAM FIGIER IOVBEATIS UVBEI
FACILVMED GNOSCIER POTISIT
*And the Senate thought it proper that you order it be attached where it
can most easily become known*

Exercise 5

An inscription from a bowl, the *Garigliano Bowl*, from the first half of the fifth
century BCE:

ESOM KOM MEOIS SOKIOIS TRIBOS AUDEOM DUOM NEI
PARI MED
*I am with my three companions (the possession) of the two Audii. Do not
take possession of me!*

Exercise 6

An inscription from a bowl, the *Duenos inscription*, from around 580–570 BCE. To make this a little more challenging, the word boundaries are left out, as on the original.

IOVESATDEIVOSQOIMEDMITAT
(He) who sends me swears to the gods

Reading: Aeneas loses his wife

"Ferimur per opāca loca, et mē, quem dūdum nōn ūlla iniecta tēla movēbant neque glomerātī Grāiī adversō ex agmine, nunc omnēs aurae terrent. Omnis sonus excitat mē suspēnsum et pariter comitīque onerīque timentem.

Iamque propinquābam portīs omnemque vidēbar viam ēvāsisse, subitō cum vīsus est crēber sonitus pedum ad aurīs adesse. Genitor per umbram prōspiciēns exclāmat:

'Nāte, fuge, nāte! Propinquant. Ardentīs clipeōs atque aera micantia cernō.'

Hīc nesciō quod male nūmen amīcum mihi trepidō cōnfūsam mentem ēripuit. Namque dum excēdō nōtā regiōne viārum et āviam cursū sequor, heu fātōne miserō ērepta coniūnx Creūsa substitit. Errāvitne ab aliā viā seu lassa resēdit? Incertum est. Nec illa post reddita est oculīs meīs. Nec prius āmissam respexī corpusve reflexī quam tumulum antīquae Cereris sēdemque sacrātam vēnimus. Hīc dēmum collēctīs omnibus ūna dēfuit. Comitēs nātumque virumque fefellit.

Quem hominumque deōrumque nōn incūsāvī āmēns? Aut quid crūdēlius in ēversā urbe vīdī? Ascanium Anchīsēnque patrem Teucrōsque penātīs commendō sociīs. Curvā in valle recondō. Ipse urbem repetō et cingor fulgentibus armīs. Stat mihi cāsūs omnīs renovāre omnemque per Trōiam revertī et rūrsus caput perīculīs obiectāre.

Principiō mūrōs obscūraque līmina portae, quā gressum extuleram, repetō. Vestīgia retrō observāta sequor per noctem et lūmine lūstrō. Horror ubīque animō est, simul ipsa silentia terrent. Inde domum, sī forte pedem, sī forte mea coniūnx tulisset, mē referō. Inruerant Danaī et tēctum omne tenēbant. Īlicet ignis edāx summa ad fastīgia ventō volvitur. Exsuperant flammae, furit aestus ad aurās."

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

āvius, -a, -um   *pathless*
cōnfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus   *to confuse*
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī   *to be missing*
dūdum   *a little while ago*
edāx, edācis   *consuming*
exsuperō (1)   *to overpower*
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī   *to shine*
lassus, -a, -um   *tired*
obiectō (1)   *to expose to*
observō (1)   *to observe*
opācus, -a, -um   *dark*
principiō   *at first*
propinquō (1) [+ dat.]   *to approach*
reflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexus   *to turn back*
revertor, -ī, -versus sum   *to return*

UNIT 40
Late Latin

Background

Classical Latin is divided into the Golden Age and the Silver Age. The former ended with the death of the poet Ovid in 17/18 CE and the latter with the death of the emperor Marcus Aurelius in 180 CE. The ensuing period is termed Late Latin and lasted until Latin developed into the various Romance languages. Major writers of the Late Latin period include Saints Jerome and Augustine.

As in the previous unit, only a sampling of some of the changes, primarily morphological, are highlighted.

Verbs

Loss of deponent verbs

Many verbs lose their deponent inflection in favor of active forms

Classical Latin		Late Latin
loquī	*to speak*	**loquere**
cōnārī	*to try*	**cōnāre**
mīrārī	*to admire*	**mīrāre**

Past active participle

Present active participles are sometimes used as past active participles.

- Recall that Classical Latin had no past active participles outside of deponent verbs.

	Classical Latin	Late Latin
proficīscēns	*setting out*	*setting out ~ having set out*

New periphrastic constructions

I Perfect passive

The perfect passive system replaces the forms of **sum**, **esse** with those from its 3rd principal part, **fuī**

Classical Latin	*Late Latin*
factum est *it was made*	**factum fuit**
factum erat *it had been made*	**factum fuerat**
factum erit *it will have been made*	**factum fuerit**
factum esse *to have been made*	**factum fuisse**

This change is tied to the general loss of special passive endings. The perfect passive forms of Classical Latin became the present passive of Late Latin.

Classical Latin	*Late Latin*
clauditur *it is closed*	**clausum est** *it is closed*
clausum est *it has been closed*	

II Imperfect active

The imperfect competes with the following collocation:

present participle + imperfect of **esse**

Classical Latin	*Late Latin*
cupiēbat *s/he was desiring*	**cupiēns erat**
circumcingēbant *they were surrounding*	**circumcingentēs erant**

III Future active

The future is expressed via:

infinitive + present of **habēre**

Classical Latin	*Late Latin*
dīcet *s/he will say*	**dīcere habet**
cognōscētis *you will learn*	**cognōscere habētis**

- In some areas of the Roman world, other verbs were used in place of **habēre**, such as **dēbēre** in Sardinia and **velle** in Romania.

Nouns and pronouns

Mix of 3ʳᵈ declension ablative i-stem forms

Classical Latin	Late Latin
vetere *old*	**vetere ~ veterī**
conclāvī *conclave*	**conclāve ~ conclāvī**
priōre *prior*	**priōre ~ priōrī**

*Loss of neuter pronominal forms in **-ud***

Classical Latin	Late Latin
illud *that*	**illum**
aliud *other*	**alium**

Loss of independent ablative

The independent ablative was lost in favor of prepositions

Classical Latin	Late Latin
hāc diē *on this day*	**in hāc diē**
prece victus *conquered by prayer*	**ā prece victus**

Syntax

There were multiple syntactic changes in the expression of specific types of subordinate clauses. Only a very small sampling is offered here.

Indirect statement

The accusative + infinitive construction of Classical Latin is replaced by one with a subordinating conjunction such as **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam** and **ut** followed by either indicative or subjunctive

Classical Latin

Ignōrās benīgnitātem Deī ad paenitentiam tē addūcere?
Do you not know that the kindness of God leads you to repentance?

Late Latin

Ignōrās *quoniam* benīgnitās Deī ad paenitentiam tē *addūcit*?

Result clauses

The indicative is used in place of the subjunctive

> *Classical Latin*
>
> **Tantam altitūdinem ascendī ut sīcut ārea *vidērētur* esse terra sub mē**
> *I climbed so great a height that the earth below me seemed to be like a
>   threshing floor.*

> *Late Latin*
>
> **Tantam altitūdinem ascendī ut sīcut ārea *vidēbātur* esse terra sub mē**

Pronouns

The use of demonstratives increases. This is a step toward the development
of the definite articles seen in French *le*, *la*, *les*, Italian *il*, *la*, *i*, *le* and Spanish
el, *la*, *los*, *las*.

Exercise 1

Translate the following passage from Egeria, a nun from southern France who
made a pilgrimage to the Holy Land around 381–384. This passage comes from
a later copy of the original and dates to sometime between 384 and 540.

> Cum autem māne factum fuerit, prōcēdit omnis populus in ecclēsiā māiōre,
> id est ad martyrium, aguntur etiam omnia, quae cōnsuētūdināria sunt agī;
> praedicant presbyterī, postmodum episcopus, aguntur omnia lēgitima, id
> est, offertur iuxtā cōnsuētūdinem, quā dominicā diē cōnsuēvit fierī; sed
> eādem adcelerātur missa in martyrium, ut ante horā tertiā fīat.

Exercise 2

Answer the following questions which deal with the passage in Exercise 1.

1 Is the subjunctive used where expected?
2 Which word appears to have switched gender from its Classical Latin gender?
3 Which preposition takes a case different from the Classical Latin norm?
4 Are there traces of the Classical Latin passive system?

Exercise 3

Translate this further excerpt from Egeria's work:

Et at ubi diāconus perdīxerit omnia, quae dīcere habet, dīcet ōrātiōnem prīmum episcopus et ōrat prō omnibus; et sīc ōrant omnēs, tam fidēlēs quam et cathēcūminī simul. Item mittet vōcem diāconus, ut ūnusquisque, quōmodo stat, cathēcūminus inclīnet caput; et sīc dīcet episcopus stāns benedictiōnem super cathēcūminōs. Item fit ōrātiō et dēnuō mittet diāconus vōcem et commonet, ut ūnusquisque stāns fidēlium inclīnent capita sua; item benedīcet fidēlēs episcopus et sīc fit missa Anastasī. Et incipient episcopō ad manum accēdere singulī.

Exercise 4

Answer the following questions related to the passage in Exercise 3.

1 Is the subjunctive used where expected?
2 Is there an instance where a verb does not agree with its subject grammatically but does in sense?
3 There is only one future in this passage. What is it?
4 Which verbs appear to have changed conjugations?

Exercise 5

Translate this fragment of a larger poem by St. Columba, 521–597. The different parts of the poem begin with each successive letter of the alphabet. This is the excerpt for Q.

Quis ad condictum Dominī
montem ascendit Sinai?
Quis audīvit tonitrua
ultrā modum sonantia?
Quis clangōrem perstrepere
ēnormitātis buccinae?
Quis quoque vīdit fulgura
in gȳrō coruscantia?
Quis lampadēs et iacula
saxaque collīdentia
praeter Isrāhēlīticī
Mōȳsen iūdicem populī?

Reading: Creusa visits Aeneas

"Prōcēdō et Priamī sēdēs arcemque revīsō. Iam in porticibus vacuīs, asȳlō Iūnōnis, Phoenīx et dīrus Ulixēs, custōdēs lēctī, praedam adservābant. Hīc undique Trōia gaza est, quae incēnsīs ex adytīs ērepta est. Hīc mēnsa deōrum crātērēsque aurō solidī, captīvaque vestis congeritur. Puerī et pavidae mātrēs longō ōrdine stant circum.

Ausus sum quīn etiam vōcēs iactāre per umbram. Viās clāmōre implēvī. Maestus Creūsam nēquīquam ingemināns iterumque iterumque vocāvī. Quaerentī et tectīs urbis sine fīne ruentī, īnfēlīx simulācrum atque umbra ipsīus Creūsae vīsa est mihi. Ante meōs oculōs imāgō vīsa est māior nōtā. Obstipuī. Steterunt comae et vōx in faucibus haesit.

Tum illa sīc adfārī et cūrās meās hīs dictīs dēmere:

'Quid tantum tē īnsānō dolōrī indulgēre iuvat? Ō dulcis coniūnx. Nōn haec sine nūmine dīvōrum ēveniunt. Nec tē hinc comitem Creūsam asportāre fās est. Nec ille rēgnātor Olympī superī sinit.

Longa tibi exsilia et vastum aequor arandum est. Terram Hesperiam veniēs, ubi Lȳdius Thybris inter arva opīma fluit, lēnī agmine. Illīc sunt rēs laetae rēgnumque et rēgia coniūnx parta tibi. Lacrimās dīlēctae Creūsae pelle! Nōn ego Myrmidonum sēdēs Dolopumve superbās aspiciam aut Grāiīs mātribus servītum ībō – ego Dardanis et dīvae Veneris nurus. Sed mē magna deōrum genetrīx hīs in ōrīs dētinet. Iamque valē et servā amōrem nātī commūnis!'

Haec ubi dicta dedit, mē lacrimantem et multa volentem dīcere dēseruit. Illa tenuīsque in aurās recessit. Ter cōnātus sum ibi collō bracchia circumdare. Ter frūstrā comprehēnsa imāgō effūgit manūs, pār levibus ventīs volucrīque simillima somnō.

Sīc dēmum sociōs cōnsūmptā nocte revīsō. Atque hīc admīrāns ingentem numerum comitum novōrum adflūxisse inveniō. Mātrēs virōsque, collēctam exsiliō pūbem, miserābile vulgus inveniō. Undique **convēnēre** cum **animīs** opibusque. Parātī sunt pelagō dēdūcere in quāscumque terrās velim.

Iamque Lūcifer in iugīs Īdae summae surgēbat dūcēbatque diem. Danaī obsessa līmina portārum tenēbant, nec spēs opis ūlla dabātur. Cessī et sublātō genitōre montīs petīvī."

Notes

convēnēre – 3rd pl. perfect alternative for **convēnērunt**
animīs – *courage*

Vocabulary for Aeneid excerpt

adfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus   *to flow in*
admīror (1)   *to admire*
adservō (1)   *to guard*

arō (1)   *to plow*
asportō (1)   *to carry away*
asȳlum, -ī   *sanctuary*
bracchium, -ī   *arm*
captīvus, -a, -um   *seized*
comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus   *to grasp*
congerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestus   *to collect, accumulate*
cōnor (1)   *to try, attempt*
cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus   *to consume*
Dardanis, Dardanidis (f.)   *Trojan woman*
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus   *to launch*
dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptus   *to take away*
dētineō, -ēre, -tenuī, -tentus   *to detain*
ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus   *to occur, happen*
Īda, -ae   *Mt. Ida*
indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultus   *to indulge in*
iterum   *again*
lēnis, lēne   *slow*
Lūcifer, -ī   *morning star*
Lȳdius, -a, -um   *Lydian*
ops, opis (f.)   *wealth; power; help*
Phoenīx, Phoenīcis (m.)   *Phoenix*
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus   *to go forward*
serviō, -īre, servīvī, servītus [+ dat.]   *to serve*
tenuis, tenue   *fine, thin*
Thybris, Thybridis (m.)   *Tiber River*

KEY TO EXERCISES

Unit 1

1 1 And I hardly dare to say these things 2 Whose name do I not dare to say? 3 The next light rises, most pleasing by much 4 And a great shout was arising from both sides 5 But from its middle, a hill of sorts was rising 6 What do we promise to our troops? 7 And thus he says: "Aim for the stars, men" 8 One small box from the many follows me here 9 Moreover I had then followed that itself 10 The faces of the boys who feed on the royal food

2 1 The colonists of Rome admire the fierce sea. 2 Holding the offspring of cruel Paris, the fugitive had even dared to snatch the queen. 3 The haughty goddess did not trust the remaining Romans. 4 The rather distinguished man, wandering to Rome by means of a chariot, was following the fates. 5 On account of the destruction of the heavenly kingdom the people will not have rejoiced. 6 They sang about all the masses having risen from the sea. 7 The Roman queen promises to restore the kingdom. 8 How fierce is the pain which will rise because of injustices? 9 The people, whom the odious and fierce fates hear, suffer the cruelest misfortunes. 10 The dear goddess, whom I cherish, already promised to establish a city.

3 1 Asprum aequor mīrātur colōnus Rōmae. 2 Tenentēs prōgeniem saevī Paridis, profugī ausī erant rēgīnam etiam rapere. 3 Superbae deae nōn fīsae sunt reliquiīs Rōmānīs. 4 Fāta virī īnsigniōrēs sequēbantur currō Rōmam errāntēs. 5 Ob excidium caelestis rēgnī populī nōn gāvīsī erunt. 6 Cecinit omnēs mōlēs orītās ā marī. 7 Pollicentur rēgīnae Rōmānae rēgnum repōnere. 8 Quantī asperī dolōrēs orientur iniūriīs? 9 Populī, quōs invīsa atque immīta fāta audiunt, patiuntur saevissimōs cāsūs. 10 Cārae deae iam, quās foveō, pollicitae sunt urbem condere.

4 1 Quis Rōmae nātus est? 2 Sōl oriētur et gaudēbitis. 3 Currum Karthāgine ad Ītaliam secūta erat. 4 Errāns per dīvitia oppida, nihil passus est. 5 Passī excidium bellī, cīvēs deīs caelestibus fīsī sunt.

5 nāscor, -ī, nātus sum *to be born*

Reading:

I sing about weapons and a man. He was the first man, who as a fugitive came from the coasts of Troy to Italy and the Lavinian shores. Tossed much on both lands and the deep sea by the force of the upper ones [i.e. gods], he had suffered many things in war on account of cruel Juno, before he established the city Rome and installed the gods in Latium. The Latin race, Roman fathers, and the high walls of Rome were born from Troy.

Muse, recount to me the causes, by which the queen of gods forced a distinguished man to undergo so many misfortunes and to encounter so many tasks. By whom had she been offended? What was she angry at? How much anger is there to the heavenly spirits [i.e. gods]?

An ancient city was Carthage, which Tyrian colonists held. It was situated opposite Italy and the mouths of the Tiber. It was a wealthy city most fierce with respect to zeal of war. Juno is reported to have cherished this one (city) more than all lands, the Island of Samos being held after. Here were her weapons, here was her chariot. Then the goddess now cherishes it and extends the kingdom to be for all races, if the fates may allow (it).

But indeed she had heard about the offspring, which will come from Trojan blood and will overturn Carthaginian fortresses. From here she had heard about the people ruling far and wide, who, haughty in war, will come for the destruction of Carthage. In this way the Fates had rolled. Fearing it and mindful of the old war, which she had first waged on Troy for (her) dear Argos, Juno was enraged. Not yet even had the reasons of (her) anger and cruel sorrow fallen from her soul. The judgment of Paris remains stored deep in her mind as does the insult of (her) rejected shape and the odious race and the honors of snatched Ganymede. She was enraged by all these things. Because of these things, she kept the Trojans – the remains of the Greeks and fierce Achilles – tossed on the whole sea, away from Latium. They wandered for many years, driven by the fates around all seas. Of such great difficulty was the establishing (of) the Roman race.

Unit 2

1 1 But, if it is made slower than we want 2 But it is made most favorable by your wisdom 3 No mention was made about that law 4 And force was made against the walls from all sides 5 We see this being done daily 6 We see or hear something being done dreadfully 7 But nevertheless enough will be done by us and there will be no sparing of (our) labor 8 That which will certainly be made 9 These were done at the shallows of the passage and the marsh 10 But at one time bonds of money were being made

2 1 Aeolus was made the king of clouds and storms. 2 The ship of Ajax, which was thrown onto the deep sea, had been made by the command of the household gods. 3 Indeed these twice seven ships are made fast. 4 The offspring of Aeolus will be made king of dark caves. 5 There are very beautiful nymphs to the father

of Minerva, by whom the Sicilian land is being made. 6 Ships of the master were being made by the command of the king. 7 All hearts are made happy at the banquets of the divine ones. 8 The reins having been made, Aeolus will tame and regulate the winds.

3   1 Excidium Rōmae bellīs factum erat. 2 Luctāns nūbēs, Aeolus omnipotēns rēx fit. 3 Quandō cor eius forte fīet? 4 Ventīs ab Iove factīs Aeolus ūtitur. 5 Namque undae sonōrae obruentēsque ā parente aequorum fīēbant.

Reading:

Hardly out of the view of Sicilian land they, happy, were setting sail into the deep and were plowing the foams of salt with (their) bronze, when Juno, guarding the eternal wound under (her) chest [i.e. in her heart] asked herself these (things): "(Am) I conquered? From the beginning ought I stop? Am I not able to divert the king of the Trojans from Italy? Indeed I am forbidden by the fates. Was Minerva not able to burn up a fleet of Greeks? Was she not able to sink those very ones on the sea on account of the harm and rage(s) of Ajax (son of) Oileus alone? She herself hurled the swift fire of Jupiter from the clouds and scattered ships and she overturned the seas by means of winds. That one [i.e. Ajax], exhaling flames, (his) chest having been pierced, she snatched by a whirlpool and impaled (him) with a sharp rock. Yet I, who walk as the queen of the divine ones and sister and wife of Jupiter, together with (my) race wage war for so many years. Will anyone adore the divine power of Juno henceforth or will (any) humble (one) place honor on (my) altars?"

(Her) heart inflamed, the goddess, pondering such (things) with herself comes to Aeolia, the country of rain clouds, which is pregnant with raging south winds. Here in a vast cave, king Aeolus controls wrestling winds and roaring storms by (his) command and restrains (them) by chains and prison. They, angry, roar with a great rumble around the barriers of the mountain. In his lofty fortress Aeolus sits, holding (his) scepter, and he tames the spirits and regulates (their) angers. If he were not to do this, indeed the swift winds would carry the seas and lands and deep sky with them and they would sweep (them) through the skies. But Jupiter, almighty father, fearing this hid them in dark caves, and placed a mass and high mountains above. And he made Aeolus king, in order that he might know by a certain agreement both to control (them) and, commanded, to give lax reins. To him then suppliant Juno used these words:

"Aeolus, indeed the father of the divine ones and king of men gave to you to both calm and lift the waves by wind. A race, hostile to me, carrying conquered household gods and Troy, sail on the Tyrrhenian sea to Italy. Strike (you) force onto the winds and crush the ships! Or drive (them) diverse and scatter (their) bodies on the sea! I have twice seven nymphs with surpassing body, of whom the most beautiful in form, Deiopea, I will join (to you) by means of a stable marriage and I will call (her) your own. With you she will pass all years and she will make you a parent with beautiful offspring."

Aeolus said these (things) in reply: "Your task, o queen, is to ascertain what you desire. It is right for me to perform (your) commands. You win over for me whatever this (is) of a kingdom, you win over for me (this) scepter and Jupiter. You give me (the opportunity) to recline at the banquets of the divine ones of the clouds and you make me the master of storms."

Unit 3

1   1 vectus esse 2 ferīre 3 excussūrus esse 4 iacuisse 5 intentārī 6 vehī 7 ferīrī 8 intentāvisse 9 excussus esse

2   1 Shouts of sailors begin to pour out from the ships, splitting open. 2 Hector appears to have been twisted through the ether by the south wind and the east wind. 3 We hasten to split open the sides of the shields with rocks. 4 The towering gates are accustomed to be opened. 5 They wish to carry the old treasure from the sandbank to the home.

3   1 Voluī inimīcōs intentātōs esse. 2 Oculīs beātīs gaudēre fīdīs cum sociīs properat/mātūrat. 3 Solēbant frīgorem undārum sentīre. 4 Nauta appāret mortem vīdisse. 5 Mors appāret ā nautā vīsa esse.

Reading:
When these (things) had been said, the spear point having been turned he [i.e. Aeolus] struck the hollow mountain into its side. The winds, as a line of soldiers having been made, rush where the gate has been given and blow through the lands in a whirlwind. They pressed on the sea and together the east wind, the south wind, and the south-west wind, crowded with gusts, rush from the lowest seats across the whole sea. They turn vast waves to the shores. The shout of men and the rattling of ropes follow. Suddenly rain clouds tear away the sky and day from the eyes of the Trojans. Black night lies on the sea. The skies thundered and the ether flashes with frequent fires. All (things) threaten present death to men.

Immediately the limbs of Aeneas loosen from cold. Holding double palms to the stars, he groans and says such (things) by his voice:

"O they were three times and four times happy, to those whom it happened that (they) perished before the faces of (their) fathers under the high walls of Troy! O Diomedes, strongest of the Greek race! Why had I not been able to meet my death on Trojan fields and this my life pour out by your right hand, where cruel Hector lies by the arrow of Achilles, where huge Sarpedon now lies, where the river Simois rolls (over) so many shields of men and helmets and strong bodies, (all) snatched under waves?"

The rustling gust strikes the sail (which was) to the one hurling such things [i.e. Aeneas], and it lifts waves to the stars. The oars are being broken. Then

the prow turns away and [the prow] gives its side to the waves. A towering
mountain of water, all in a mass, follows. Some sailors hang on the highest
wave, to others a wave splitting open, opens the land. The surge rages with
sands. The south wind twists three ships, having been snatched away, into hiding
rocks (rocks the Italians call Arae, which are in the middle of waves and are
like an enormous back on the highest sea). Eurus forces three (ships) away from
the deep sea and into short [i.e. shallow water] and strikes them onto sandbanks
in shallows, miserable to see, and girds (them) by mounds of sand. Before his
very eyes a huge wave from a whirlpool strikes into one ship, which was carrying
the Lycians and faithful Orontes. The master, leaning forward, is cast off and
is rolled into (his) head. Yet driving around that ship three times a wave twists
in the same place, and a swift whirlpool swallows it in the sea. Scattered (men)
swimming appear in the vast gulf, weapons of men and planks and Trojan
treasure through the waves. Already the storm conquered the mighty ship of
Ilioneus, already (the ship) of strong Achates; the storm by which Abas is carried
and by which old Aletes (is carried). The joints of the sides having become
loose, every ship receives the hostile rain and they split open with fissures.

Unit 4

1   1 He said that Antiochus had found a bed in the temple 2 And indeed the
witness himself did not say, after the sign had been inspected, that we brought
forward a false thing 3 Because of courage he said that you victors live 4 I know
that bitter hatred surrounds 5 And indeed I remember that I had been nailed on
a high cross for more than an hour 6 Indeed I remember that you wrote to me
with almost the same words 7 Indeed I forget that Roscius and Cluvius are
first-rate men 8 All together they think it to be the greatest praise 9 The immortal
gods think it is owed to them 10 And they do not think it safe to touch yet

2   1 S/he said that Neptune had heard the ruin of the sea. 2 We remember all the
standing water pouring back into the halls. 3 S/he will announce to the brother
that (their) father is quickly leading the wheels back to the crowd. 4 By chance
s/he was saying that the crowd was gathering in the hall. 5 Cymothoe thought
that the sun was not led back by Neptune. 6 Raise up (your) trident, Neptune!
Do you not think that the peaceful horses are going to fall? 7 I hope that the
obscure crowd is guided by a torch. 8 S/he says that confidence often is silent but
deceit disturbs. 9 They heard then that the riot was thrust off by Neptune's trident.
10 S/he understands that (her/his) brother suppresses the swelling torches at home.

3   1 Arbitrātī sumus/cōgitāvimus/putāvimus currōs eum Karthāginem lātūrōs
esse. 2 Neptūnus spērat inimīcum suum Iovem nunc silēre. 3 Meministīne eum
saepe pietāte fātum esse. 4 Arbitrātur/cōgitat/putat saepe frīgorem ab Iove
reductum īrī. 5 Nēmō arbitrātur/cōgitat/putat fortēs mortem luctārī.

Reading:

Meanwhile Neptune heard the sea (with its) great rumble and the storm, (which had) been sent out, being mixed (together), and the standing waters pour back from the lowest depths. He was strongly disturbed. Looking out, he raised up (his) peaceful head out from the highest wave on the deep sea. He sees that Aeneas' fleet had been scattered on the whole sea and the Trojans suppressed by the waves and the ruin of the sky. And the deceit(s) and anger(s) of Juno did not hide (from) (her) brother. He calls the east wind and the west wind, then he says such (things):

"Did the so great confidence of your race hold you? Now you dare to mix the sky and land without my divine will and to lift so great masses, winds? Whom I . . . ! But it is better to calm the moved waves. Afterwards you will atone to me (your) faults by a punishment not similar [i.e. by a great punishment]. Hasten your flight and say these (things) to your king: the kingdom of the sea and the cruel trident are not his, but they were given to me by fate. He holds huge rocks, O east wind, your homes. Let Aeolus toss himself in the hall and let him rule in the closed prison of the winds."

In this way he speaks and calms the swelling seas rather quickly by his command and puts the gathered clouds to flight and leads the sun back. Cymothoe at the same time as Triton, striving, thrust the ships off the sharp rock. He [i.e. Neptune] lifts (his) trident and opens the vast sandbanks and regulates the sea and glides along the highest waves by (his) light wheels. And just as often, when a riot has risen in a great people and the obscure crowd rages in their minds and they throw torches and rocks, the frenzy furnishes weapons, then if by chance they have seen a man heavy with duty and merits, they are silent and stand by with raised up ears. He rules the minds by words and calms (their) chests. In this way all the noise of the sea fell, after the father, looking at the seas and carried into the open sky, guides (his) horses and, flying, gives the reins to the obedient chariot.

Unit 5

1   1 sequāris 2 experiar 3 pascātur 4 corrumpāmus 5 immineat 6 tābeātis 7 contendātis 8 potiantur 9 ēgrediantur 10 parem 11 torreās 12 fundant 13 cōnsistantur 14 iuvēs 15 petātur

2   1 sequerēris 2 experīrer 3 pascerētur 4 corrumperēmus 5 imminēret 6 tābērētis 7 contenderētis 8 potīrentur 9 ēgrederentur 10 parārem 11 torrērēs 12 funderent 13 cōnsisterentur 14 iuvārēs 15 peterētur

3   1 Cornua cervī dīvidam. 2 Fīnem dulcis frūgis/Cereris maerērēmus. 3 Nūlla ancora tābeātur. 4 Fōmes nostrōs oculōs intentāret. 5 Potiāmur rūpibus silvae.

Reading:

The tired followers of Aeneas hasten to seek the shores, which are closest in course. They are swept to the coasts of North Africa. There is a place in a long inlet. The island forms a harbor by means of a barrier of (its) sides, by which every wave is broken from the deep sea and splits itself into the bays. From this side and that vast cliffs and twin rocks threaten into the sky, under whose summit far and wide safe waters are silent. Then a background of waving forests from above and a black grove with bristling shade overhang. Under the opposite face there is a cave with hanging rocks. Within there are sweet waters and seats of living rock. It is the home of nymphs. Here no chain holds the tired ships, no anchor binds by a curved bit.

After the ships were gathered, Aeneas bears to here seven (ships) from the whole number, and the Trojans, having stepped off with a great love for the land, take possession of the desired sand. They place their limbs, soaking with salt, on the shore. And at first Achates struck a spark from flint and took up a fire from leaves and he gave dry fuel around and he snatched a flame in the chips of wood. Then the sailors, tired of things, procure grain spoiled by the waves and the tools of grain, and they prepare the recovered grains and roast by flames and break with stones.

Aeneas meanwhile climbs a rock and he seeks a whole view of the sea far and wide, if he may see Antheus who was tossed by a wind and the Trojan biremes or Capys or the weapons of Caicus in swift boats. He sees no ship in sight but he looks out at three stags wandering on the shore. An entire herd follows them from the back and the long line feeds through the valleys. He stopped here and snatched a bow by his hand and swift arrows, weapons which faithful Achates was carrying. He lays low at first the leaders themselves, carrying high heads with tree-like horns, then he confuses (them), driving the whole crowd by means of weapons into leafy groves. And he does not stop before he, the victor, pours seven huge bodies on the ground and equals the number with the ships. From here he seeks the harbor and distributes (them) among all (his) comrades. He divides then the wines, which good Acestes had loaded with jars on the Sicilian shore and had given (them) as a hero to the departing Trojans. Aeneas calms the mourning hearts with these words:

"O comrades, we are not indeed ignorant of the bad things from before, O we who have suffered rather harsh things. God will also give an end to them. You have approached the rage of Scylla and the resounding rocks within. You have experienced the rocks of Cyclops. Recall your spirits and send your sad fear (away)! Perhaps it will help once we remember these (things). Through varied misfortunes, through so many crises of things we extend to Latium, where the fates show quiet homes. In that place it is right that the kingdom of Troy rise again. Endure and save yourselves for the things to follow!"

Unit 6

1 1 The conversation having been heard, might fortune be upon the Achaeans.
2 Antenor, trembling, may not want to promise Lycus venison in the feast.
3 May the same ones go to a death from where they might not be able to rest.
4 Certainly Cloanthus may want to believe the very sad name of Teucer. 5 We
may carry peace with the loot, which we tore away from the table of Amycus.

2 1 Sermōnibus exaudītīs essent Achīvīs fortūnae. 2 Antēnor tremēns ferīnās
in dapibus Lycō pollicērī nōlit. 3 Eat īdem ad fūnera unde nōn quiēscere posset.
4 Certē velit Cloanthus nōminibus trīstissimīs Teucrī crēdere. 5 Feram pācēs
cum praedīs, quās dē mēnsīs Amycī dīripuī.

3 1 Neptūnō in cordī spēs sit. 2 Sociī praecipuē omnipotentia cornua cervī
nūdātī mālint. 3 Iuppiter crūdēlis nōlit vinculīs ventōs prōruptōs fīgere. 4 Nauta
possit ancorā suōrum inimīcōrum potīrī. 5 Quō irēmus?

Reading:
Aeneas says such (things) with his voice and feigns hope with his face (though)
sick with huge cares. He presses (his) pain deep in his heart. The comrades
ready themselves for the booty and for the feasts to be. They tear off the hides
from the ribs and the flesh is exposed. Some cut (them) into trembling pieces
and fasten (them) to spits. Others place bronze vessels on the shore and furnish
the flames. Then (their) strength returns because of the food. Laid through the
grass they are filled with old wine and fat venison. After the hunger was removed
by the banquets and the tables removed, they, with long conversation, doubtful
between hope and fear, seek again (their) lost comrades. They seek whether
they believe that they live or that they suffered death and now, (when) called,
do not hear. Especially pious Aeneas now moans within himself the misfortune
of keen Orontes, now of Amycus, and the cruel fates of Lycus and strong Gyas
and strong Cloanthus.
  And already it was the end, when Jupiter, seeing from the highest sky a
canvassed sea and lying lands and seas and widespread peoples, thus from the
summit of heaven stopped and fastened (his) eyes on the kingdoms of Libya.
Venus, rather sad, tossing such cares in her heart and filled with tears in her
shining eyes, speaks to him:
  "O you, who rule the affairs of men and of gods with (your) eternal commands
and who frighten by (your) thunderbolt, what so great (a thing) was my Aeneas
able to commit against you? What have the Trojans been able to commit, for
whom, having endured so many deaths, the whole world is closed off on account
of Italy? Certainly you have promised once that from here the Romans will be
(born), with years rolling by, (and) from here (they will be) rulers from the
restored blood of Teucer, who might hold the sea and all lands by (their) power.
What opinion, father, turned you? Indeed I found consolation by it (for) the fall

of Troy and the sad ruins, compensating the opposing fates by (these) fates. Now the same luck follows men, who have undergone so many misfortunes. What end do you give, great god, of (these) labors?"

Antenor, having slipped out of the middle of the Greeks, was about to penetrate Illyrian bays, the innermost kingdoms of the Illyrians, and safe, to conquer the source of the Timavus River, from where the sea bursting forth goes through nine mouths with a vast rumble of the mountain and presses fields with its roaring sea. Here nevertheless that one [i.e. Antenor] placed the city of Padua and the homes of the Trojans and gave a name to (this) race and fastened Trojan weapons. Now, composed of peaceful peace, he rests. We, your offspring, for whom you assent a fortress of the sky, are betrayed, ships having been lost, on account of the anger of one single one [i.e. of Juno]. This is unspeakable! We are separated for a long time from the Italian coasts. This is the honor of duty? In this way you restore us into (your) powers?"

Unit 7

1   1 I will dig out your eyes, so you may not be able to observe me 2 He was coming to dinner in order to satiate (his) longings of nature 3 But I pray that I may more safely be wretched 4 He desired that he might be lifted into the chariot of the father 5 The horsemen came from Quintus Atrius to Caesar in order to announce 6 The people from Clusium sent delegates to Rome in order to seek help from the senate 7 Dionysius, in order not to commit (his) neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave (him) 8 Mirrors were invented so that man might know himself (The verb of this sentence is in the pluperfect subjunctive) 9 He plants trees, which may benefit another generation 10 Hens keep (their) chickens warm with (their) feathers so that they may not be hurt by the cold

2   1 Famous Ascanius pleases the priest of Mars so that he may not touch the sword. 2 By the customs of Lavinium the spoils are not limited so that Venus may smile at us. 3 Caesar went to Mycenae so that he might conquer the wicked toga-wearing ones. 4 We perceived that the son of frightening Mars went to Argos so that he might beat the terrible ones. 5 The master crossed the ocean so that he might not be perceived by the wicked ones with swords. 6 I cross to Mycenae so that they may stand. 7 We carry spoils to the ferocious master so that he may not complete the plan of slavery. 8 A prayer had been added so that slavery might not stand. 9 Nurses slip against the laws into Phthia so that they may calm (their) daughters and sons. 10 Romulus was at Phthia for thirty summers so that he might become master of the Orient. 11 We will fortify Alba Longa so that the ferocious she-wolves may not gnaw it. 12 The priests completed the prayers so that they may calm Mars.

3   1 Clārus Ascanius sacerdōtibus Martis placet nē ferra lībet. 2 Mōre Lavīniī spolium nōn terminātur ut Cytherēa mihi subrīdeat. 3 Mycēnās Caesar īvit ut

impium togātum vincīret. 4 Crēvī fīliōs Mārtis horridī Argōs īvisse ut dīrum contunderent. 5 Dominī Ōceanum trānsīvērunt nē ab impiō cum ferrō cernerentur. 6 Mycēnās trānsferimus quae stet. 7 Ferōcibus dominīs spolia ferō nē consilia servitiōrum expleant. 8 Vōta addita erant nē servitia stārent. 9 Nūtrīx contrā iūs in Phthīam lābitur ut nātam fīliumque serēnet. 10 no change 11 Albam Longam mūniam nē lupa ferōx eam remordeat. 12 Sacerdōs explēvit vōtum quī Mārtem serēnāret.

4 1 Īvērunt/Iērunt ut gladiīs (ēnsibus) centum inimīcōs obruerent. 2 Urbem mūnīmus nē dēleātur. 3 Quid facis ut cordibus cīvium parcās? 4 Cīvēs immōtī stant ut inimīcōs terreant. 5 Mēnsibus aestātis ōrāvimus ut Iuppiter tempestātēs omnēs subigeret.

Reading:
Jupiter, smiling to her [i.e. Venus], father of men and of gods, calms (her) by his face by which he (calms) heaven and storms. He touched the lips of his daughter, then says such (things):

"Spare (your) fear, Cytherea, the unmoved fates of your (children) remain. You will perceive the city and promised walls of Lavinium and you will carry brave Aeneas high to the stars of heaven. And the opinion does not turn me.

I will indeed say, since this concern gnaws you. Unrolling further, I will move the secrets of the fates. This your son will wage a huge battle in Italy and he will beat ferocious peoples and he will place (his) customs and walls for (his) people, until the third summer will have seen him ruling in Latium and three winters each will have passed, since Rutulians had been subdued. But the boy Ascanius, to whom now the first name Iulus is added, will complete thirty great years in power, with the months rolling (by). Ilus was his first name, while the Trojan state stood in control. He will transfer this kingdom from the seat of Lavinium and he will fortify Alba Longa with great force. Here now for three times one hundred whole years it will be ruled under the race of Hector, until a queen, priestess pregnant by Mars, will give twin offspring by birth. From there Romulus, happy by the tawny skin of (his) she-wolf nurse, will take up the race and will establish Martian walls and will name (the people) Romans after his own name.

To them I place neither limits of things nor times. I have given command without end. Even fierce Juno, who now tires sea, lands, and heaven with fear, will answer with plans for the better, and with me, she will cherish the Romans, masters of things and the toga-wearing people. Thus it has pleased. An age will come, five years slipping (by), when the house of Assaracus will press Phthia and famous Mycenae in slavery and will rule over conquered Argos. A Trojan Caesar will be born from that beautiful origin, whose command will be limited by the Ocean and whose fame (will be limited by) the stars. He will be Iulius, his name having been derived from great Iulus. You, carefree, will accept him in heaven one day, loaded by the spoils of the Orient. This one will also be

invoked by prayers. Then ferocious generations shall become mild, having forgotten wars. White Faith and Vesta and Romulus with (his) brother Remus will make laws. Terrible gates of war will be closed by iron and tight joints. Wicked Rage, chained by one hundred brazen knots behind (his) back, sitting within upon his cruel weapons, will roar, frightening(ly) with his bloody mouth."

Unit 8

1   1 We do now allow the Transalpine people to plant an olive and vine 2 Finally I achieved (that) he go away 3 You have forced me to withdraw 4 I nevertheless pray that they be content with our endless bad things 5 He orders that he foresee that the matter not be done openly 6 He warned that he either indulge more sparingly in (his) tender age or more cautiously 7 And then he warned him in private that he should cherish the friendship of the Roman people publicly rather than privately 8 He demanded that Priscus be made aware 9 They ask that no one be such that he dare speak more than those 10 They ask that he defend Mandubracius from the injury of Cassivellaunus

2   1 Harpalyce warns that we be not unaware. 2 Demand that the young ones begin to hollow the oars! 3 Dido encouraged that the young girls conceal (their) hair. 4 We beg that the huntress be swifter than the spotted lynx. 5 You certainly persuaded that they keep off the Spartan wild boars.

3   1 Precor/Ōrō nē mihi praevertī cōnstituās. 2 Monuit nē habitum Phoebī vidērēmus. 3 Ōrāvērunt/Rogāvērunt/Petīvērunt ut nōbīs pharetrās succingerēmus. 4 Cōnstituimus vēnātrīcem imperāre ut ferae nōs comitent. 5 Phoebus imperat ut habilēs pharetrae diffundantur (disiciantur).

Reading:
He [i.e. Jupiter] says these (things) and he sends down (his) son, born of Maia, in order that the new lands and fortresses of Carthage may extend in hospitality to the Trojans and in order that Dido, unaware of (their) destiny, might not keep them off from her borders. He flies through the great air with oars of wings and quickly stood by the shores of Libya. And now he does the commands, the Phoenicians setting aside (their) ferocious hearts, the god unrolling (it) [i.e. what was commanded of him]. Especially the queen receives a quiet spirit toward the Trojans and a favorable mind.

   Yet pious Aeneas, turning over most (things) in his head throughout the night, decided once nourishing light [i.e. dawn] is given, to go out and explore (these) new places and seek which shores he has approached by the wind and who, whether men or wild animals, may hold (these) lands, which are uncultivated. Then he will report to his comrades the discovered (things). He conceals (his) fleet in a hollow of groves under a hollowed cliff closed by trees and bristling

shadows around. He, accompanied by Achates, walks, waving two spear-shafts of broad iron in (his) hand.

On (his) way in the middle of the forest (his) mother bears herself, wearing the face and wardrobe of a young girl and the weapons of a young Spartan girl, or such as the Thracian Harpalyce (who) tires (her) horses and surpasses the Hebrus River in (her) flight. Indeed as a huntress she had hung (her) handy bow on (her) shoulders as is custom and had given her hair so that it might be scattered by the winds. She had an exposed knee and tunic(s), which was flowing (their) folds in knots. And she says first:

"Hey, young men, show, if by chance you have seen one of my sisters wandering, girded up with a quiver and the skin of a spotted lynx, or pressing by her shout the course of a foaming wild boar."

Thus (was) Venus. Thus the son of Venus in reply began:

"None of your sisters have been heard or seen by me. O how will I recall you? Indeed hardly do you have a mortal face, and (your) voice does not sound (like) a human. O, you are certainly a goddess. The sister of Apollo? One of the blood of nymphs? Lift our labor, whoever you are! Teach us under which sky and on which shores of the world we finally are tossed! We wander ignorant of men and places, led here by the wind and vast waves. Much sacrifice [i.e. a large sacrifice] will fall for you before (your) altars by our right (hand)."

Unit 9

1 1 excesserim 2 superātus, -a, -um sit 3 mercātī, -ae, -a sīmus 4 surrēxerītis 5 iugāverīmus 6 reclūserim 7 trāiēcerint 8 habuerit 9 dēvēnerīs

2 1 excessissem 2 superātus, -a, -um esset 3 mercātī, -ae, -a essēmus 4 surrēxissētis 5 iugāvissēmus 6 reclūsissem 7 trāiēcissent 8 habuisset 9 dēvēnissēs

3 1 Urbem dēlēvisset. 2 Urbs ab eō dēlēta esset. 3 Caecus gāvīsus sit. 4 Vēnātrīx Iovis īverit/ierit. 5 Somnus clangōre intentantī trāiectus sit.

Reading:
Then Venus (said): "I hardly indeed think myself worthy of such an honor. It is the custom for Carthaginian maidens to wear a quiver and to bind (their) calves high with purple hunting boots. You see Punic kingdoms, Carthaginian (men), and the city of Agenor. But the borders are Libyan, a race formidable in war. Dido, who fleeing (her) brother had left from her own city, rules the command. Long is the injustice, long details, but I will follow the chief points of the things.

Her husband was Sychaeus, the wealthiest in land of Phoenician men. He had been esteemed by the greatest love of (his) wife. To him (her) father had given Dido herself, a virgin, and had joined (them) by the first omens of marriage.

The brother of Dido, Pygmalion, who was rather enormous with respect to crime before all other (men), had the kingdoms of Tyre. A rage arose between Pygmalion and Sychaeus. That wicked one, blind by the love of gold and unconcerned of the love of (his) sister, secretly conquers careless Sychaeus, with a sword before the altars. For a long time he hid the deed and feigning many (things) he ridiculed the loving one [i.e. Dido], sick with vain hope. But the image of (her) unburied spouse itself came in sleep, lifting up (his) pale face in wonderful ways. He exposed the cruel altars and (his) chest pierced by iron, and he uncovered every blind crime of the house. Then he urges her to hasten (her) flight and to depart from the homeland and he reveals aid for (her) way [i.e. journey] – old treasures in the ground, unknown weight of silver and gold.

Disturbed by these things, Dido prepared (her) flight and (her) comrades. They meet, (those) who had either cruel hatred of the tyrant or sharp fear. They snatch the ships, which by chance were prepared, and they load (them) with gold. The riches of greedy Pygmalion are carried on the sea. The leader of (this) deed was a woman. They arrived at the places where now you perceive huge walls and the rising fortress of new Carthage. They bought the ground, Byrsa by name of the fact, that they received as much land as they were able to surround with the hide of a bull.

But how are you finally? Or from which shores have you come? Or where are you holding a journey to? [i.e. where are you heading for]"

Unit 10

1 1 egērēmus 2 sit 3 refulgeat 4 eant *or* īrent (depending on the intended aspect of the perfect verb of the main clause) 5 mōliāminī 6 caluisset 7 interfātus, -a essem *or* interfātus, -a, -um sim (depending on the intended aspect of the perfect verb of the main clause) 8 audīta essent 9 datum sit 10 spīrāvissent

2 1 We had driven the swans to the threshold, because we were not needing (their) smell. 2 The birds will announce a song, because there is not cloud. 3 Pluck the day, because the rosy sea is glistening. 4 The words of the annals have been heard (*or* were heard), because the divine enemies are going to Olympus. 5 By (your) feet you revisit famous Asia, because you are building a house. 6 Because the neck had been hot, I was asking in vain. 7 I was reproached, because I had interrupted the augury. 8 I will reply, because the words of the annals were heard. 9 You travel through Asia, because a divine wreath was given to you. 10 The birds were fragrant, because they had emitted a rosy smell.

3 1 Ōrābam/rogābam/petābam, cum nōn meminissem. 2 Properā/Mātūrā hūc, cum īre velīmus. 3 Nārrābit annālēs, cum cīvēs urbe potiantur. 4 Nōn questī/ questae erant, cum tempestās cycnōs nōn intentāvisset. 5 Cervōs ālēs sequuntur, cum immānia cornua illīs sint.

Reading:

Sighing he [i.e. Aeneas] said with such words to the inquiring woman, drawing (his) voice from deep within (his) chest:

"O goddess, if I were to proceed to say, retracing from the first origin, and (if) there were time for you to hear the stories of our labors, before I will have finished speaking, Vesper will calm the (whole) day, with Olympus having been closed. A storm drove us from ancient Troy – if the name of Troy came to your ears perchance – through diverse seas, carried by chance itself to (these) Libyan shores. I am pious Aeneas and I carry in (my) fleet with me the household gods, who were snatched away from the enemy. I am known above the skies on account of (my) fame. I seek Italy, (my) fatherland and race of the highest Jupiter. I embarked upon the Phyrgian sea with twice ten ships, (my) mother a goddess showing the way. I followed the given fates. Hardly seven (ships), shattered by the waves and by the east wind survive. I myself, unknown, in need, travel through the deserts of Libya, I have been pushed out of Europe and out of Asia."

And Venus did not endure the lamenting one and thus interrupted in the middle of (his) pain:

"Whoever you are, hardly, I believe, you are odious to the celestial ones. You, are approaching a Carthaginian city, you take your vital breaths. Proceed only and from here bear yourself to the thresholds of the queen! Indeed I announce to you your restored comrades and your fleet, brought back, which have been driven into a safe port by the turned north winds, unless in vain my parents have taught me augury. Look at twice six rejoicing swans, in a line, whom the bird of Jupiter was throwing into confusion, having slid from the sky, heaven having been open. Now in a long line they seem either to seize the land or now they seem to look down on the captured land. As the restored ones play with (their) rustling wings and in a flock they have surrounded the sky and have given songs, hardly otherwise your ships and the young of your (men) either hold a port or are entering the mouths (of a river) with a full sail. Proceed only and direct your step, where the path leads you."

She said this and turning away she glistened at her rosy neck, and (her) immortal hair emitted a divine smell from (her) head. To the lowest feet (her) dress flowed down, and she was evidently a true goddess from (her) gait. When he [i.e. Aeneas] recognized (his) mother, he followed her, fleeing, with such a word:

"Why do you mock (your) son so often, indeed you (are) cruel, with false images? Why is it not given that I join my right hand to (your) right (hand) and hear (your) true voice(s) and (for it) to reply?"

He reproaches (her) with such (words) and aims his step to the walls. But Venus enclosed Aeneas and Achates, walking, with dark mist, and poured around much clothing of a cloud, so that no one might perceive them or happen to construct a delay or ask the reasons of coming. She, happy and uplifted, departs for Paphos and revisits her homes, where she has a temple and one hundred altars hot with Sabaean incense and they are fragrant because of recent wreaths.

Unit 11

1 1 I do not know what I (may) write to you 2 I do not know in fact for
what sacred things that has been initiated and dedicated by you 3 Now I
know what love is 4 I asked whether they had arrived at Argigentum 5 S/he
asked whether the shield was intact 6 I ask from you why I might not defend
Gaius Cornelius 7 I will say why I have come 8 (those ones) uncertain how
far Volero would follow victory 9 I see that no one except for you doubts
whether the Parthians have crossed 10 He asks, whether he is a slave or free,
well-off or poor

2 1 Rogō quid Atrīdēs offerat. *I ask what the son of Atrides is offering.* 2 Rogō
quod decus mīrēris. *I ask which ornament you are admiring.* 3 Rogō num
fūcī īnstiterint. *I ask whether the drones worked hard.* 4 Rogō cuius pecus
aspectāverīmus. *I ask whose herd we looked at.* 5 Rogō quam ob rem mūrus
adflīgētur. *I ask why the city wall is being crushed.* 6 Rogō in quō praesēpī sit
mel. *I ask in which hive there is honey.* 7 Rogō quō pecus laetum ēdūcāmus. *I
ask where we are leading the happy herd.* 8 Rogō quālia praemia mīrābilia
senātus det? *I ask what kind of wonderful rewards the senate is giving.* 9 Rogō
utrum tēcta an māgālia dūxerint. *I ask whether they constructed houses or huts.*
10 Rogō quot opulentae columnae sint rēgiō tēctō? *I ask how many rich columns
the royal house has.*

3 1 Rogāveram quid Atrīdēs offerret. *I had asked what the son of Atrides was
offering.* 2 Rogāveram quod decus mīrārēris. *I had asked which ornament you
were admiring.* 3 Rogāveram num fūcī īnstitissent. *I had asked whether the
drones had worked hard.* 4 Rogāveram cuius pecus aspectāvissēmus. *I had asked
whose herd we had looked at.* 5 Rogāveram quam ob rem mūrus adflīgerētur. *I
had asked why the city wall was being crushed.* 6 Rogāveram in quō praesēpī
esset mel. *I had asked in which hive there was honey.* 7 Rogāveram quō pecus
laetum ēdūcerēmus. *I had asked where we were leading the happy herd.*
8 Rogāveram quālia praemia mīrābilia senātus daret? *I had asked what kind of
wonderful rewards the senate was giving.* 9 Rogāveram utrum tēcta an māgālia
dūxissent. *I had asked whether they had constructed houses or huts.* 10 Rogāveram
quot opulentae columnae essent rēgiō tēctō? *I had asked how many rich columns
the royal house had.*

4 1 Cōgitāvit quam ob rem (*or* quid *or* cūr) thymum ā magistrātū tangerētur
(attingerētur). 2 Sciō quem nautae opperiantur. 3 Cōgitō mē scīre quem nautae
opperitī sint. 4 Scīvī quid collī subvolvisset. 5 Scīvī quae dīxisset. 6 Scīvī quae
dīxerit.

Reading:

Meanwhile they (Aeneas and Achates) hastened along the way, where the path shows [i.e. leads]. And already they ascended a hill, which, imposing, overhangs the city and looks at the opposing fortresses from above. Aeneas admires the mass, once huts. He admires the gates and noise and pavement of roads. The Carthaginian (men), eager, work hard, some constructing walls and building a fortress and rolling rocks uphill by hands, some desiring a place for a home and enclosing (it) by means of a furrow. They write laws and (choose) magistrates and a sacred senate. Here some dig out harbors, here others place deep foundations for a theater, they cut out huge columns from cliffs, high ornaments for future backgrounds.

Such work keeps bees busy under the sun in a new summer through flowery countrysides, when some lead out adult offspring of the race or when others store liquid honey and stretch storerooms with sweet nectar, or receive the loads of other coming bees. Some, in a line, keep drones, an ignorant herd, from the hives. The work bustles and the fragrant honey smells of thyme.

"O fortunate ones, whose walls now rise!" Aeneas says (this) and looks at the points of the city. He, enclosed by a cloud – amazing to say – brings himself through the middle (of men), and mixes (himself) with men and is perceived by no one.

There was a sacred grove in the middle of the city, very fertile (with) shade, in which place at first, having been tossed by waves and a whirlpool, the Phoenicians dug out a sign, which the royal Juno had showed: the head of a fierce horse. Thus indeed Venus had said that (this) race would be illustrious in war and easy in living for centuries. Here Sidonian Dido was building a huge temple to Juno, rich with gifts and the divine power of the goddess. Bronze thresholds and bound beams of bronze rose up from steps, a hinge rustling for the bronze doors. In this sacred grove for the first time (this) new offered thing soothes (his) fear. Here Aeneas for the first time dares to hope for safety and he trusts better in (his) crushed matters. Indeed, waiting for the queen, he scans each thing under this huge temple. While he admires what fortunes the city has in order that it may make within itself a work of the hand of artists, he sees the Trojan battles in order – battles now (whose) fame has been spread throughout the entire world – the sons of Atrides and Priam, and Achilles, cruel to both [i.e. to the sons of Atrides and Priam].

Aeneas stops and crying says:

"Which place now, Achates, which kingdom among lands is not full of our labor? Behold Priam! Here also reward has its own praises. There are tears of matters, and mortal (things) touch the mind. Loosen fears! This fame will carry some safety for you."

Thus he speaks.

Unit 12

1 1 May the gods destroy him! 2 May I become royal hair! 3 May I desire to see your face 4 This city may stand very bright 5 May (my) brother live again and lead another fleet to Sicily! 6 May he have gone from here to hang 7 If only he had already come! 8 The gods might make (it) so that you may see me from the highest ship 9 If only the republic had stood and had not fallen upon greedy men! 10 I should not at all want students to be cut down

2 1 Bellātrīx flūmen gustāret. 2 Resupīnus prīnceps nūbēs ātrās vidēret. 3 Permisceās. 4 Utinam nē gemitus exanimus audītus esset! 5 Utinam nē flūmen ināne esset. 6 Īliādēs comās nōn exserant. 7 Utinam nē pulvis raptātus esset in tentōria! 8 Utinam nē īnfēlīcēs vendantur. 9 Quam ob rem (*or* quid *or* cūr) bellārent? 10 Cingulum sub comās suppliciter fīgās.

3 1 Bellātrīcēs flūmina gustārent. 2 Resupīnī prīncipēs nūbem ātram vidērent. 3 *no change* 4 Utinam nē gemitūs exanimī audītī essent! 5 Utinam nē flūmina inānia essent 6 Īlias comam nōn exserat. 7 Utinam nē pulverēs raptātī essent in tentōrium! 8 Utinam nē īnfēlīx vendātur. 9 Quam ob rem (*or* quid *or* cūr) bellāret? 10 Cingula sub comam suppliciter fīgās.

Reading:

Aeneas grazes (his) spirit on the empty picture, moaning many (things). He wets (his) face like a copious river. Indeed he saw how here the Greeks, battling around Pergama, had here fled, here Trojan youth pressed on, here plumed Achilles pressed the Phrygians with (his) chariot. And not far from here, crying, he recognizes the tents of snowy cloths of Rhesus, the (tents) which (were) betrayed during the first sleep (and which) bloody Diomedes laid waste with much slaughter, (he) who diverted (their) eager horses into the (Greek) camp before they had tasted the fodder of Troy and had drunk (from) the Xanthus.

In another part fleeing Troilus, an unhappy boy and unequal to Achilles, (who) having fought (him), is carried by horses, his weapons having been lost. Lying on his back he clings by an empty chariot, nevertheless holding the reins. His neck and hair are being dragged through the land, and the dust is marked by (his) turned spear.

Meanwhile the Trojan women, (their) hair disheveled, came to the temple of the non-favorable Minerva and they were humbly carrying a gown. They, sad, are beating themselves on their breasts. The goddess, turned away, was holding (her) eyes fixed to the ground.

Three times around the Trojan walls Achilles had dragged Hector and sold (his) breathless body for gold. Then truly he [i.e. Aeneas] gives a huge groan from (his) lowest heart, as he saw the spoils, the chariots and the very body itself of his friend and Priam holding out (his) unarmed hands to the hands (of Hector).

Indeed he recognized himself, mingled with the Achaean leaders, the Eastern battle lines and the weapons of black Memnon. Raging Penthesilea leads the battle lines of the Amazons with their moon-shaped light shields. She is eager in the middle of the soldiers, fastening a golden belt under an exposed breast. Warrior and virgin she dares to fight with men.

Unit 13

1 1 He went away so much from the insolence of glory that he pitied the fortune of Greece 2 So great is the force of honesty that we even esteem it also in an enemy 3 It went away by so much that they wrote two each 4 Suddenly such a storm arose that none of them was able to keep (their) course. 5 No one is so wild that he cannot become mild 6 The enemies ran forward suddenly and quickly that a space for throwing javelins against the enemies was not given 7 In which justice was cultivated among us so much that they were the patrons of the states. 8 Such is the spirit of old Antistus on the republic, that I do not doubt 9 So great was the speed of these horses that they made the course equal 10 Since there are so many with the result that prison cannot hold them

2 1 Catervam percutiēmus, ut chorī turbentur. 2 Dīāna in solium resēdit, ut lēgēs legere posset. 3 Laetitia (*or* Gaudium) chorōrum erat tanta (*or* tantum), ut Īliadēs stupērent. 4 Sīc speculor, ut Dīāna maerēns obstipēscat. 5 Cōram Neptūnō glomerant, ut eum laetitiam (*or* gaudium) ōrent. 6 Populāte cōpiam mīrandam, ut stupeant. 7 Superbia eius miserīs superēminēbat, ut nūlla laetitia (*or* nūllum gaudium) esset. 8 Utinam solium sīc āvehāmus, ut caterva gaudeat. 9 Estne tam (ita/adeō) iūstum, ut miserī ā rīpīs prohibeantur? 10 Utinam coniungāmus, ut inimīcī rīpam linquant.

3 1 percutimus – *no change* 2 resīdit – possit 3 est – stupeant 4 speculātus eram – obstipēsceret 5 glomerāverant – ōrārent 6 *no change possible* 7 superēminet – sit 8 *no change possible* 9 fuerat – prohibērentur 10 *no change possible*

Reading:
While these wonderful (things) are being seen by the Trojan Aeneas, while he is astonished and clings at one view [i.e. painting], the queen, Dido, most beautiful in form, walked to the temple, a large crowd of young men packing together. Such as Diana keeps her dancers busy on the banks of the Eurotas or through the mountain summits of Cynthus, whom from there a thousand mountain nymphs follow and are gathered. She [i.e. Diana] carries a quiver on (her) shoulder, and walking she towers over all goddesses. Joys seize the silent heart of Latona. Such was Dido. Happy she carried herself through the middle of the men, pressing hard the work and her future kingdom.

Then in the doorway of the goddess, in the middle dome of the temple, enclosed by weapons and resting high (off) the ground she sat down. She was giving laws and decrees to men, and making equal the labor of jobs to just parts or she was drawing (them) by lot, when suddenly Aeneas sees in a great crowd Antheus and Sergestus and strong Cloanthus and others of the Trojans, whom a dark whirlpool had scattered on the sea and had diverted deep with other shores. He stood agape, at the same time Achates, struck by both joy and fear (stood agape). Eager they were burning to join together (their) right (hands), but (this) unknown happening confuses (them). They hide and wrapped by a hollow cloud they watch what fortune the men have, on which shore they leave (their) fleet, and why they come. Chosen from all the ships indeed, (these men) came, beseeching grace and they were seeking the temple with a shout.

After they entered and the opportunity of speaking in her presence was given, Ilioneus, the greatest, thus began with a peaceful heart:

"O queen, to whom Jupiter has given to construct (this) new city and to restrain haughty peoples by (your) justice, we miserable Trojans, carried by the winds around all the seas beseech you. Keep unspeakable fires from our ships, spare a pious race, and look nearer upon our matters! We have not come to plunder the Libyan household gods with iron, or to overturn captured booties on the coasts. That force is not in (our) mind and the conquered do not have such haughtiness."

Unit 14

1 1 It happened that no one, (no) tribune of the people, emerged 2 But if this happens very often either that we admire that some (men) have been made and others not 3 So it happens that they are present because they follow (their) duty 4 So it happens that I, who ought to cast down weapons and to heal (my) wounds, may be forced to do this then 5 It came about by that that Lupus returned to you without my letter(s) 6 So it happened that there were very many (things) which we could say against that one from the letter(s) of the association and which we could bring forward 7 That therefore was done by the intent so that men might gather in one place, so that they might bear arms 8 It can come about that I may be deceived 9 It also happened toward the old age of Appius Claudius that he was blind 10 It happens that the streams renew the greedy sea with large waves of a river

2 1 There is a place so ancient which the Greeks say [i.e. call] Italy by name. 2 It comes about that the land is powerful with weapons and fertility of soil. 3 The Oenotrians brought it about that men would cultivate this land. 4 It happens that Orion carries us into blind shallows (or depths). 5 No one of us was (of the type) who did not swim to here from your shores. 6 No strait is so inaccessible, that foreigners to do not carry oars to it. 7 I see nothing so stormy which could

destroy this people of peace. 8 It remained that we saw Neptune on Sicily. 9 It follows that the river is so inaccessible that we do not swim. 10 The pious ones gave books to no one, whose loyalty was empty.

3 1 Accidit ut procācēs Grāiī sine rēmīs restārent. 2 Nēmō tam (ita/adeō) nefandus erat ut permitterētur restāre. 3 Sequitur ut paucī fāmīs quassentur. 4 Minōrēs rēgīnae efficiunt ut omnibus labor sit. 5 Nōlī facere ut gēns hūmāna salō et glaebā vēscātur.

Reading:
"There is a place which the Greeks call by the name Hesperia. It is an ancient land, master with respect to weapons and fertility of soil. Oenotrian men had cultivated (it). Now the rumor is that (their) descendants have called (that) nation Italy according to the name of (their) leader. This course was (ours), when stormy Orion, rising up suddenly from a wave carried us into blind shallows and scattered (us) deep within via the insolent south winds through waves and through inaccessible rocks, the salt (of the water) conquering. A few of us have swum here towards your shores.

What type of men is this? Or what so barbarous country permits this custom? We are prohibited from the hospitality of the sand [i.e. beach]. The men of this place arouse wars. They forbid us to stop on this first land. If you scorn the human race and mortal weapons, but expect that the gods (will be) mindful of right and of wrong! Our king was Aeneas, (n)one was neither more just nor more full of duty than him, and not better with respect to weapons in war. If the fates preserve this man, if he feeds in the open air and if he does not yet lie in cruel shadows, we do not have fear, and may you not repent, (being the) first, to have competed with respect to kindness.

And we have in Sicilian regions, cities and weapons, there is also famous Acestes of Trojan blood. May it be permitted that (we) pull up (our) fleet, shaken by the winds, and prepare beams from (your) forests and trim oars. If, (our) comrades and king having been recovered, it is allowed for us to aim for Italy, may we, happy, seek out Italy and Latium. But if our safety has been taken away, and the deep sea of Libya has you, best father of the Trojans and no hope of Iulus now remains, yet at least may we seek out for the straits of Sicily and the prepared homes, from which we were carried to here, and (may we seek out) the king Acestes."

Ilioneus spoke with such (words). All the Trojans roared at the same time with (their) face.

Unit 15

1 1 I pass over the fact that he chose a home for himself 2 My being sent to death happens well for me 3 It happens very inconveniently that you never saw

him 4 There is now nothing for your being angry with me 5 That I breathe and
please, if I please, is yours 6 Add to this that letters could not be carried through
under any condition 7 Why is the image ready as soon as it pleased me? 8 Your
boasting pertains to the same (thing) 9 Their fate is more wretched than this,
that they dare not even in secret to complain 10 That he unexpectedly attacked
one district

2 1 They see (the fact) that the guards are building a house for the mother.
2 That I was throwing stones from the wall confused those ones. 3 We recounted
these (things), (namely) that the ships had been broken by the winds of the sea.
4 You rejoice (the fact) that the end of the war has come. 5 We are better than
the enemies, because we want to carry peace to all. 6 It was wonderful, (namely
the fact) that the queen had given ornaments to the citizens. 7 You added (the fact)
that purple tapestries are beautiful. 8 Do you mourn (the fact) that your son has
been sent away? 9 They mourn (the fact) that the mother of the youth suddenly
tossed stones. 10 (The fact) that men have broken out of prison terrified us.

3 1 Videt quod custōs tēcta mātribus statuit. 2 Quod lapidem ē mūrīs ēiciēbāmus
illum cōnfūdit. 3 Memorāvī hoc quod nāvis ventō marium frācta erat. 4 Gaudēs
quod fīnēs bellōrum vēnērunt. 5 Praestō inimīcō quod pācēs omnī ferre volō.
6 Mīrābile fuit quod rēgīnae cīvī decus dederant. 7 Addidistī quod purpurea
vestis est decōra. 8 Lūgētisne quod fīliī tuī dīmissī sunt? 9 Maeret quod genetrīcēs
iuventārum repentē lapidem iactāvērunt. 10 Quod vir ē carceribus ērūpit terruit mē.

4 1 Nōbīs spēs est quod Iuppiter sōlem redūcit. 2 (Eius) meminī, quod nōn
nūdāre volēbant. 3 Dūrum est quod urbem dēlētam vidēmus. 4 Nōs terruit, quod
caelestia corpora cadēbant. 5 Custōdēs cōgunt id quod nōs glomerāmus.

Reading:
Then Dido, with her face lowered, speaks briefly:
"Loosen fear from (your) heart, Trojans, shut out (your) concerns! A hard
matter and the newness of the kingdom, such (things) force me to construct and
to watch with a guard (my) borders far and wide. Who may not know of the
race of Aeneas' descendants, the city of Troy, and the courage and men or of
the fires of such great a war? We Carthaginians do not wear such dulled bodies,
and the sun, (which is) not so diverted from our Carthaginian city, joins (its)
horses [i.e. completes its course]. Whether you desire great Hesperia or Saturnian
fields or the borders of Eryx and king Acestes, I will send (you) safe with aid
and I will help with (my) riches. And do you want to settle in these kingdoms
equally with me? The city which I build, is yours! Pull up (your) ships! The
Trojan and the Carthaginian will not be driven by any difference to me. And if
only that king Aeneas were present, driven by the same south wind! Indeed I will
send out certain (men) along the coasts and I will order (them) to scan the farthest
(lands) of Libya, if, thrown from the sea, he wanders in any forests or cities."

Raised up in (their) spirit by these words both strong Achates and father Aeneas dared for a long time to break out of the cloud. First Achates speaks to Aeneas:

"Son from a goddess, what opinion is now rising in your mind? You see all safe, (our) fleet and recovered comrades. One is not present, whom we ourselves saw was sunk in the middle of a wave. The rest corresponds to the statements of (your) mother."

Hardly did he say that when the cloud, which was poured around, suddenly split itself and it cleared itself into open air. Aeneas remained and glistened in clear light in his face and shoulders, similar to a god. Indeed (his) mother herself had breathed beautiful hair to (her) son and the radiant light of youth and happy honors in (his) eyes. Such ornament as deeds add to ivory, or when Parian stone or silver is surrounded by yellow gold.

Unit 16

1   1 He demanded that it be permitted to him, celebrating a triumph, to be carried into the city 2 I am not only annoyed by my folly, but also ashamed 3 Are you not ashamed of these things? 4 I hardly repent for that 5 It was necessary that you be led to death 6 From there it had not been necessary to leave alive 7 Either it was necessary for war not to be taken up, or it is necessary for it to be waged for the dignity of the Roman people 8 It is necessary for you to be strong men 9 Here it was permitted to see a sudden change of matters 10 I pitied him

2   1 Finally the dangers annoy me. 2 It is necessary that the sun rise. 3 Did you repent for having not helped those who had been driven out? 4 It is necessary for you to welcome (your) enemies. 5 It was permitted that people run. 6 It concerns him that he know the riches of a king. 7 May people pay. 8 Thanks do not annoy him. 9 I think that it is necessary that they enter the stream. 10 What do you lack? Is it permitted for you to build a home?

3   1 Crūdēlium deōrum mē pudet. 2 Crūdēlium deōrum mē miseret. 3 Crūdēlium deōrum mē pertaedet. 4 Crūdēlēs deōs meī piget. 5 Crūdēlēs deōs meī pudet. 6 Crūdēlēs deōs meī miseret. 7 Crūdēlēs deōs meī pertaedet. 8 Crūdēlium deōrum mē piget. 9 Necesse est mē sapientiam discere. 10 Necesse est mihi sapientiam discere. 11 Necesse est ut sapientiam discam. 12 Oportuerat mē sapientiam discere. 13 Nōn sapientiam discere mē paenitet. 14 Licet mē sapientiam discere. 15 Licet mihi sapientiam discere. 16 Licet ut sapientiam discam. 17 Meā interest ut sapientiam discam. 18 Meā interest sapientiam discere. 19 Discētur. 20 Ītur.

Reading:

Then this he, unexpected, replies to the queen and suddenly says to all:

"In (your) presence, I am present, whom you seek. Trojan Aeneas, torn away from Libyan waves. O you, alone, having pitied the unspeakable labors of Troy, who welcome us, the remains of the Greeks, (us) exhausted already by all misfortunes of land and sea, us lacking all (things) in (your) city, (your) home. It is not in our power, Dido, to pay for (our) worthy thanks. Neither us nor whatever of the Trojan race is anywhere, which has been dispersed through the great world, are able to pay you for (our) worthy thanks. May the gods carry to you worthy rewards, if any divine wills gaze at pious (ones), if there is any justice at all and any mind aware of right.

What happy centuries have carried you so? Which great parents have borne such (a person)? While streams flow into straits, while shadows scan hollows in mountains, while the sky feeds the stars, (your) honor, and name and praises will always remain, whatever lands call me."

Thus he spoke, and he seeks friendly Ilioneus with (his) right (hand) and Serestus with (his) left (hand), afterwards others, strong Gyas and strong Cloanthus.

Sidonian Dido stood agape at the first sight of Aeneas and then at the great misfortune of his men, and thus spoke with a speech:

"Which misfortune follows you, son from a goddess, through so great dangers? What force steers (you) to enormous coasts? Are you that Aeneas whom nurturing Venus bore to Trojan Anchises along a wave of Phyrgian Simois? And indeed I remember that Teucer had been driven out from his native Greek borders and came to Sidon. He was seeking new kingdoms with the aid of Belus. My father, Belus, was ravaging then fertile Cyprus and holding (it) in power as victor. From that time already the misfortune of the Trojan city was known to me, as were your name and the Greek kings. That one, (your) enemy [i.e. Teucer], carried Trojan men with distinguished praise and he liked that he had risen from that same ancient stock. Therefore, lead (yourselves here), O young ones, and enter our houses! Indeed fortune similarly wanted me, tossed through many labors, to stop in this land. Not ignorant of evil I (am) learning to help miserable (ones)."

Unit 17

1 1 They seem to me, that the raging and fleeting attacks of that (man) are being turned against those ones themselves 2 I confess that many men have restrained (themselves) through themselves 3 Pompey asked me that I be with him and at his house daily 4 He gave to me all the books which his brother had left 5 I am invited by Caesar that I be a delegate for him 6 He places defenses on those cities, which had deserted to him 7 He has that which was owed to him 8 Ariovistus responds to the delegate that it seemed wonderful to him 9 Agrippa weeping beseeched Atticus that he (Atticus) save himself (Atticus) for him (Agrippa) and for his own (Atticus) companions 10 He prohibited fires from being made by which his arrival would be more concealed

2   Sentence 5 in which **sibi** refers to **Caesar** which is an ablative of agent.

3   1 Venit ut caterva circum sē (ipsum) gaudeat. 2 Cīvēs paenitet quod inimīcī suam urbem dēlēre potuerant. 3 Cōgitāvit Neptūnus Iovem sibi ventōs dedisse. 4 Nēminī parcēns salum nautās, spērāns sē servārī, rīpā prohibet. 5 Ea Neptūnō responduit sē ipsum laetitiam sibi dēbere.

Reading:
In this way Dido recounts. At the same time she leads Aeneas to the royal houses, and proclaims the offering in the temples of the gods. Likewise she sends to the comrades at the shores twenty bulls, 100 bristling backs of great pigs, 100 lambs with (their) fat mothers, gifts, and wine.

Yet the inner house is constructed brilliant with royal luxury, and the feasts are prepared in the middle of the house. There are tapestries produced by skill and with haughty purple and huge silver on tables. The strong deeds of (her) fathers have been engraved in gold, a very long series of things led through many men from the ancient beginning of the race.

Aeneas – and indeed (his) fatherly love could not bear to stop (his) mind – sends forth swift Achates to the ships, in order that he bring these (words) to Ascanius and that he lead him to the walls. All the care of a dear parent rests on Ascanius. Furthermore he orders (Achates) to carry back gifts snatched away from Trojan ruins: a robe with signs, rigid by gold and a garment embroidered by yellow acanthus. They are ornaments of Argive Helen, which she had carried off from Mycenae, when she sought Pergama and forbidden marriage. They are wonderful gifts of (Helen's) mother Leda. In addition Achates carries the scepter, which once Ilione, the oldest of the daughters of Priam carried. There are also a collar for the neck with pearls and a double crown of gems and gold. Hastening (to do) these (things) Achates kept a path to the ships.

Yet Venus ponders new deceits, new plans in her heart, so that Cupid, changed in face and appearance may come for sweet Ascanius, and may set the queen [i.e. Dido] raging by means of the gifts and may enfold a fire in (her) bones. Indeed Venus fears (that) unreliable house and the deceitful Carthaginians. Dreadful Juno burns her and (her) care returns at night.

Unit 18

1   1 But may I remain, I think 2 May I first describe that which I began 3 Let us rather desire that he go into exile than us complain 4 But let us not desire difficult (things) 5 Let them go away, let them set out 6 Let the delegates set out: let war be prepared less for nothing [i.e. all the same] 7 Let us go inside, so that the artisan may be fetched 8 Let my citizens be strong! Let them be safe, let them be blossoming, let them be happy! 9 And let us go to our adversaries 10 Do not be moved by pity

2 1 Let us not delay! 2 Let the flowers be soft! 3 Let the poisons be counteracted! 4 Let us rejoice because of the quiet! 5 Let the winged ones not flee for help!

3 1 Nē morer! 2 Flōs mollis sit! 3 Venēnum occurrātur! 4 Gaudeam quiētibus! 5 Āliger auxiliīs nē cōnfugiat!

4 1 Nē nōs fallant! 2 Nē vereāmur! 3 Eī adfētur! 4 Potentia Iūnōnia nē morētur! 5 Nē induat vultum acerbum!

Reading:

Therefore Venus speaks to winged Love with these words:

"Son, my strength, my great power, (you) alone, son, who scorn the Typhoean weapons of the highest father, to you I flee for help. I, a suppliant, ask your divine power. (These things) are known to you, how your brother Aeneas has been tossed around all shores on the sea because of the hatreds of bitter Juno. Often you have suffered with my grief. Now the Phoenician woman, Dido, holds him and delays him with persuasive words. I fear where the hospitalities of Juno may turn him to. Hardly will Juno hesitate at such a great pivot of things.

Therefore I plan to seize Queen Dido by deceits first and to gird (her) with a flame, so that she may not be changed by any divine power, but that she may be held with me by a great love of Aeneas. Now receive our intention by which you might be able to do it. The royal boy, my greatest concern, Ascanius is preparing to go to the Sidonian city on account of the summons of his dear father Aeneas. He carries gifts having survived from the sea and flames of Troy. I will hide him, sleeping in sleep onto high Cythera or above the sacred seat of Mount Idalium, so that he may not be able to know our deceits or, being in the middle, be able to counteract (them). You, copy his face in no more than one night for the deceit! And don the known features of the boy, so that, when the most happy Dido will receive you in (her) bosom within the royal tables and Bacchic liquids, when she will give hugs and fix (her) sweet lips (on you), you may breathe a hidden fire and you may deceive (her) with your poison."

Love obeys the words of (his) dear mother, and shed (his) wings and rejoicing, walks with the gait of Iulus. Yet Venus diffuses a peaceful rest on Ascanius through (his) limbs, and the goddess lifts the cherished (one) on her bosom onto the high groves of Idalium, where soft marjoram, blowing, embraces (him) with flowers and sweet shade.

Unit 19

1 1 Since things are so, Catiline, proceed with what you have begun 2 Why should I relate more (things), since I have heard him himself boasting 3 Since it is now night, depart to your homes 4 He ordered that his own son be killed,

since he had fought against the enemy contrary to (his) command 5 It follows
that by your judgment they are liberators since no third (thing) can be 6 I rejoiced
that I was permitted to defend the rights 7 Since nature cannot be changed,
for that reason true friendships are eternal 8 The loving ones are not able to
judge by form, since the mind takes a sense of the eyes in advance 9 You will
be, since you wanted to love my loves [i.e. be my lover], with a long penalty
10 Since he himself was not able to speak for himself, his brother Stesagoras
made words [i.e. spoke]

2 1 Pōculum pīnxit cum nōn flagrāret. 2 Interdum aulaea tondēre temptant
cum ea abolēre velint. 3 Famulae nōn poterant incipere cum canistra mantēlibus
implēta essent. 4 Mantēlia villōrum lympham (aquam) abolēre nōn possunt
cum tōnsa sint. 5 Dēsuētus famulōs famulāsque adoluit cum canistrum suum
implēvissent.

3 1 Pōculum pīnxit quod nōn flagrābat. 2 Interdum aulaea tondēre temptant
quod ea abolēre volunt. 3 Famulae nōn poterant incipere quod canistra mantēlibus
implēta erant. 4 Mantēlia villōrum lympham (aquam) abolēre nōn possunt quod
tōnsa sunt. 5 Dēsuētus famulōs famulāsque adoluit quod canistrum suum
implēverant.

Reading:

Already Cupid was going, obeying the command, and happily was carrying
royal gifts for the Carthaginians, with Achates as leader. When he arrives, the
queen has already composed herself on a golden couch under haughty curtains,
and she located (herself) in the middle (of the couch). Now father Aeneas and
now the Trojan youth gather. There is reclining upon spread purple (covers).
The male servants give water to their hands and procure grain from baskets and
carry napkins of shorn bristles. Fifty female servants within, whose care it is to
arrange the long provisions of food and to honor the household gods by flames.
There are another 100 and as many manservants equal in age, who load the
tables with the feasts and place cups.

  Likewise the Carthaginians have gathered, crowding through the happy thresh-
olds, commanded to recline on embroidered couches. They admire the gifts of
Aeneas, they admire Iulus – the glowing features of the god and feigned words
– and the robe and the garment embroidered with yellow acanthus. Especially
unlucky Dido, doomed to a destruction to come, is unable to satisfy (her) mind
and burns in watching. Equally she is moved by the boy and gifts.

  While he hung to the neck of Aeneas with an embrace, he filled the great
love of a false father. He seeks the queen. This one clings with (her) eyes, with
her whole heart and occasionally cherishes (him) in (her) bosom. Dido is unaware
how great a god settles on (her) unfortunate (self). Yet that one [i.e. Cupid],
remembering (his) mother Venus begins to remove Sychaeus gradually and with
a living love tries to outstrip inactive thoughts and an unused heart.

Unit 20

1   1 Indeed although it was a wild enemy, nevertheless that war was hanging from a single body and from a single source 2 Although you hurry, (your) delay is not long 3 Although I do not take so much for myself nor assume, judges 4 Although he frightened the inhabitants by a favorable fight and gained possession of the shore 5 When you remember, although it has happened otherwise, that nevertheless you felt correctly and truly 6 Although it was more cautious from the beginning 7 But although it is permitted for the reasoning of an absent one to be considered, nevertheless all things are easier for those present 8 However much a thing is dirty and unattractive 9 To this it approaches (the fact) that, although he is happy, as he is, nevertheless no one is able to be in such great happiness 10 Although this man is swift

2   1 Cum Bacchus pateram aurātam lībet, pecudēs tamen nōn celebrant. 2 Procerēs crāterēs tingunt cum nūlla aqua (lympha) sit. 3 Cum citharae nōn attingeret (citharam nōn tangeret), omnēs famulae gāvīsae sunt. 4 Plausūs ingemināvērunt cum Diomēdēs īnsidiīs obstiterat. 5 Lūna dē laqueāre pluviō hibernōque caelī dēpendēbat, cum Triōnēs solērent nōn comitāre.

3   1 Quamquam Bacchus pateram aurātam lībat, pecudēs tamen nōn celebrant. 2 Procerēs crāterēs tingunt quamquam nūlla aqua (lympha) est. 3 Quamquam citharae nōn attingēbat (citharam nōn tangēbat), omnēs famulae gāvīsae sunt. 4 Plausūs ingemināvērunt quamquam Diomēdēs īnsidiīs obstiterat. 5 Lūna dē laqueāre pluviō hibernōque caelī dēpendēbat, quamquam Triōnēs solēbant nōn comitāre.

Reading:
After there was a first calm in the feasts, the tables were removed, and they [i.e. the servants] stand great mixing bowls and they place wreathes (around) the wines. The noise becomes (louder) in the home and they roll (their) voice through full halls. Lamps, set with fire, hang from golden ceilings and lamps conquer the night.

Here the queen asked for a heavy bowl of gems and gold and she filled (it) with unmixed wine, which King Belus and all those [descended] from Belus were accustomed to. Then silence was made in the hall.

"Jupiter, they say indeed that you give laws to guests and hosts. May you wish that this day be happy for the Carthaginians and those set out from Troy. May our descendants remember this. May the giver of joy, Bacchus, and good Juno be present. And you, O Carthaginians, favoring (this) assembly celebrate!"

Thus Dido spoke and she poured the honor of liquids onto the table, and first, with it poured, she touched (it) up to her mouth. Then she gave (it) to Bitias, challenging (him). He, eager, drained the foaming bowl and drenched himself by that full gold (liquid flood); afterwards the other nobles.

Long-haired Iopas plays with his gilded lyre, which the greatest Atlas taught (him). He sings (of) the wandering moon and the labors of the sun, from where (come) the race of men and animals, from where rain and fires, (of) Arcturus and the rainy Hyades and the twin Little Bear constellation. He sings (about) why the wintry suns hasten so much to dip themselves into the Ocean, or what delay opposes the slow nights. The Carthaginians redouble with applause, the Trojans follow.

Likewise unlucky Dido drew out the night with varied talking. She was drinking long love, asking many (things) concerning Priam, many (things) concerning Hector. She was now asking with what weapons the son of Aurora had come, now what kind of horses of Diomedes there had been, now how great Achilles had been.

"Rather, do and tell us, guest, from the first beginning," she says, "the treacheries of the Greeks and the misfortunes of your men and your wanderings. Indeed now the seventh summer carries you, wandering in all lands and on all waves."

Unit 21

1   1 He was not strong (enough) to fill these (things), when no blasphemy is able to succeed against us 2 Let him come when he wishes, and so there may be no delay to me 3 I will indeed speak, when this concern gnaws you 4 When Caesar was made aware through the scouts 5 When the day came, which he had decided with the delegates 6 I remember when you seemed to me to play the fool 7 Also then she lives when you believe her to be dead 8 When you will ask, ask in Latin! 9 Whenever they would see a debtor be led into court, they used to flock together from all sides 10 When Caesar had seized Ancona, we left the city

2   1 vidēbāris 2 quom 3 volt

3   1 Cum castra abiēte aedificāvērunt, bella renovant. 2 Cum (Quandō/Ubi/Ut) manibus mīlitum temperātur (continētur), refugere nōn potest. 3 Cum castrīs inclūsissent, innūptī ēruērunt mīlitēs. 4 Cum Teucriam videam, hortor ut cīvēs in latebrās eant. 5 Cum (Quandō/Ubi/Ut) errās, cycnī silentium trāicient.

Reading:
All became silent and intent they kept (their) faces (on Aeneas). From a high couch father Aeneas thus began:

"You order me, queen, to renew unspeakable pain, how the Greeks had overthrown Trojan riches and the pitiable kingdom. You order me to say the most wretched (things) which I myself saw and in which I was a part. Which soldier of the Myrmidons or of the Dolopians or soldier of the hard Ulysses might restrain (himself) from tears by speaking such (things)? And now the damp

night rushes headlong from the sky and the falling stars urge sleep. But if your love is so great to know our misfortunes and to hear briefly the last labor of Troy, although (my) mind trembles to remember and flees from the grief, I will begin.

Broken by war and repelled by the fates, the leaders of the Greeks build, now after so many years slipping by, a horse in the likeness of a mountain by the divine art of Minerva. They weave ribs with cut fir. They feign (it) an offering for (their) return. This wanders (as) the rumor. To here men enclose (their) bodies, which they drew by lots, secretly in the blind side. They fill deep within the enormous caverns and the womb with armed soldiers.

Tenedos is in view, a very well-known island and rich with riches while the kingdom of Priam remained. Now it is only a bay and a badly safe [i.e. unsafe] station for the keels of ships. To here the Greeks were conveyed in order to hide (themselves) on the isolated shore. We thought that they had departed and sought by wind Mycenae. Thus all Troy loosens itself from the long grief. The gates are opened, it is pleasing that we go and see the Doric camp and the deserted places and the left [i.e. abandoned] shore. Here a force of Dolopians held, here cruel Achilles held. Here (their) fleets had (this) place, here they were accustomed to contend in battle.

Part are astonished by the deadly gift of unwed Minerva and they admire the size of the horse. Thymoetus first urges (it) be led within the walls and to be located at the citadel. Whether it was by deceit or already the fates of Troy were carrying (it forth) in this way. Yet Capys and those, whose opinion was better in mind, order either to rush the treacheries of the Greek to the sea or to burn the suspected gifts with flames having been thrown underneath, or to drill into and examine the hollow hiding places of the womb."

Unit 22

1   1 Might they wish before the neighbors perceived? 2 It is certain to try all (things) before I perish 3 What of these was there which was not taken away before it was given? 4 It is announced to those ones attempting, before it could be formed, that the Romans are present 5 Before I return to (my) opinion, I will say a few (words) about myself 6 Somewhat before he died, he had handed over everything to Heraclius 7 After he noticed that, Caesar pulled up his troops onto the nearest hill 8 After she bore (herself) there, she handed over to one armor-bearer of the nymphs (her) javelin and quiver and slackened bows 9 From there he did not step off before the king recovered him into (his) trust 10 They send away before it was withdrawn by them

2   1 Priusquam (Antequam) eum inlūdere posset, crīmen factum est. 2 Postquam pāstōrēs lignō ferōs occultāvērunt, circumspicient. 3 Studiō ultrō nōn sēnsō, circumspeximus priusquam (antequam) cīvibus fīsī sumus. 4 Revincī māchinam

postquam cōnstitit! 5 Dēnique captōs comprimēmus priusquam (antequam) spē careant.

Reading:
"The uncertain crowd is split into opposing inclinations. There the first before all (is) Laocoon, with a great crowd accompanying (him), eager he ran down from the highest citadel and urges from afar:

'O wretched citizens, what (is) this so great madness? Do you believe that the enemy has been carried away? Or do you think that any gifts of Greeks lack deceits? Thus is Ulysses (not) known? Or enclosed in this wood Greeks are concealed, or this device has been made against our walls so that it may inspect (our) homes and may come from above the city, or some trick hides (inside). Do not trust the horse, Trojans! Whatever it is, I fear the Greek also when carrying gifts.'

Thus having spoken he hurled a huge spear with mighty strength into the side and into the wild beast's curved belly of joints. It stood (there) trembling, the hollow caverns resounded because of the struck belly and it gave a groan. And, if the fates of the gods had not been (so), if (our) mind had not been stupid, Laocoon would have forced us to mar the Greek hiding places by sword and Troy would now stand, and you, high fortress of Priam, would remain.

Behold meanwhile Trojan shepherds were dragging to the king with a great sound a youth bound tight at (his) hands behind (his) back. He had voluntarily offered himself, unknown to the shepherds, so that he might arrange this very (thing) and might open Troy to the Greeks. Trusting in (his) soul he was prepared for each, whether to keep using deceits or to meet certain death. From all sides Trojan youth, having been poured around by zeal of looking at (him), rush and they compete to mock the seized (one). Receive now the treacheries of the Greeks and learn from one crime (about) all! Indeed as he (was) thrown into confusion in the middle of view, unarmed, he stood firm and looked around with eyes (upon) the Phrygian lines and said:

'Alas, what land, what seas can now receive me? Or what now finally remains for wretched me? Among the Greeks I do not have a place at all, and in addition you yourselves the hostile Trojans demand punishments with my blood.'

(Our) minds were turned by this groan and every attack was repressed. We urge that he speak from what blood he is born, or what he carries and that he recount what faith this seized (one) has."

Unit 23

1   1 While these were being done at the conference, it was announced to Caesar 2 And after sacred ones have been appeased, indulge for hospitality . . . while the sky (is) not manageable 3 She will have turned the youthful bodies into silent fish, until she suffered the same (thing) 4 Do not rise up (at) anywhere,

until the sign will have been given by me 5 Let them marry wherever it pleases,
provided that the dowry is not made (her) companion 6 Until snatched of (his)
serious health, before he may clearly die, he ordered to be deserted for dead
[i.e. left for dead] 7 Tityrus, until I return, it is a short way, feed (my) she-goats
8 He took it without a witness, he had it as long as he wanted 9 As long as I
am in the world, I am the light of the world 10 Provided that she comes rightly
well-mannered, she has been endowed enough

2   1 Dum (Dōnec/Quoad/Quamdiū) nēquīquam remeābat ingrātam invidiam
fatēbamur. 2 Dum (Dummodo, Modo) dēmentēs pellācēs concēdant, īnsontēs
nōn tacēbunt. 3 Dum (Dōnec/Quoad/Quamdiū) formīdine cassī sunt, improbōrum
prōditiōnem nōn maerent. Ithacī tacēbant dum (dōnec/quoad) comitēs tenebrīs
remeent. 5 Indicium prōditiōnis lābēs erit, dum (dōnec/quoad) mors pervenit.

Reading:

"He finally speaks these (things) with his fear laid down:
   'Indeed I will confess true (things) to you, king, whatever it might be. I do
not deny that I am of the Greek race. This firstly I confess. And, if the fates
have made (me), Sinon, a wretched (man), it does not make (me) a lying (man)
and even an empty (one). In speaking somewhat the name of Palamedes has
come to your ears by chance, whom innocent the Greeks sent down to death
under treason on account of an unspeakable charge, because he opposed war.
Now they mourn (him) deprived of light. My poor father sent me as a companion
in arms and near in kinship to him [i.e. Palamedes] years ago. While Palamedes
stood safe in the kingdom and flourished in councils of kings, I carried his name
and glory. After he withdrew from these upper shores on account of the jealousy
of deceitful Ulysses – hardly unknown (things) I speak of – I, crushed, dragged
(my) life into shadows and grief and was angry at the misfortune of an innocent
friend to me. I, mad, did not remain silent. If any chance would have come, if
I returned to (my) native Argos ever as victor, I promised to be (his) avenger.
By (my) words I moved sharp hatreds. From here I had my first stigma of evil.
From here Ulysses always frightened with new crimes, from here Ulysses scattered
unreliable words onto the crowd and aware of his own evil sought weapons.
And indeed he did not rest, until with Calchas as servant . . .
   But why do I tell these unpleasant (things) in vain moreover? Why do I
delay? If you hold all the Greeks as one order, it is enough to hear this, at once
exact (from me) punishments! The Ithacan Ulysses would want this and the
sons of Atreus would pay for this great (thing).'
   'Then truly we are eager to inquire and seek the causes. We are ignorant of
such great wicked crimes and Greek art.'"

Unit 24

1 1 If you do (this) I will have great thanks. If you do not do it, I will forgive (you). 2 If art is hidden, it is useful. 3 If you should use it, it would be worn out 4 I would not be able to live if I were not living among (my) letters [i.e. books] 5 If anyone were to be taken by (his) master, he was snatched away by a conspiracy of soldiers 6 I should hardly ask you, if I knew 7 If he would be within, I would call (him) out 8 If the Latins had not taken up arms of their own accord, we had been seized and destroyed 9 Whether you have something, or nothing, write nevertheless! 10 I hand over to you a strong kingdom, if you will be good, but if (you are) bad, weak (will be the kingdom)

2 1 general, general 2 general 3 mixed 4 unreal 5 mixed 6 ideal 7 unreal 8 mixed 9 general 10 general

3 1 Sī discēderent, vērum fēmur. 2 Sī exitium exoptāvissēs, interclūsus (interclūsa) essēs. 3 Vātēs auxilium flāgitat, sī eius (suī) miserēmur. 4 Nisī quid in līmōsō lacū dēlitēscat, ulvās altās contexāmus. 5 Sī mortem intemerātam recūsāmus, ad acerna adyta vātium nōn reportābimur.

Reading:

"Trembling, he continues and speaks with a feigned heart:

'Often the Greeks desired to undertake a flight, with Troy being left, and to depart, tired of the long war. If only they had done (that)! Often a fierce storm of the deep sea shut them off and the south wind frightened (their) going. Especially when this horse, constructed from maple beams was already standing, rain clouds resounded in the whole sky. Anxious we send Eurypylus to inquire the oracles of Apollo. He carries back these sad words from the sanctuaries:

"By blood you calmed the winds, with a virgin having been cut down, when you, Greeks, first came to Trojan shores. A return ought to be sought by you via blood and it ought to be appeased by a Greek spirit."

'As this word came to the ears of the crowd, (their) spirits stood agape and a cold tremble ran through their lowest bones. Whom were the fates preparing? Whom is Apollo asking for? Here the Ithacan drags forward the soothsayer Calchas into the middle (of everyone) with a big tumult. Ulysses demands what are these divine wills of the gods. And already many men had told me the cruel crime of this contriver, and silent, they saw what was to come.

Twice five days Calchas is silent (and) hidden and refuses to betray anyone with his voice or to expose anyone to death. Finally, with difficulty, driven by great shouts of the Ithacan, by an agreement with Ulysses he utters a word, and appoints me to the altar. All assented and, (that) which each feared for himself, (that) turned onto the destruction of a poor (one), they bore.

And already the unspeakable day was present. The sacred things were being prepared for me and salty fruits and garlands were placed around my temples.

I snatched away, I confess, myself from death. I broke the chains, and hid in a muddy lake through the night, hidden in a sedge, while they set sail. And now I have no hope of seeing my ancient fatherland, nor my sweet sons and my longed-for parent [i.e. father], whom the Greeks perhaps will demand penalties from on account of my escape and they will appease this crime by the death of (these) poor (ones). You, Priam, through the gods and divine wills conscious of the truth, through pure faith, if anything which remains yet to mortals, I beg, pity such great labors, pity the spirit (of him) carrying such undeserved (things)!'"

Unit 25

1   1 It is not doubtful that (my) son does not want a wife 2 It ought not be doubted that there were poets before Homer 3 I would not hesitate to say that all wise (men) are always happy 4 Not to be doubted that the Helvetii were the most powerful of all Gaul 5 Because it was not doubtful what it was necessary to be judged 6 Unless by chance it is also doubtful, by what way that (man) became a praetor 7 Is it doubtful to you that she is this (woman)? 8 Indeed I do not doubt that at first (your) tongue, enemy of good (people), cut out, is given to the greedy vulture 9 I do not doubt that I should come to you immediately 10 It did not hesitate to attack my leg with (its) serrated bite

2   1 Dubitō num (an/utrum) Palladiī oblīvīscātur. 2 Nepōtēs, nōlīte dubitāre (*or* nē dubitētis) effigiem (simulācrum) piāre prōmissō. 3 Nōn dubitāvimus quīn auctor effigiēī (simulācrī) violābilis testārētur. 4 Ita (sīc) dubium erat num (an/utrum) Iuppiter sūdōrem mīlitum in templō suō ōdisset. 5 Nōn dubitātur quīn ēnsēs (gladiī) rōbur ex imperiō exscindant.

Reading:
"We give here life from (his) tears and furthermore we pity (him). Priam himself (is) the first to order the handcuffs and tight chains to be lifted from the man. Thus he says with these words to the friend:

'Whoever you are, you are ours. Forget from here now that the Greeks have been lost! Tell these true (things) to me, (who is) questioning! Why did the Greeks build this mass of a huge horse? Who (is) the creator? What do they seek? What offering (is it)? Or what engine of war?'

He, instructed by deceits and the Greek art, lifted (his) palms, shed of chains, to the stars and says:

'You eternal fires, and your divine invulnerable will (as) witness. You, altars and impious swords, which I fled, and garlands of the gods, which I wore as victim. It is right for me to free the consecrated laws of the Greeks. It is right for me to hate the men and to bring all under the light of day, if they hide anything. I am not held by any laws of (my) country. You, saved Troy, may you

only remain in the promises and may you keep faith, if I bring forth true (things), if I repay (you) great (things).

All hope of the Greeks and hope of the begun war always stood with the aid of Minerva. But indeed wicked Diomedes and the inventor of wicked crimes Ulysses approached to tear away from the sacred temple the fatal Palladium, the guards of the highest citadel having been cut down. They snatched away the holy image and with (their) bloody hands they dared to touch the virgin garlands of the goddess. From that time the hope of the Greeks has flown and having slipped back it has been carried off. (Their) strength has been broken. The mind of the goddess has been turned away.

And Minerva gave these signs as non-doubtful marvels. Hardly had the image been placed in camp, (when) waving flames burned from (her) raised eyes, and salty sweat ran through (her) limbs. And three times the goddess herself dashed from the ground, wonderful to see, and carrying a shield and a trembling spear. Immediately Calchas prophesies that the seas ought to be tried with respect to a flight and that Pergama is not able to be rooted out by Greek weapons, unless they were to retrace (their) omens. They would lead back the divine power, which had carried them away with itself by the sea and curved keels.

And now they sought (their) native Mycenae by the wind, they prepare weapons and gods as companions and they, suddenly, will be present, the sea having been crossed again. Thus Calchas explains the omens. Warned, they built this image [i.e. the horse] for the Palladium for the offended divine spirit, so that the sad sin might be appeased. Nevertheless, Calchas orders this vast mass of woven oaks to lift up and to lead out to the sky, so that it could not be accepted by the gates or led into the city, and that it could not guard the people under (its) old religion. For if your hand would have violated the gifts of Minerva, then a great destruction would be to the kingdom of Priam and to the Phrygians. May the gods turn this omen onto the soothsayer himself! But if it would have ascended into your city by your hands, furthermore Asia would come in a great war to the walls of King Pelops. May these fates await our descendants.'

(This) thing was believed on account of such treacheries and the skill of Sinon. We were seized by the deceits and forced tears, we, whom neither Diomedes nor Achilles tamed, not ten years, not a thousand keels."

Unit 26

1 1 I fear that while I wish to lessen the work, I increase it 2 I fear that we have seized that of a plan which we cannot easily explain 3 I fear that I can reply nothing except for tears 4 You dread that, (namely) that you may lead [i.e. marry] that one, you moreover, that you may not 5 The decorations which I placed, I fear I may not be able to recover 6 Indeed he feared, namely that he might lose some of his own reputation among you and the Roman people 7 (They) feared that they might be forced to dash together at night or that they

might be held by Caesar's cavalry 8 Fear had seized the soldiers that Scipio's wound was fatal 9 He sat, who feared that he might not enter 10 I fear that you may not hold out

2 1 Puella metuit (timet/verētur) ut spīrīs squāmeīs anguis effugiat. 2 Metuerāmus (timuerāmus/veritī erāmus/veritae erāmus) ut frondēs secūre diffugeret. 3 Puellae, nōlīte metuere (nōlīte timēre/nōlīte verērī/nē metuātis/nē timeātis/nē vereāminī) nē Cassandra sollemnī in dēlūbrō sistātur! 4 Metuēbam (Timēbam/Verēbar) nē fūnere sinuātō pavor exsanguēs amplecteret. 5 Metuunt (Timent/Verentur) nē rotae tempestātibus frangantur.

Reading:

"Here another omen, greater by much, is set before poor us and throws our thoughtless hearts into confusion. Laocoon, drawn by lots as priest to Neptune, was sacrificing a huge bull for the solemn altars. Behold moreover twin snakes with immense coils press on from Tenedos through the tranquil deep on the sea. I shudder (in) reporting (this). They extend equally to the shores. Their chests raised up between the waves, (their) bloody manes conquer the waves. The other part skims the sea behind and (their) backs, immense in coil, twist. A sound is made by the foaming salt. And now they hold the fields. They have been supplied with fire and blood in their burning eyes, they lick (their) hissing mouths with vibrating tongues.

We, lifeless, disperse at the sight. They seek Laocoon by a certain line. And at first each snake enfolds the small bodies of (his) two sons and each devours (their) poor limbs by a bite. Afterwards, they snatch up Laocoon himself, coming in aid and carrying spears. They bind with (their) giant folds. And now twice they encircle (his) waist, twice (their) scaly backs surround (his) neck, they conquer with their heads and high necks. At the same time he aims to tear apart (their) knots with (his) hands, soaked in his garlands by blood and by black poison. At the same time he lifts trembling shouts to the stars. Such lowing (as) when a wounded bull has fled the altar and has cast off the uncertain ax from its neck. Yet the twin serpents escape to the highest shrine by gliding and they seek the citadel of cruel Minerva. They are hidden under the feet of the goddess and (her) shield.

Then truly a new terror creeps through the alarmed hearts of all. They say that deserving Laocoon paid for (his) crime, who had offended the sacred oak with his spear and had hurled (his) wicked spear at the back. They shout that the statue must be led to the abode in the temple and divine will of the goddess must be prayed for.

We divide the walls and spread the walls of the city open. All gird for work. They throw under rolling wheels at the feet, and they stretch hemp chains at the neck. The fatal engine climbs the walls, fat with weapons. Boys and unmarried girls sing holy (songs) around and rejoice to touch the rope with a hand. It enters and threatening it glides into the middle of the city. O homeland, O Troy, home

of the gods and the walls of the Trojans famous for war! Four times it stopped
on the threshold itself of the gate and four times the weapons in (its) belly gave
a sound. We press hard nevertheless, heedless, and blind by frenzy. We stop the
unlucky marvel in the consecrated citadel. Then even Cassandra opens (her)
mouth of fates to be, (words) which by the command of the god were never
believed by the Trojans. We the wretched, who have that last day, cover the
shrines of the gods throughout the city with a festive branch.”

Unit 27

1 1 And I do not prevent you, if it will so please you, from also adorning him
with these marks of a little glory 2 I am prevented from saying more (things)
3 What hinders him from being happy? 4 Age does not prevent us from holding
inclinations [i.e. zeal] of letters 5 You were able to prevent it from happening/
being made 6 Parents are prohibited from approaching (their) children 7 I am
not able to be contained from embracing (her) 8 My slavery forbade me from
admiring any bad thing of mine 9 Although what forbids a laughing (person)
from saying the truth? 10 Who for whole days forbids force to be made or orders
(it), having been done, to be restored

2 1 Obstāmus quōminus (nē) exuviae Neoptolemō commendantur. 2 Vigilēs
aegrī impedītī sunt quōminus (nē) sopor serēnus sibi esset. 3 Phalānx prohibet
quōminus (nē) bīgae dēlūbrum dēfendant. 4 Fabricātor īnsōns nōn vetātus
erat quōminus (quīn) manūs laxāret. 5 Famulus recūsāverit quōminus (nē) vigilēs
indignum sepeliant.

Reading:
“Meanwhile night is turned and rushes from the Ocean, wrapping with a great
shadow the heaven and earth, and sky and deceits of the Myrmidons. Poured
through the walls the Trojans became silent. Sleep embraces (their) tired limbs.

And now a Greek phalanx with ordered ships was going from Tenedos through
friendly silence of the silent moon, seeking the famous shores. When the royal
ship raised up flames, Sinon, defended by the unjust fates of the gods, secretly
loosens the Greeks enclosed in the belly and pine barriers. The opened horse returns
them to air. Happy they bring themselves out from the hollow oak: the leaders
Thessandrus and Sthenelus and terrible Ulysses, who slid down the lowered
rope, and Acamas and Thoas and Neoptolemus, descendant of Peleus, and the
chief Machaon and Menelaus and the inventor of the deceit itself, Epeos. They
invade the city, buried by sleep and wine. The watchmen are cut down, the gates
having been opened, they receive all their comrades and join confederate lines.

It was the time in which the first rest begins for weary mortals and this most
pleasing gift of the gods crawls (in). In (my) sleep, behold, before (my) eyes
the very sad Hector was seen by me to be present and to pour out copious tears,

as once dragged by a two-horse chariot, and black with bloody dust and pierced by straps through (his) swelling feet. How much changed to me was he from that Hector who returns, donning the spoils of Achilles or (Hector) who hurled Phrygian fires to the ships of the Greeks. He bore a filthy beard and hair congealed by blood and those wounds which he had received many (times) around (his) native walls. Weeping voluntarily I seemed to address the man and to bring out the sad words:

'O light of Troy, O most faithful hope of the Trojans, what such great delay held you? From which shores, awaited Hector, do you come? How we, tired, see you, after the many deaths of your men, after the various tasks of both men and city we! What unworthy cause marred (your) serene features? Or why do I perceive these wounds?'

He says nothing and does not delay me, asking vain words. But leading groans heavily from (his) lowest chest, he says:

'Alas flee, son from a goddess, and tear yourself away from these flames! The enemy has the walls. Troy rushes from the high summit. Enough has been given to the country and to Priam. If Pergama could have been defended by my right hand, then it also would have been defended by it. Troy entrusts to you (its) sacred (things) and (its) household gods. Take these as companions of the fates! Seek for them the great walls which you will build finally after the sea has been wandered through!'

Thus he speaks and carries out with his hands the garlands and the powerful Vesta and the eternal fire from the inner sanctuaries."

Unit 28

1   1 Indeed they will see nothing so done by me so that they may have a place of offending 2 No thing profits speaking so much as writing 3 A secret place sufficient also for hiding cavalry 4 Desirous of returning home 5 By guarding trust badly they abolish trust 6 To discuss living well and happily 7 The mind of man is nourished by learning and thinking 8 They take pleasure from learning 9 Those desirous of speaking ill do not know that jealousy is (more) able than loud noise 10 To not obeying the senate

2   1 Ratiō concēdendī ab urbe erat satis. 2 Coniungāmus generīs nostrīs ad oppositōs obsidendum (*or* oppositōs obsidendī causā/gratiā). 3 Occultāre bovēs et segetēs difficile erat. 4 Ingrue aciem mūcrōne coruscō ad glōriam Erīnyos resistendum (*or* glōriam Erīnyos resistendī causā/gratiā). 5 Horror perterrēns moriendī incidit proximīs dēmentibus.

Reading:
"Meanwhile the walls are mixed by diverse grief and more and more, although the house of my father Anchises was remote and withdrew concealed by trees,

the sounds become clear and the horror of weapons assails (us). I rise up from sleep and I climb the top of the highest house. I stand by with (my) ears raised up, as when a flame falls upon a crop by the raging south winds, or a swift torrent lays low fields by a mountainous river, (and) lays low happy crops and the works of cows and drags forests head first. Unaware the shepherd from a high summit is astonished, receiving the sound.

Then truly the manifest faith of Sinon, and the treacheries of the Greeks lie open. Already the full home of Deiphobus gave to ruin, with Vulcan conquering. Now the house of (his) neighbor Ucalegon burns. The wide straits of Sigeum reflect with fire. Both the sound of men and the clang of crowds rise up.

Insane I seize weapons. And there is not sufficient reason for weapons, but (my) spirits burn to gather a force for battle and to fight with comrades on the citadel. Frenzy and anger rush headlong (into) my mind. Knowing it is beautiful to die in arms helps (me).

Behold moreover Panthus, Panthus, son of Othrys, priest of the citadel of Apollo, having slipped past the weapons of the Greeks, insane, aims for the holy thresholds by running. He drags the conquered gods and (his) small grandson by the hand.

'In which place is the matter greatest, Panthus? Which citadel do we take?'

I had hardly said these (words) when he replies with such a moan:

'The last day and inescapable time of Troy has come. We were Trojans, Troy was and the great glory of the Trojans (was). Wild Jupiter has transferred all to Argos. The Greeks rule in the city, set on fire. Towering over and standing by the middle of the walls the horse pours armed (men) and the victor Sinon, taunting, mixes fires. Some are present at the double gates, as many thousands as ever have come from great Mycenae. Others besieged the narrows of the streets with opposing weapons. The edge of a sword stands trimmed with a glistening blade, ready for death. The first watchmen of the gates hardly try the battle and they resist in blind war.'

I am carried by such words of the son of Othrys and by the divine spirit of the gods into flames and into arms, where the sad Fury, where the roar calls, a noise lifted up to the sky. Rhipeus and the greatest in arms, Epytus add themselves as allies, offered through the moon(light). Hypanis and Dymas join our side, and young Coroebus, son of Mygdon, who in those days had come by chance to Troy, set on fire by (his) insane love of Cassanrda. (His) father was bringing aid to Priam and the Phrygians. Unlucky Coroebus, had he (but) not heard the advice of his raging bride!"

Unit 29

1   1 And he may set out for the sake of bringing aid to Caesar 2 I made an end of carrying him 3 He waited for the enemy by keeping the soldier(s) busy daily 4 Conon cares for restoring the walls 5 He gave that gold to keep

to a rich man 6 Between robbing the body of the enemy, he died 7 We left the country to be plundered 8 The Albans created me leader in order to wage war 9 They are tired from carrying water 10 Neither (was) mindful of protecting his own body

2   1 Raptor vādit ad salūtem exigendam (*or* salūtis exigendae causā/gratiā). 2 Catulus fēstīnandus in sentēs dēlāpsus est. 3 Nōlī nītī (*or* nē nītāris) per sentēs dēnsōs (spissōs) et ūrendōs 4 Suī explicandae causā/gratiā (*or* Ad sē explicandam), hūc rēligiōsa fēstīnāvit. 5 Trepidī inruentēs lupum clādī attollendum capiunt.

Reading:
"When I saw them crowded daring for battles, I begin upon them:

'Young men, (your) very strong hearts are in vain! If you have the desire to follow me, daring death, you will see what fortune we have. All the gods, by whom this kingdom had stood, have departed, the sanctuaries and altars having been left. You help a city, set on fire. Let us rush into the middle of weapons and let us die! One security is for the conquered: to hope for no security.'

In this way a frenzy was added to the spirits of the young (men). From there, just as wolves plundering in a black smoke, whom the wicked rage of (their) belly drove out and the cubs, left behind, await with thirsty jaws, we advance through weapons and through enemies. Into death, hardly doubtful, we keep a path of the middle of the city. Black night flies around with a hollow shadow. Who would explain the slaughter of that night, who would, by speaking, explain the deaths or would be able to equal the tasks with tears? The ancient city rushes, having ruled through many years. Many lifeless bodies are laid low all about through the streets and through homes and the religious thresholds of the gods. And the Trojans are not alone in being punished by blood. Once courage also returns to the conquered, into (their) hearts, the Greek victors fall. Cruel grief is all around, everywhere terror and the many faces of death.

First Androgeos offers himself to us, a great crowd of Greeks accompanying. Unaware he believes that we are allied troops, he addresses (us) furthermore with friendly words:

'Hasten, men! Indeed what laziness, so late, delays (you)? The others are snatching and carrying burnt Pergama. Do you first go now from the lofty ships?'

He said (this), and immediately – indeed enough faithful responses were not given – he felt he had fallen into the middle of the enemies. He stood agape and checked back (his) feet with his voice. As someone who stepping in fierce brambles presses an unexpected snake on the ground and alarmed suddenly fled the snake, raising in anger and swelling (its) dark green neck, hardly otherwise did Androgeos depart, alarmed at the sight. We rush in and we pour around them with crowded weapons. We lay (them) low all around, ignorant of the place and seized by fear. Fortune breathes on (our) first task."

Unit 30

1 1 And he thought that wild men would not restrain themselves from hastening into Italy 2 He promised that and confirmed by an oath that a safe passage would be given through the borders 3 Hardly do I know whether it ought to be admired 4 What do you decree ought to be done now? 5 The leader (was) so severely wounded that he seemed about to approach the danger of (his) life 6 Nevertheless he thought it ought not be committed that, with the enemies having been pushed, it might be said that they had been surrounded by him through the trust in a conference 7 It had to be fought by deceit, since it was not equal with respect to weapons 8 Wisdom ought to be thought of as the art of living 9 Therefore I think that it must be brought with the tribunes of the people that one or several of them ought to carry a proposal to the people 10 Nevertheless this matter is of such a manner which I promise I will drive (forward)

2 1 Servantia īlicet agitanda sunt. 2 Signō exercitum cōnsertūrum esse. 3 Sequimur nē Pēneleus moriendus sit. 4 Exercitus ēōus armipotēns turpēs exercitūs fūsūrus fuerat, cum (quandō/ubi/ut) aequum signātum est. 5 Speciēs aequī hominibus exsultanda est (Vīsum aequī hominibus exsultandum est).

Reading:
"And here exulting at the success, Coreobus says to (his) friends:

'O comrades, where fortune first shows the path of safety, and where it shows itself favorable, let us follow! Let us change shields and let us fit to ourselves the insignia of the Greeks! Deceit or courage, who would ask in war? The enemies themselves will give weapons to us.'

Thus he spoke, then dons the crested helmet of Androgeos and (his) sword, a badge of ornaments, and fastens the Argive sword to (his) side. Rhipeus does this, Dymas himself does it, and all the happy youth. Each arms himself with the recent spoils. We advance, mixed with Greeks, hardly with our own divine spirit, and we engage in many battles through the blind night. We send down to Hades many of the Greeks. Some disperse for the ships and seek the safe shores by running. Part, with shameful fear, climb back (up) the huge horse and hide (themselves) in the famous belly.

Alas nothing is right for anyone to trust the unfriendly gods. Behold the virgin, Priam's Cassandra, (her) hair disheveled was being dragged from the temple and sanctuaries of Minerva, holding (her) burning eyes to heaven in vain, (her) eyes, indeed, because chains detained (her) tender palms. Coroebus could not bear this sight, (his) mind infuriated, and he, about to die, threw himself into the middle of the battle line. We all follow and we run in with crowded weapons. Here at first from the high summit of the shrine, we are being crushed by the weapons of our (men). A very wretched slaughter rises from the face of our weapons and the trick of the Greek crests.

Then, gathered from all sides, and with a groan because of the anger of the virgin who was snatched away [i.e. rescued], the Greeks invade. Most ferocious Ajax and the twin sons of Atreus and the whole army of the Dolopians invade. Just as opposite winds at one time dash together by a broken whirlpool, (so) the west wind and south wind and east wind, are happy with (his) eastern horses. The forests rustle and foamy Nereus rages from the lowest bottom and arouses the seas with (his) trident. Those ones also, if any we routed that dark night through the shadow by (our) treachery and we pursued in the entire city, they now appear. They first recognize the shields and the deceived weapons and they observe (our) words, discordant in sound. Immediately we are crushed by (their) number. First Coroebus at the right (hand) of Peneleus sinks down to the altar of the goddess, strong in battle. Rhipeus falls, who was alone most just among the Trojans and most mindful of equality. It seemed otherwise to the gods. Hypanis and Dymas, pierced by comrades, die. And neither your great duty nor Apollo's badge of honor protected you, Panthus, in falling."

Unit 31

1 1 The gods would make (it), (that) I might be without a father! 2 And if only the king himself, Aeneas, driven by the same south wind were present 3 I had persuaded myself that everything would be appeased 4 We were thinking that it would be given to Memmius 5 Whether there would be need to fly with oars or with a sail 6 You state to me that this our love will be between us and (will be) eternal 7 They think that they will be safe 8 O (gods) above, you believe that those ones will be safe 9 Promise that this will be! 10 I never believed that he would be able to move (his) spirit, while she was alive, to have a wife

2 1 Cōgitō (arbitror, putō) fore ut parietēs nōn ēvādantur. 2 Cōgitābam (arbitrābar, putābam) gradūs perviōs fore. 3 Cōgitāveram (arbitātus, -a eram/ putāveram) fore ut postēs inritī iūnctūrīs tenērī nōn possent. 4 Cōgitō (arbitror, putō) cervum tardum incomitātum fore. 5 Cōgitō (arbitror, putō) fore ut socerī praeceps vītāre nōn possint.

Reading:
"Trojan ashes and final flame of my people, (my) witness! In your fall neither weapons nor any changes in the Greek fortunes had I avoided. If the fates had been that I fall, I merited (it) with (my) hand! We are torn apart from there, Iphitus and Pelias with me, of whom Iphitus is already heavier with respect to age, and Pelias slow by the wound of Ulysses. Immediately we were called to the home of Priam by shouting.

Here truly we perceive an immense fight, as if there were nowhere other battles, (as if) no one were dying in the entire city. Thus we perceive that Mars is untamed and that the Greeks rush for the roofs and the threshold is besieged,

with a dome having been driven. The ladders cling to the walls and they rest underneath the doorposts themselves via (their) rungs. They set shields to the weapons with their left hands, they grasp the roofs with (their) right.

In reply the Trojans shatter towers and entire roofs of houses. With these weapons, when they perceive the end of life, they still prepare to defend themselves in final death. They roll down gilded beams, the high ornaments of our old fathers. Some besieged the lowest gates with trim blades, where they guard in a crowded battle line. Refreshed spirits help the house of the king and lift (our) men with aid and add strength to the conquered.

There was a passage and secret doors and a traversable use of the roof between them, and doorposts left (removed) from the back. Unlucky and unaccompanied Andromache was accustomed oftentimes to bring herself to (her) parents-in-law, while the kingdom remained, and dragging (her) son Astyanax to (his) grandfather. I climb up to the roof of the highest top, from where the poor Trojans were throwing ineffective weapons by hand. We shatter a tower, which stands on a precipice and raises from the high house under the stars, from which all Troy and the Greek ships and the Achaean camps were accustomed to be seen. We attack around the tower with sword, where high floors gave wavering joints. We struck (it) from (its) high seat. Sliding it suddenly pulls ruin [i.e. collapses] with a noise and it falls far and wide upon battle lines of Greeks.

Yet others enter. Meanwhile neither rocks nor any kind of weapons cease."

Unit 32

1   1 They send delegates to Caesar to ask for aid 2 It is a folly, father, to lead unfriendly dogs to hunt 3 It is easier to speak than the matter [i.e. easier said than done] 4 We came to remind you, not to demand 5 He adds also that he will be killed by him before I will be violated 6 Because they thought that that thing would be led longer 7 He hopes that he will be acquitted 8 O thing both cruel to hear and criminal to see 9 Neither easy to see nor friendly to speak to anyone 10 They understood that that matter would be more shameful by much and would be seen as more unjust

2   1 Exsultant grāmen vulsum (ad grāmen vellendum). 2 Amnis est lūbricissimus sublātū. 3 Immīsit nurum, quae pavida dēficiendī erat. 4 Cōgitāmus (arbitrāmur, putāmus) fore ut fenestra ab agitātōribus perrumpātur exsultandī causā (exsultandī gratiā, ad exsultandum). 5 Cōgitāvērunt (arbitrātī, -ae sunt/putāvērunt) iānuās ā vestibulō aedium ēmovendās esse.

Reading:
"Before the entrance itself Pyrrhus jumps out in the first threshold with weapons and glistening with brazen light. Such as when a snake fed on bad grass, whom the cold winter kept swollen underground, now, (its) skin(s) having been placed

and glistening in youth, (its) body lifted it coils (its) slimy back to the light, to the sun. It flashes from (its) mouth with a three-forked tongue. Together are the enormous Periphas and the charioteer of the horses of Achillis, the armor-bearer Automedon, together all the Scyrian youth enter the house. They throw flames to the (roof)tops.

Pyrrhus himself, a double ax having been snatched, breaks the hard thresholds within the first bronze posts and he tears (them) up from the hinge. Already a beam cut out, he hollowed the strong oaks and gave a huge window with a wide face [i.e. a wide hole]. The house within appears exposed and the long atriums lie open, the inner rooms of Priam and of old kings also lie open. The Greeks see the armed (men) standing at the first threshold.

But the interior house is mixed with a groan and wretched tumult, and deep within the hollow homes howl with loud feminine wailings. The noise strikes the golden stars. Then terrified mothers wander in the huge houses and embracing they keep the posts and they fasten little kisses.

Pyrrhus with his native strength presses on. Neither barriers nor the guards themselves are strong (enough) to endure. The door wavers with the frequent battering. Moved from the hinge, the posts sink down. The way is made by strength. The Greeks, let in, break the entrances and they slaughter the first (ones) whom they see. Far and wide they fill the place with soldiers. Not thus, when a foamy river has gone out from broken dams and surmounted opposing mounds by (its) whirlpool, it, raging, is carried in a mass into fields and drags herds with stables through whole fields.

I myself saw Neoptolemus, raging with slaughter and the twins of Atreus at the threshold. I saw Hecuba and one hundred young women and Priam at the altars marring the fires with blood, which he himself had consecrated. Those fifty bedrooms, hope (to be) full of descendants, and the haughty posts of foreign gold and spoils have sunk down (to the floor). The Greeks hold where the fire fails."

Unit 33

1 1 He asks that he cares for that which he had said 2 It is for a lazy nature to be content with those which have been found by others 3 Many (things) were said by Caesar: that the Arverni and Ruteni, whom the Roman people had forgiven, were conquered by war 4 Indeed you might be able by law to call yours (that) which you buy 5 If you would say they alone are wretched, (by) who(m) it ought to die [i.e. who must die] 6 You would take up no one of them who was living 7 May the gods give to you whatever you desire 8 May it happen well to you (that) which you do 9 Provided they know that which is pleasing 10 Indeed I will never be prevented from seeing that which I have seen

2 1 *dīxisset* is attracted by the subjunctive *cūret* 2 *inventa sint* is attracted by the infinitive *contentum esse* 3 *ignōvisset* is attracted by the infinitive *superātōs esse*

4 *emās* is attracted by the subjunctive *possīs* 5 *moriendum esset* is attracted by the subjunctive *dīcerēs* 6 *vīverent* is attracted by the subjunctive *exciperēs* 7 *optēs* is attracted by the subjunctive *dent* 8 *agās* is attracted by the subjunctive *ēveniat* 9 *lubeat* is attracted by the subjunctive *sciant* 10 the second *vīderim* is attracted by the subjunctive and first *vīderim*

3 1 Cōgitāvī exercitum Phoebī cui ōrāvissem venīre. 2 Licet eum fatērī sē mortem quae ātra crūdēlisque sit timēre (verērī/metuere). 3 Utinam nē puella quam amārem sē eī dedisset! 4 Beātum cor vēnātrīcis nōn pūtat id sentīre dolōrem quem verba īnflīgant. 5 Ōrāre deōs, quibus omnia sint, hūmānum est.

Reading:
"Perhaps you ask what the fates of Priam were. When he saw the misfortune of (his) captured city and the shattered thresholds of homes and the enemy in the middle of the inner rooms, the old man surrounds (himself) in vain with the weapons long unused, (his) shoulders trembling with age and he girds a futile sword. About to die he goes into the thick enemies.

In the middle of the home and under the bare axis of the sky there was a giant altar. Nearby a very old laurel presses on the altar and it embraces the household gods with (its) shadow. Here Hecuba and (her) daughters stood in vain around the altars, just as headlong doves in a black storm, crowded and embraced the statues of the gods. When she saw Priam himself, however, (his) youthful weapons having been taken up, she says:

'What mind, so terrible, my very poor husband, has pressed you to gird (yourself) with these weapons? Or where do you rush to? The time does not need such help nor these defenders; not even if my Hector himself were now present. Withdraw finally to here. This altar will guard us all, or you will die at the same time (as us).'

Thus having spoken by this word she received the aged (one) to herself and placed (him) on the sacred seat.

Behold Polites, however, one of the sons of Priam, slipped out from the slaughter of Pyrrhus, and flees through weapons and through enemies by long porticos and, wounded, scans the vacant halls. Pyrrhus, eager with a threatening wound, follows him. Now he holds with his hand and presses with (his) spear, until finally he comes out before the eyes and faces of (his) parents. He falls and pours out (his) life with (his) blood.

Here Priam, although now held in the middle of death, does not refrain, however, nor did he spare (his) voice or anger. He cries out:

'But may the gods pay you the worthy thanks for this crime, for such daring deeds, if there is any duty in heaven, which may care for such things, and may they reply to you (your) just rewards, you who have in (my) presence made me perceive the death of (my) son and have marred the faces of parents with death. But that Achilles, about whom you deceived yourself, was not an enemy against me. He blushed (before) the laws and faith of a suppliant

and he returned the body of Hector for burial and he sent me back into my kingdoms.'

Thus the old man spoke. He threw the harmless weapon without a blow, which immediately was repelled by the hoarse bronze. From the highest knob of the shield it hung in vain. Pyrrhus (said) to him (Priam):

'You will carry off these (words) therefore and you will go as messenger to (my) father Achilles. Remember to tell to him my sad deeds and that degenerate (is) Neoptolemus. Now die!'

Saying this he dragged the trembling (Priam) to the altar itself and slipping in the much blood of (his) son. He folded (his) hair with (his) left (hand), and with (his) right he raised up (his) glistening sword and buried (it) into the side up to the hilt. This was the end of the fates of Priam. This end was his by lot: to see Troy burned up and Pergama sink to ruin. He was once haughty ruler over so many peoples and lands of Asia. A giant body lies on the shore and a head torn from the shoulders and a body without a name."

Unit 34

1 1 But because of the speed the soldiers went there with an attack 2 Because they had heard that the battle was engaged, they went for assistance for their men and seized a hill 3 Indeed he had died, whom he had loved very much 4 If they, who almost destroyed it, had lived again, I would then return 5 So that my enemies had thought, but he also had been a defender 6 Whom I had not known, who he was 7 I will go out, having testified that I loved my good conscience 8 We were accustomed to call them the seeds of things 9 If by chance the name came through your ears 10 Indeed he did not yield ever to (them), making a commotion, and also he always went against

2 1 pāvistī 2 dormīverīs 3 flēvistis 4 implēvisse 5 nescīverat 6 redīvērunt 7 laudāvistis 8 subīvisse 9 abolēverāmus 10 dehīvistī

3 1 pāvistis, pāstis 2 dormīverītis, dormierītis 3 flēvistī, flēstī 4 *not possible* 5 nescīverant, nescierant 6 redīvit, rediit 7 laudāvistī, laudāstī 8 *not possible* 9 abolēveram, abolēram 10 dehīvistis, dehīstis

4 1 Urbe circumdatā Spartam iērunt. 2 Cum/quod/quia cervō subigere temptāsset, sollemnis prex fīēbat. 3 Captus audierat nautās dēlūbrum nōsse. 4 Sustulī quae reportārat. 5 Utinam nē iissent/īssent!

Reading:
"Yet then for the first time cruel horror surrounded me. I stood agape. The image of (my) dear father entered, as I saw the king, of an equal age, exhaling (his) life because of a cruel wound. Deserted Creusa entered and (my) plundered

home and the misfortune of small Iulus. I look back and scan what forces are around me. All tired have deserted, and sent (their) weary bodies by jumping to the ground or have given (themselves) to fires.

And so now I alone remained, while I see Helen guarding the entrances of Vesta and silent, hiding in a secret spot. Bright fires give light to me, wandering and carrying my eyes all about through everything. She, fearing for herself the threatening Trojans on account of overturned Pergama and fearing the penalties of the Greeks and the anger of (her) deserted husband, (she) the common Fury of Troy and (her) country, had hid herself. She, odious, was sitting on the altars.

Fires blazed up in my spirit. Anger enters to avenge (my) falling fatherland and to exact the wicked punishments. I say to myself:

'Of course will this one, safe, look upon Sparta and (her) native Mycenae? Will she go as queen, a triumph having been produced? Will she see (her) marriage and house of (her) father and children, accompanied by a crowd of Trojan women and with Phrygian servants? Will Priam have been killed by the sword for this? Will Troy have burned by fire for this? For this will the Trojan shore have sweated so often with blood? It (is) not thus. Indeed although there is no memorable name in the feminine punishment, nor does such victory have honor, I will be praised nevertheless to have extinguished (this) wrong and to have exacted deserving punishments. And to have satisfied my soul of a vengeful fire will please (me) and to have satiated the ashes of my peoples.'"

Unit 35

1 1 With these five legions he hastened to go 2 It did not accumulate to wider than fifty feet 3 The moon had filled four times its circle, its horns having been joined 4 During the third watch he set out from camp with three legions 5 Both (women) hardly seem dirty 6 Give me one thousand kisses, then one hundred, then another thousand, then a second hundred, then even another thousand, then one hundred, then, when we will have done many thousands, we will confuse them 7 It remains concerning the one hundred thousand sesterces about which I remember that a letter to me from you from Myrina was brought forward 8 When once the short light has died, an eternal single night must be slept 9 From these who could bear weapons (there was) ninety-two thousand 10 Yet it is permitted to root out the people of both kings

2 mīlle nōnāgintā duo

3 fēcerīmus – this is a future perfect but has a long *ī*; this is not infrequent.

4 1 Undāns fūmus quīnquiēs Spartānōs excitāvit. 2 Scaea porta ā septem et tricēsimō caelicolā superāta erat. 3 Spissus (dēnsus) fūmus vīsum intemerātum (speciem intemerātam) cālīgāvit, novem et octōgintā Spartānīs disiectīs (diffūsīs).

4 Obdūxit quīnque aciēs (*or* ex aciēbus) ut culpātōs superārent. 5 Spartānī octōnī caelicolae continentī (temperantī) pāruērunt.

Reading:
"I was throwing out such (things) and was carried by my infuriated mind, when my nurturing mother, so bright (as) never before my eyes, offered herself to be seen. She glistened bright in the light through the night. She confessed that she was a goddess, such and as great as she is accustomed to be seen by deities. She restrained me, taken by my right (hand) and she added above these (words) with (her) rosy mouth:

'Son, what grief so great arouses (your) untamed angers? Why do you rage or where has your concern of me withdrawn to? Will you not look before where you left (your) father Anchises, tired with age? Or does (your) wife Creusa survive and the boy Ascanius? Around them all Greek battle lines wander from all sides. If my care were not resisting (it), flames would have already carried them and a hostile sword would have drained (them).

The odious face of the Spartan Helen is not to be blamed by you. Or Paris is not to be blamed. The severity of the gods overturn these riches, and lays low Troy from (its) summit. Look! Indeed I will snatch away every cloud, which now drawn over dims your mortal sights and, damp, darkens around you. You ought not fear any commands of (your) mother! Nor refuse to obey (my) advice!

Here, where you see broken up heaps and rocks torn away from rocks, and smoke undulating with mixed dust, Neptune shakes walls and dislodged foundations by (his) great trident. He overthrows the entire city from (its) seats. Here the very cruel Juno first holds the Scaean gates. Girded with a sword, and raging she calls an ally line from ships.

Now look back! Minerva settled on the highest citadels on a limb, shining out from cruel Gorgon. The father himself supplies following forces to the Greek men, he himself arouses the gods against Trojan forces. Snatch away, son, place flight and an end to the work! Never will I be absent and I will settle you safe on a native threshold.'

She had said (this) and established herself in the thick shadows of the night. Terrible faces and great, divine spirits of the gods, enemies of Troy, appear."

Unit 36

1   1 If pregnant Venus had disgraced Aeneas in (her) womb 2 Nevertheless she addresses Aeneas voluntarily with these words 3 Now Aeneas leads through the middle walls with him 4 Nevertheless I do not hate Aeneas, although he understands badly 5 What poor (thing) do you destroy, Aeneas? 6 Where are you fleeing to, Aeneas? 7 And his own gods did not protect Cupencum, with Aeneas coming 8 As the golden mother of Aeneas saw that 9 Yet Venus rules in the city of her own Aeneas 10 Yet truly frantic Aeneas became silent at the sight

2   1 genitive sg. and dative sg. 2 accusative sg. 3 nominative sg. and ablative sg. 4 nominative sg. 5 accusative sg. 6 genitive sg. 7 nominative sg. 8 vocative sg. 9 accusative sg. 10 ablative sg. 11 accusative sg. 12 nominative sg.

3   1 Agricola Dīdō (Dīdōnem) inveniet ut sibi plūrēs abietēs det. 2 Atlante vulnerātō hērōs novus orbem terrārum tulit. 3 Utinam Androgeō aqua (lympha) fuisset. 4 Eāmus Īlion! 5 Gener Pēnelopēs crēdit Anchīsen (Anchīsam) multōs annōs dēmorārī.

Reading:
"Then truly all Troy was seen settling into flames and Neptunian Troy turning from below. And they are just as farmers press hard in competition to overthrow an ancient ash (tree), cut with a sword and a frequent double ax, in the highest mountains. It constantly threatens and alarmed it sways (its) foliage with a shaken summit, until surmounted gradually by wounds it groans a last (time) and torn away from the mountain summit(s) it draws to (its) ruin.

I descend and with a god leading I am brought out between flame and enemies. Weapons give place and flames withdraw. And now I arrived at the entrance of (my) fatherly home [i.e. the home of my father], my father, whom I wanted to raise up into the high mountains and whom I sought first. He denies, with Troy cut out, to prolong (his) life and to endure exile. He says:

'O you, to whom sound blood of age, and solid power remains by means of its own strength, you, pursue (your) flight! If the deities had wanted me to lead a life, they would have guarded my home for me. It is enough and beyond. I have seen the destructions and I have survived the city captured. Thus, O thus, having spoken to my body placed (here), depart! I myself will find death with (my) hand. The enemy will pity and will seek (my) spoils. The throwing away of burial is easy. Now long ago odious to the gods and useless, I linger years since the time, at which the father of gods and king of humans breathed on me with the winds of a thunderbolt and touched me with fire.'

He persisted with such (words) and fastened he remained. We in reply were poured out with tears, (my) wife Creusa and (son) Ascanius and all the home, in order that (my) father might not wish to overturn all with himself and to press onto our heavy fate. He says no and clings on (his) plan and onto the same place."

Unit 37

1   This is in dactylic hexameter. The two examples of *muta cum liquidā* are: line 5 -*e gr*- and line 7 -*atr*-. The example from line 5 is treated as light and the example from line 7 as long.

(— ∪ ∪) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— —)
(**Pȳ**ramus) (**e**t Th**is**)(bē, iuve)(n**u**m p**u**l)(**cher**rimus) (**a**lter),

(— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— —)
(**a**ltera), (qu**ā**s Ori)(**ē**ns habu)(**i**t, pr**ae**)(l**ā**ta pu)(**e**llīs),

(— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— —)
(**con**tigu)(**ā**s tenu)(**ē**re do)(m**ō**s, ubi) (dīcitur) (**a**ltam)

(— ∪ ∪) (— —) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— —)
(**coc**tili)(b**u**s mū)(**rī**s cīn)(x**i**sse Se)(**mī**ramis) (**u**rbem).

(— ∪ ∪) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— —)
(**Nō**titi)(**a**m prī)(**mō**sque gra)(dūs vī)(**cī**nia) (fēcit.)

(— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— —)
(**Tem**pore) (crēvit a)(**mor**; t**ae**)(d**ae** quoque) (iūre co)(**is**sent),

(— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪)
(sed vetu)(**ē**re p**a**)(trēs; qu**od**) (n**on** potu)(**ē**re ve)(tāre),

(— —) (— —) (— —) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— —)
(ex **ae**)(qu**ō c**ap)(t**ī**s **a**r)(d**ē**bant) (mentibus) (**a**mb**ō**).

2   Pyramus and Thisbe, the one the most beautiful of young men, the other,
preferred among girls, whom the Orient had, they had contiguous homes, where
it is said that Semiramis had surrounded the high city with baked walls. Nearness
made (their) acquaintance and (their) first steps. In time love grew; even by the law
of marriage they would have joined but (their) fathers forbade (it); they were not
able to forbid the fact that both burned equally, (their) minds having been seized.

3   This is in limping iambic meter. The third line does not scan. ***Tibī*** unexpectedly
has a long final vowel. The same can also apply to ***mihi ~ mihī***.

(**A**t t**ū**) (dolē)(b**i**s, c**u**m) (rog**ā**)(ber**is**) (n**u**lla).
(— —) (∪ —) (— —) (∪ —) (∪ —) (— —)

(**Sceles**)(ta, v**ae**) (t**ē**! Qu**ae**) (tib**ī**) (man**et**) (v**ī**ta)?
(∪ —) (∪ —) (— —) (∪ —) (∪ —) (— —)

Qu**is** n**u**nc t**ē** ad**ī**b**it**? Cu**i** vid**ē**ber**is b**ella?

(Qu**em** n**u**nc) (am**ā**)(b**is**? Cu)(ius **es**)(se d**īc**)(**ē**ris)?
(— —) (∪ —) (— ∪) (∪ —) (∪ —) (— —)

(Qu**em b**ā)(si**ā**)(b**is**? Cui) (**lab**el)(la m**or**)(d**ē**bis)?
(— —) (∪ —) (— ∪) (∪ —) (∪ —) (— —)

(**A**t t**ū**), (Catul)(le, d**ē**s)(tin**ā**)(tus **ob**)(d**ū**r**ā**!)
(— —) (∪ —) (∪ —) (∪ —) (∪ —) (— —)

4   Yet you will be angry, when you will be asked not at all. Wicked one, woe you! What life remains to you? Who will now approach you? To whom will you seem beautiful? Whom will you now love? Whose will you be said to be? Whom will you kiss? To whom will you bite (his) lips? Yet you, Catullus, resolved, stand firm!

Reading:
"Again I am carried, myself, to weapons and I, most wretched, desire death. Indeed what plan or what fortune was now being given?

'Father, did you hope, after you had been left, that I would be able to carry away my feet? How great a sin falls from a fatherly mouth? If it pleases the higher (gods) that nothing be left from so great a city, and if this (plan) sits in your spirit and it pleases you that you and yours add to the Troy which is about to perish – the door is open to that death. And now Pyrrhus, who kills a son before the face of a father and slaughters the father himself at the altars and who comes with much blood of Priam, he will be (here).

Was this, nourishing mother, why you snatch me through weapons, through flames? So that I may perceive the enemies in the middle of (our) inner rooms and Ascanius and my father and Creusa nearby be sacrificed one after another? Weapons, men, carry weapons! The last light calls the conquered. Return me to the Greeks! Allow that I see refreshed battles! Never will we all die today unavenged!'

From there I gird (myself) with a sword and slip my left (hand) to a shield and carried myself outside the house. Behold (my) wife, however, embraced my feet and clings (to me) in the entrance, and holds small Iulus to (his) father.

'If you, about to die, go away, then take us in all with you! But if you, experienced, place any hope in arms taken (up), save first this house! To whom will the young Iulus (be left), to whom your father and I, once called your wife be left?'

Shouting such (words) she filled the whole house with a moan."

Unit 38

1   From Unit 37 exercise 3:

(Quis nunc) (tᵉ adī)(bit? Cui) (vidē)(beris) (bella)?
(— —)(∪ —)(— ∪)(∪ —)(∪ —)(— —)

2

(— ∪ ∪) (—   —) (— ∪ ∪) (— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— —)
(Ōdⁱ et a)(mō. Quā)(rᵉ id faci)(am for)(tasse re)(quīrēs).

(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (—) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪ ∪) (—)
(Nescⁱō) (sed fie)(rī) (sentiᵒ et) (excruci)(or)

3 I hate and I love. Why I do this, perhaps you will ask. I do not know but I feel that it is being done and I am tormented.

4 The type of meter is hendecasyllable. In line six the **a** of **sacrum** is short before a muta cum liquidā.

(Quaerīs) (quot mihi) (bāsi)(āti)(ōnēs)
(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— —)

(tuae), (Lēsbia), (sint sa)(tis su)(perque).
(∪ —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪)

(quam mag)(nus nume)(rus Li)(byssᵃᵉ ha)(rēnae)
(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— —)

(lāsar)(pīcife)(rīs ia)(cet Cy)(rēnīs),
(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— —)
(ōrā)(clum Iovis) (inter) (aestu)(ōsī)

(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— —)
(et Bat)(tī vete)(ris sa)(crum se)(pulcrum);

(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— —)
(aut quam) (sīdera) (multa), (cum ta)(cet nox),
(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— —)

(furtī)(vōs homi)(num vi)(dent a)(mōrēs):
(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— —)

(tam tē) (bāsia) (multa) (bāsi)(āre)
(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪)

(vēsā)(nō satis) (et su)(per Ca)(tullᵒ est),
(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— —)

(quae nec) (pernume)(rāre) (cūri)(ōsī)
(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— —)

(possint) (nec mala) (fasci)(nāre) (lingua).
(— —) (— ∪ ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪) (— ∪)

5 You seek how many of your kisses are enough and above [i.e. more] for me, Lesbia. As great the number of North African sand lying on silphium-bearing Cyrene between the oracle of sweltering Jupiter and the sacred tomb of old Battus; or as many stars, when night is silent, see the secret loves of men: so (for) you to kiss (that) many kisses is enough and above [i.e. more] for demented Catullus, (so many kisses) which curious (men) could neither count up nor a bad tongue cast a spell.

Reading:

"Suddenly a marvel arises, wonderful to say. Indeed between the hand and faces of sad parents behold a light point is seen from the top [i.e. head] of Iulus to pour out light. A flame, harmless in touch, licks (his) soft hair and grazes around (his) temples. We, terrified, tremble with fear and cast (it) off (of) the burning hair and extinguish the holy fires with water. But father Anchises, happy, raised up (his) eyes to the stars and stretched out (his) palms to the sky with (this) word:

'Almighty Jupiter, if you are guided by any prayers, look at us! This only: if we earn (it) by (our) duty, give then a sign, father, and confirm these omens!'

Hardly had the old man said these (words), and suddenly it thundered on the left with a crash, and from heaven a star glided through the clouds and dragging a torch with much light it ran. We perceive it, bright and gliding above the highest tops of the house, hide in the Mount Ida forest, and marking (its) path. Then far off a furrow gives light from (its) path. Far and wide around, the places smoke with sulfur.

Here truly my father, conquered (by this), raises himself to the skies and says to the gods and adores the holy star:

'Now, now there is no delay. I follow and where you lead I am present, gods of (my) homeland. Save (my) home! Save (my) grandson! Yours (is) this sign, and Troy is in your divine power. Indeed I yield, son, and I do not refuse to go as a companion to you.'

He had said this, and a brighter fire is heard through the walls, and the surges turn fires nearer.

'Thus come, dear father, place yourself on our [i.e. my] neck! I myself will bear (you) (on) my shoulders and this task will not burden me. Wherever matters fall, one and common danger, one safety will be to us both. Let small Iulus be a companion to me, and let (my) wife guard my tracks from afar.

You, servants, turn what I say to your souls. There is a mound and an ancient deserted temple of Ceres away from the city. And nearby an ancient cypress has been saved through many years by the religion of (our) fathers. We will come to this one place from diverse (place). You, father, take the sacred (objects) with (your) hand and the native household gods. It is wrong for me, having departed from such a great way and recent slaughter, to touch (those things), until I will have purified myself with a flowing river.'

I said these (words) and I spread over my broad shoulders and lowered neck the tawny skin of a lion, and I enter (my) load. Small Iulus enfolds himself to (my) right hand and follows (his) father with unequal steps. Behind (my) wife comes."

Unit 39

1 fuit Atistia uxor mihi
fēmina optima vīxit
cuius corporis reliquiae
quod superant sunt
in hōc pānāriō

2 The relative pronoun in line four (**quod**) does not agree with the verb of its own clause (**superant**). It appears that **quod** refers to **corporis**, which is neuter, though the verb **superant** is agreeing with **reliquae**. The relative pronoun should be **quae** to agree with **reliquae**.

3 stetērunt (*or* stetēre) Publiī Valeriī sodālēs Mārtī

4 ita senātus aequum
cēnsuit, utīque eam fīgī iubeātis ubi
facillimē nōscī possit

5 sum cum meīs sociīs tribus Audiōrum duōrum. Nē
pariās mē

6 Iūrat deōs quī mē mittit

Reading:
"We are led through dark places, and I, whom a little while ago no thrown weapons were moving nor the gathered Greeks from opposite lines, now all the breezes scare me. Every sound stirs anxious me and equally fearing for (my) companion [i.e. Iulus] and (my) load [i.e. Anchises].

And now I was approaching the gates and I seemed to have come out the entire way, when suddenly a crowded sound of feet seemed to be present to (my) ears. Looking through the shadow, (my) father cries out:

'Son, flee, son! They are approaching. I perceive burning shields and flashing bronze.'

Here I do not know which divine power unfriendly to me, (who was) trembling, snatched away (my) confused mind. Indeed while I depart from the known region of roads and follow a pathless (route) as a course, alas (my) wife Creusa, snatched by wretched fate, stopped. Did she wander by another route or did she, tired, sit down? It is uncertain. And afterwards she was not returned to my eyes. And prior I did not look back at her, lost, nor did I turn (my) body back until we came to the mound of ancient Ceres and the consecrated seat. Here finally, after all had been gathered, was she alone missing. She escaped (the notice of) companions, (her) son, and (her) man.

Which of men and of gods did I, insane, not reproach? Or what did I see in the overturned city (which was) more cruel? I entrust Ascanius and (my) father

Anchises and the Trojan household gods to comrades. I hide (them) in a curved valley. I myself retrace the city and gird my shining weapons. It stays for me to renew all the misfortunes and to return through the whole of Troy and expose again (my) head to dangers.

At first I retrace the walls and the dark thresholds of the gate, where I had carried off (my) step. I follow back (my) found tracks through the night and scan by the light. My spirit has horror all around, at the same time silence itself terrifies (me). From there I carry myself back to the house, if by chance, my wife had carried (her) foot (there), if by chance. The Greeks had rushed in and held the whole house. Immediately a consuming fire is unrolled to the highest roofs by the wind. Flames overpower, the surge rages to the skies."

Unit 40

1 Moreover when it will have been made in the morning [i.e. when morning will have come], all people proceed to the greater church, that is to the martyrium, all (things) are done, which are customary to be done; the priests preach, afterwards the bishop, all (things) are done lawfully, that is, there is an offering just as the custom, about which it was accustomed to be made on the Lord's day; but on the same (day) mass is hastened in the martyrium, so that it may be done before the third hour.

2 1 Yes. For instance it is used in the purpose clause in the last sentence. 2 **diēs** takes feminine adjectival agreement in **dominicā** and **eādem** 3 **ante** takes the ablative in this passage and **in** takes the ablative in the first line even though motion is indicated by the verb **prōcēdit** 4 Yes. While the perfect passive system seems different (e.g. **factum fuerit**) the present passive system is intact: **aguntur**, **adcelerātur**.

3 And yet when the deacon will have finished speaking all (things), which he will say, the bishop at first speaks a speech and prays for all; and then all pray, the faithful as well as catechumens at the same time. Further the deacon sends (his) voice [i.e. speaks], that each catechumen, just as he stands, to bend (his) head; and thus the bishop, standing, says a blessing over the catechumens. Further a speech is made and again the deacon sends (his) voice [i.e. speaks] and impresses that each one of the faithful, standing, bend their heads; further the bishop blesses the faithful and in this way mass is made at Anastasis. And each one begins to approach to the hand to the bishop [i.e. to the bishop's hand].

4 1 Yes. It is used twice in indirect commands introduced by **mittet vōcem**. The subjunctive forms are **inclīnet** and **inclīnent**. 2 Yes. In the second indirect command the subject of **inclīnent** is the singular **ūnusquisque** though the subject agrees with the plural idea of the genitive **fidēlium**. 3 **dīcere habet** 4 The verbs **dīcet**, **mittet**, and **benedicet** show 2nd conjugation forms despite being 3rd conjugation verbs in Classical Latin.

5   Who has ascended to the promised mountain, Sinai, of God? Who has heard the thunder, sounding very much? Who (has heard) the clamor of the hugeness of the war trumpet making noise? Who even has seen the lightning oscillating in a circle? Who has seen torches and javelins and colliding rocks aside from Moses, the judge of the Israelite people?

Reading:

"I go forward and I see again the house of Priam and the fortress. Now in vacant corridors, in the sanctuary of Juno, Phoenix and terrible Ulysses, chosen guardians, were guarding the loot. Here from all around there is Trojan treasure, which has been snatched away from sanctuaries set on fire. Here the table of the gods and solid mixing bowls of gold, and seized cloth are accumulated. Boys and terrified mothers stand around in a long row.

I dared even to toss words through the shadow. I filled the streets with a shout. Sad, I called Creusa in vain, groaning again and again. By me, seeking and rushing without end in the houses of the city, the unhappy image and shadow of Creusa herself was seen. Before my eyes the image was seen greater than had been known. I stood agape. (My) hair lay low and voice clung to (my) jaws.

Then thus she spoke and took away my cares with these words:

'What helps you to indulge so much in insane grief? O sweet husband. These (things) do not happen without the divine will of gods. And it is not right that you carry away (your) companion, Creusa from here. And he the ruler of high Olympus does not allow (it).

Long exiles (are) to you and a vast sea that needs to be plowed. You will come to the land Hesperia, where the Lydian Tiber flows between fertile fields, by a slow line. From there, there are happy things and a kingdom and a royal wife prepared for you. Dispel tears for esteemed Creusa! I will not look upon the haughty homes of Myrmidons or Dolopians nor will I go to serve Greek mothers – I a Trojan woman and daughter-in-law of Venus. But the great mother of the gods detains (me) on these shores. And now farewell and guard the common love of (our) son!'

When she gave these words, she deserted me, (who was) weeping and wanting to say many (things). She withdrew in thin air. Three times I tried there to give (my) arms around (her) neck. Three times in vain the grasped image fled (my) hands, equal to light winds and most similar to a swift dream.

Thus finally I revisit (my) comrades, when night had been consumed. And here admiring, I find that a huge number of new companions has flowed in. I find mothers and men, youth gathered for exile, a wretched crowd. From all sides they have gathered with courage and riches. They are prepared to launch into whichever lands I wish.

And now the morning star was rising on the summits of Mount Ida and was leading (in) day. The Greeks held the besieged entrances of the gates, and no hope of help was given. I yielded and with my father raised up I sought the mountains."

DICTIONARIES

Latin–English

ā ~ ab ~ abs [+ abl.]   *by; away from; from*
Abās, Abantis (m.)   *Abas*
abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus   *to hide; bury*
abeō, abīre, abīvī, abitus   *to depart*
abiēs, abietis (f.)   *fir*
abluō, -ere, -luī, -lūtus   *to purify*
abnegō (1)   *to deny*
aboleō, -ēre, abolēvī, abolitus   *to remove*
abripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus   *to snatch away*
abrogō (1)   *to abolish, repeal*
absēns, absentis   *absent*
absistō, -ere, -stitī   *to stop*
absolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus   *to acquit*
abstineō, -ēre, -stinuī, -stentus   *to refrain*
absum, abesse, āfuī   *to be absent*
absūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus   *to take away*
ac   *and*
Acamās, Acamantis (m.)   *Acamas*
acanthus, -ī   *acanthus plant*
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus   *to approach*
accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus   *to enrage*
access-   see **accēdō**
accidit, -ere, accidit   *it happens*
accīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus   *to cut*
accingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus   *to make ready; gird to*
accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus   *to receive*
accītus, -ūs   *summons*
accommodō (1)   *to fasten*
accumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus   *to recline at*

ācer, ācris, ācre   *fierce; sharp; keen*
acerbus, -a, -um   *bitter*
acernus, -a, -um   *of maple*
Acestēs, Acestae (m.)   *Acestes (king of Sicily)*
Achāicus, -a, -um   *Achaean; Greek*
Achātēs, Achātae (m.)   *Achates*
Achillēs, -is (m.)   *Achilles (a Greek)*
Achīvus, -a, -um   *Achaean, Greek*
aciēs, -ēī   *battle line; line of troops; edge*
āct-   see **agō**
acūtus, -a, -um   *sharp*
ad [+ acc.]   *to, toward*
adaequō (1)   *to make equal*
adcelerō (1)   *to hasten*
addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus   *to add*
addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus   *to lead to*
adeō   *so*
adeō, adīre, adīvī, aditus   *to encounter; approach*
adfābilis, adfābile   *friendly, affable*
adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātus   *to bring forward*
adflīct-   see **adflīgō**
adflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus   *to crush*
adflō (1)   *to breathe on*
adfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus   *to flow in*
adfor (1)   *to speak to*
adglomerō (1)   *to join*
adgredior, -ī, -gressus sum   *to approach; attack*
adhūc   *yet*
adimō, -ere, adēmī, ademptus   *to take away*

319

aditus, -ūs *entrance*

adlāt- see **adferō**

adloquor, -ī, -locūtus sum *to speak to*

admīror (1) *to admire*

admoneō, -ēre, -monuī, -monitus *to warn; remind*

adnītor, -ī, adnixus sum *to strive*

adnō (1) *to swim towards*

adnuō, -ere, -nuī, -nūtus *to assent*

adoleō, -ēre, adoluī, adultus *to worship, honor*

adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum *to attack*

adōrō (1) *to adore*

adrogō (1) *to ask; assume*

adsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus *to assent*

adservō (1) *to guard*

adsum, adesse, adfuī *to be present*

adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus *to rise up*

adultus, -a, -um *adult*

advehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus *to carry to*

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus *to arrive*

adventus, -ūs *arrival*

adversārius, -ī *opponent, adversary*

adversus, -a, -um *opposite*

advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus *to turn toward*

adytum, -ī *sanctuary*

aedēs, aedium (f.) *home*

aedificō (1) *to build*

Aeduī, -ōrum *Aedui*

aeger, aegra, aegrum *sick; weary*

Aeneadae, -ārum (m.) *descendants/ followers of Aeneas*

Aenēās, Aenēae (m.) *Aeneas*

aēnum, -ī *bronze vessel*

aēnus, -a, -um *of bronze; brazen*

Aeolia, -ae *Islands of Aeolia*

Aeolus, -ī *Aeolus (god of winds)*

aequaevus, -a, -um *of equal age*

aequō (1) *to equal, equalize*

aequor, aequoris (nt.) *sea*

aequum, -ī *equality, justice*

aequuus, -a, -um *equal; favorable*

āēr, āeris (m.) *air; mist*

aerātus, -a, -um *of bronze*

aereus, -a, -um *of bronze*

aes, aeris (nt.) *bronze*

aestās, aestātis (f.) *summer*

aestuōsus, -a, -um *sweltering*

aestus, -ūs *surge*

aetās, aetātis (f.) *age, time*

aetātula, -ae *tender age*

aeternus, -a, -um *eternal*

aethēr, aetheris (m.) *sky, ether*

aetherius, -a, -um *ethereal*

aevum, -ī *life; age*

Āfricus, -ī *south-west wind*

Agēnor, Agēnoris (m.) *Agenor*

ager, agrī *field*

agger, aggeris (m.) *mound; dam*

aggerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestus *to carry*

agitātor, agitātōris (m.) *charioteer*

agitō (1) *to pursue*

agmen, agminis (nt.) *line (of soldiers); course*

agnōscō, -ere, agnōvī, agnitus *to recognize*

agnus, -ī *lamb*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus *to drive; lead*

agricola, -ae (m.) *farmer*

Agrigentum, -ī *Argigentum (a town in Sicily)*

Agrippa, -ae (m.) *Agrippa*

Āiāx, Āiācis (m.) *Ajax*

ait *s/he says*

āla, -ae *wing*

Alba, -ae *Alba Longa (city in Italy)*

Albānī, -ōrum *Albans*

āles, ālitis (m/f) *bird*

Alētēs, Alētae (m.) *Aletes*

āliger, -a, -um *winged*

aliī . . . aliī *some . . . others*

aliquantō *somewhat*

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod *some, any*

aliquis, aliquid *someone, something*

aliter *otherwise*

alius, alia, aliud [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**] *other, another*

alligō (1) *to bind*

almus, -a, -um *nourishing; nurturing*

alō, -ere, aluī, altus *to nourish*

altāria, altārium *altar*

altē *high up*

alter, altera, alterum [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**] *other, another*

altitūdō, altitūdinis (f.) *height*

altum, -ī   *deep sea*
altus, -a, -um   *deep; high*
alvus, -ī (f.)   *belly; womb*
amāracus, -ī   *marjoram*
Amāzonis, Amāzonidis (f.)   *Amazon*
ambāgēs, ambāgis (f.)   *details*
ambiguus, -a, -um   *unreliable*
ambō, ambae, ambō   *both*
ambrosius, -a, -um   *immortal*
ambulō (1)   *to walk*
āmēns, āmentis   *mad, insane; frantic*
amiciō, -īre, amicuī, amictus   *to wrap*
amīcitia, -ae   *friendship*
amictus, -ūs   *clothing*
amīcus, -a, -um   *friendly*
amīcus, -ī   *friend*
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to lose*
amnis, amnis (m.)   *stream, river*
amō (1)   *to love*
amor, amōris (m.)   *love*
amplector, -ī, amplexus sum   *to encircle;*
   embrace
amplexus, -ūs   *hug*
amplius   *more*
amplus, -a, -um   *full*
Amycus, -ī   *Amycus*
an   *or; whether*
Anastasī   *at Anastasis*
Anchīsēs, Anchīsae (m.)   *Anchises*
Ancōna, -ae   *Ancona*
ancora, -ae   *anchor*
Androgeōs, Androgeō (m.)   *Androgeos*
Andromachē, Andromachēs (f.)
   Andromache (Hector's wife)
anguis, anguis (m.)   *snake*
angustum, -ī   *narrowness*
anima, -ae   *soul, life*
animadvertō, -ere, animadvertī,
   animadversus   *to notice*
animus, -ī   *soul, spirit; thought;*
   courage; intent
annālēs, annālium (m.)   *annals, stories*
annus, -ī   *year*
ante [+ acc.]   *before*
Antēnor, Antēnōris (m.)   *Antenor (a Trojan)*
antequam   *before*
Antheus, ī   *Antheus*
Antiochus, -ī   *Antiochus (king of Syria)*

antīquus, -a, -um   *old, ancient*
Antistus, -ī   *Antistus*
antrum, -ī   *cave*
aper, aprī   *wild boar*
aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus   *to open*
apex, apicis (m.)   *point*
apis, apis (f.)   *bee*
Apollō, Apollinis (m.)   *Apollo*
appāreō, -ēre, appāruī, appāritus
   to appear
appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [+ dat.]
   to drive to; appeal to
Appius Claudius, īī   *Appius Claudius*
applicō (1)   *to steer*
appropinquō (1)   *to approach*
aptō (1)   *to fit, prepare*
apud [+ acc.]   *at, among, at home of*
aqua, -ae   *water*
Aquilō, Aquilōnis (m.)   *north wind*
āra, -ae   *altar*
Ārae, -ārum   *Altars*
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum
   to think, judge
arbor, arboris (f.)   *tree*
arboreus, -a, -um   *tree-like*
arcānum, -ī   *secret*
arceō, -ēre, arcuī   *to prevent, keep off;*
   detain
arcessō, -ere, accessīvī, arcessītus   *to fetch*
Arctūrus, -ī   *Arcturus (a bright star)*
arcus, -ūs   *bow*
ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsus   *to be eager; burn*
ardēscō, -ere, arsī   *to burn*
arduus, -a, -um   *towering over*
ārea, -ae   *threshing floor*
argentum, -ī   *silver*
Argī, -ōrum   *Argos (city in Greece)*
Argīvus, -a, -um   *of Argos; Argive*
Argolicus, -a, -um   *Argive; Greek*
āridus, -a, -um   *dry*
ariēs, arietis (m.)   *ram; battering ram*
Ariovistus, -ī   *Ariovistus*
arma, -ōrum   *weapons; forces*
armentum, -ī   *herd*
armiger, -a   *armor-bearer*
armipotēns, armipotentis   *strong in battle*
armō (1)   *to arm*
arō (1)   *to plow*

arrēct- see **arrigō**

arrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus *to raise up*

ars, artis (f.) *art; skill; deceit*

arsī see **ardeō**

artifex, artificis (m.) *artist; contriver*

artus, -a, um *close, tight*

artus, -ūs *limb*

Arvernī, -ōrum *Arveni*

arvum, -ī *field*

arx, arcis (f.) *fortress; citadel*

Ascanius, -ī *Ascanius*

ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus *to ascend*

ascēnsus, -ūs *ascent*

Asia, -ae *Asia Minor*

aspectō (1) *to look at*

aspectus, -ūs *sight, view*

asper, -a, -um *fierce*

aspiciō, -ere, aspexī, aspectus *to look*

aspīrō (1) *to blow*

asportō (1) *to carry away*

Assaracus, -ī *Assaracus (ancient king of Troy)*

ast *yet*

astō, -āre, astitī *to stand by*

astrum, -ī *star*

Astyanax, Astyanactis (m.) *Astyanax*

asȳlum, -ī *sanctuary*

at *yet*

āter, ātra, ātrum *black, dark*

Atistia, -ae *Atistia*

Atlās, Atlantis (m.) *Atlas*

atque *and*

Atrīdēs, Atrīdae (m.) *son of Atreus (Agamemnon or Menelaus)*

ātrium, -ī *hall*

atrōciter *dreadfully*

atrōx, atrōcis *dreadful*

Atticus, -ī *Atticus*

attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus *to touch*

attollō, -ere *to lift up; raise*

attrectō (1) *to touch, handle*

auctor, auctōris (m.) *author; creator*

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum *to dare*

Audiī, -ōrum *Audii*

audiō, -īre, audīvī, audītus *to hear*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus *to increase*

augurium, -ī *augury; sign*

aula, -ae *hall*

aulaeum, -ī *curtain*

aura, -ae *air; sky, heaven; breath*

aurātus, -a, -um *gilded*

aureus, -a, -um *golden*

auris, auris (f.) *ear*

Aurōra, -ae *Aurora (goddess of dawn)*

aurum, -ī *gold*

Auster, Austrī *south wind*

ausum, -ī *daring (deed)*

aut *or*

aut . . . aut *either . . . or*

autem *moreover; however*

Automedōn, Automedontis (m.) *Automedon*

auxilium, -ī *aid*

avārus, -a, -um *greedy*

āvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus *to carry away*

āvellō, -ere, -vulsī, -vulsus *to tear away*

āvers- see **āvertō**

āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus *to divert; turn away*

āvēxī- see **āvehō**

avidus, -a, -um *eager*

āvius, -a, -um *pathless*

āvuls- see **āvellō**

avus, -ī *grandfather*

axis, axis (m.) *axis*

bācātus, -a, -um *with pearls*

Bacchānal, Bacchnānālis (nt.) *Bacchus festival*

Bacchus, -ī *Bacchus (god of wine); wine*

barba, -ae *beard*

barbaricus, -a, -um *foreign*

barbarus, -a, -um *foreign*

barbitos, barbitī (m/f) *lyre*

bāsiātiō, bāsiātiōnis (f.) *kiss*

bāsiō (1) *to kiss*

bāsium, -ī *kiss*

Battus, -ī *Battus (founder of Cyrene)*

beātus, -a, -um *happy*

bellātrīx, bellātrīcis (f.) *warrior*

bellō (1) *to battle*

bellum, -ī *war*

bellus, -a, -um *beautiful*

Bēlus, -ī *Belus (king of Phoenicia)*

bene *well*

benedīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus *to bless*

benedictiō, benedictiōnis (f.) *blessing*

benīgnitās, benīgnitātis (f.) *kindness*
benignus, -a, -um *kind, favorable*
bibō, -ere, bibī *to drink*
bīgae, -ārum *two-horse chariot*
bilinguis, bilingue *bilingual; deceitful*
bīnī, -ae, -a *two each*
bipatēns, bipatentis *double*
bipennis, bipennis (f.) *double ax*
birēmis, birēmis (f.) *boat with two oars*
bis *twice*
Bitiās, Bitiae (m.) *Bitias*
Bīthȳnia, -ae *Bithynia*
blandus, -a, -um *persuasive*
blasphēmia, -ae *blasphemy*
bonus, -a, -um *good*
bōs, bovis (m/f) *ox, cow*
bracchium, -ī *arm*
brevis, breve *short; shallow*
breviter *briefly*
brūma, -ae *winter*
buccina, -ae *war trumpet*
Byrsa, -ae *Byrsa*
C. = Gāius *Gaius*
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus *to fall*
cadus, -ī *jar*
caecus, -a, -um *blind*
caedēs, caedis (f.) *slaughter*
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus *to cut down*
caelestis, caeleste *heavenly*
caelicola, -ae (m/f) *deity*
caelō (1) *to engrave*
caelum, -ī *sky*
caeruleus, -a, -um *dark blue, dark green*
Caesar, Caesaris (m.) *Caesar*
caesariēs, -ēī (f.) *hair*
Caīcus, -ī *Caicus*
Calchās, Calchantis (m.) *Calchas*
caleō, -ēre, caluī *to be hot*
cālīgō (1) *to darken*
campus, -ī *plain, field*
canis, canis (m/f) *dog*
canistrum, -ī *basket*
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus *to sing; prophesy*
cantus, -ūs *song*
cānus, -a, -um *white*
capella, -ae *she-goat*
capessō, -ere, capessīvī, capessītus
    to perform

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus *to take, seize*
capsula, -ae *small box*
capt- see **capiō**
captīvus, -a, -um *seized*
captus, -ī *prisoner*
capulus, -ī *hilt, handle (of sword)*
caput, capitis (nt.) *head*
Capys, Capyos (m.) *Capys*
carcer, carceris (m.) *prison*
cardō, cardinis (m.) *hinge; pivot*
careō, -ēre, caruī, caritus [+ abl.] *to lack*
carīna, -ae *keel of ship*
carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus *to pluck; take*
cārus, -a, -um *dear*
Cassandra, -ae *Cassandra (a prophetess)*
Cassivellaunus, -ī *Cassivellaunus*
cassus, -a, -um [+ abl.] *deprived of, without*
castra, -ōrum *camp*
cāsus, -ūs *misfortune*
caterva, -ae *crowd*
cathēchūmenus, -ī *catechumen*
Catilīna, -ae *Catiline*
Catullus, -ī *Catullus (a poet)*
catulus, -ī *cub*
causā [+ gen.] *for the sake of*
causa, -ae *cause, reason*
cautiō, cautiōnis (f.) *bond*
cautus, -a, -um *safe; cautious*
caverna, -ae *cavern*
cavō (1) *to hollow*
cavus, -a, -um *hollow*
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus *to yield*
celebrō (1) *to celebrate*
celer, celeris, celere *swift*
celeritās, celeritātis (f.) *speed*
celerō (1) *to hasten*
cella, -ae *storeroom, cell*
cēlō (1) *to hide*
celsus, -a, -um *lofty*
cēna, -ae *dinner*
cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum *to decree; think*
centum *100*
Cereālis, Cereāle *of grain; of Ceres*
Cerēs, Cereris (f.) *grain; goddess of grain*
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus *to perceive*
certātim *in competition*

certē   *certainly*

certior fierī   *to be made aware*

certō (1)   *to contend, compete*

certus, -a, -um   *certain*

cervīx, cervīcis (f.)   *neck*

cervus, -ī   *stag*

cessī   see **cēdō**

cessō (1)   *to cease, hesitate*

cētērī, -ae, -a   *the rest, the others*

cēterus, -a, -um   *remaining, other*

ceu   *as, just as*

chorus, -ī   *chorus, dancer*

cibus, ī   *food*

cieō, -ēre, cīvī, citus   *to arouse*

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus   *to gird; surround*

cingulum, -ī   *girdle, belt*

cinis, cineris (m.)   *ash*

circum [+ acc.]   *around; round about*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus   *to surround*

circumfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus   *to pour around*

circumspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus   *to look around*

circumstō, -āre, -stetī   *to surround*

circumtexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus   *to embroider*

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus   *to surround*

circumvolō (1)   *to fly around*

cithara, -ae   *harp, lyre*

citō   *quickly*

citus, -a, -um   *quick*

cīvis, cīvis (m/f)   *citizen*

clādēs, clādis (f.)   *slaughter*

clam   *secretly*

clāmor, clāmōris (m.)   *shout*

clangor, clangōris (m.)   *clang, noise*

clārēscō, -ere, clāruī   *to become clear*

clārus, -a, -um   *clear; famous; bright*

classis, classis (f.)   *fleet*

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus   *to enclose*

claustra, -ōrum   *barrier*

clipeus, -ī   *shield*

Cloanthus, -ī   *Cloanthus*

Clusīnus, -a, -um   *of Clusium*

Cluvius, -ī   *Cluvius*

coctilis, coctile   *baked*

coeō, coīre, coīvī, coitus   *to combine, join*

coepiō, -ere, coepī, coeptus   *to begin*

coetus, -ūs   *assembly; flock*

cōgitō (1)   *to think*

cognōmen, cognōminis (nt.)   *name*

cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitus   *to learn;* (perf.) *to know*

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus   *to force, compel*

cohors, cohortis (f.)   *cohort*

collibet, collibitum est   *it pleases*

collīdō, -ere, -līsī, -līsus   *to collide*

colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus   *to gather*

collis, collis (m.)   *hill*

colloquium, -ī   *conference*

collum, -ī   *neck*

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus   *to cherish; cultivate*

colōnus, -ī   *colonist*

coluber, colubrī   *snake*

columba, -ae   *dove*

columna, -ae   *column*

coma, -ae   *hair; foliage*

comāns, comantis   *hairy; crested*

comes, comitis (m.)   *companion*

comētēs, comētae (m.)   *comet*

comitō (1)   *to accompany*

commemorō (1)   *to relate*

commendō (1)   *to entrust*

commiseror (1)   *to pity*

commissum, -ī   *fault*

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to commit; engage*

commoneō, -ēre, -monuī, -monitus   *to impress upon*

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus   *to disturb; move*

commūnis, commūne   *mutual, common*

commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis (f.)   *change*

compāgēs, compāgis (f.)   *joint*

compellō (1)   *to address ; speak to*

compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus   *to drive*

complector, -ī, -plexus sum   *to embrace*

compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus   *to fill*

complex-   see **complector**

complexus, -ūs   *embrace*

complūrēs, complūria   *many*

compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus   *to calm; compose*

compositum, -ī   *agreement*

comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus   *to grasp*

comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus *to repress*
compuls- see **compellō**
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus *to withdraw*
concidō, -ere, -cidī *to fall*
conciliō (1) *to win over*
concilium, -ī *council*
conclāmō (1) *to shout*
conclāve, conclāvis (nt.) *conclave*
conclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus *to enclose*
concrētus, -a, -um *congealed*
concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus *to fight with*
concursō (1) *to run about*
concursus, -ūs *crowd*
concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus *to shake*
condēnsus, -a, -um *crowded*
condiciō, condiciōnis (f.) *condition*
condīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus *to promise*
condid- see **condō**
condō, -ere, condidī, conditus *to establish; build; hide*
cōnfertus, -a, -um *crowded*
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus *to complete*
cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum *to trust in*
cōnfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus *to pierce*
cōnfirmō (1) *to confirm; encourage*
cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum *to confess*
cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus *to dash together*
cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī *to flee for help*
cōnfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus *to confuse*
congemō, -ere, -gemuī *to groan*
congerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestus *to collect, accumulate*
congredior, -ī, -gressus sum *to fight with*
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus *to hurl*
coniugium, -ī *marriage*
coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus *to join together*
coniūnx, coniugis (m/f) *spouse*
Conōn, Conōnis (m.) *Conon*
cōnor (1) *to try, attempt*
cōnsanguinitās, cōnsanguinitātis (f.) *kinship; blood-relationship*
cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus *to climb; embark*
cōnscientia, -ae *conscience*

cōnscius, -a, -um *aware; confederate*
cōnsēnsus, -ūs *agreement; conspiracy*
cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum *to follow*
cōnserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus *to engage in (battle)*
cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus *to settle*
cōnsilium, -ī *plan*
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus *to stop*
cōnspectus, -ūs *view*
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus *to see*
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus *to decide*
cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -status *to stand firm*
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus *to accustom*
cōnsuētūdinārius, -a, -um *customary*
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis (f.) *custom*
cōnsultum, -ī *decree*
cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus *to consume*
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus *to hasten*
contentus, -a, -um *content*
conterō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītus *to wear out*
contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus *to construct*
conticēscō, -ere, conticuī *to become silent*
contig- see **contingō**
contiguus, -a, -um *adjoining*
contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus *to restrain*
contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus *to befall, happen; touch*
contorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortus *to hurl*
contrā [+ acc.] *opposite; in reply; contrary to*
contrārius, -a, -um *opposing*
contundō, -ere, -tudī, -tūsus *to beat, bruise*
conturbō (1) *to confuse*
cōnūbium, -ī *marriage*
convellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus *to shatter*
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus *to meet; gather*
convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus *to turn*
convexum, -ī *hollow*
convīcium, -ī *loud noise*
convīvium, -ī *feast*
convolō (1) *to flock together*
convolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus *to coil*
convuls- see **convellō**
coorior, -ī, -ortus sum *to rise*

cōpia, -ae *abundance, opportunity; forces; supplies*

cor, cordis (nt.) *heart*

cōram [+ abl.] *in the presence of*

Cornēlius, -ī *Cornelius*

cornū, -ūs (nt.) *horn*

Coroebus, -ī *Coroebus*

corōna, -ae *crown*

corōnō (1) *to wreathe; place wreathes around*

corpus, corporis (nt.) *body*

corripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus *to snatch; hasten along*

corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus *to spoil*

coruscō (1) *to oscillate*

coruscus, -a, -um *waving; glistening*

costa, -ae *rib*

cothurnus, -ī *hunting boot*

cot(t)īdiē *today; daily*

crātēr, crātēris (m.) *mixing bowl*

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum *crowded; frequent*

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus [+ dat.] *to believe; trust*

creō (1) *to create*

crētus, -a, -um *born*

Creūsa, -ae *Creusa*

crīmen, crīminis (nt.) *crime*

crīnis, crīnis (m.) *hair*

crīnītus, -a, -um *long-haired*

crispō (1) *to wave*

cristātus, -a, -um *plumed*

croceus, -a, -um *yellow*

crūdēlis, crūdēle *cruel*

cruentus, -a, -um *bloody*

crūs, crūris (nt.) *leg*

crux, crucis (f.) *cross;* **abīre malam crucem** *to go to hang*

culmen, culminis (nt.) *top; summit*

culpa, -ae *blame*

culpō (1) *to blame*

cum [+ abl.] *with;* (conjunction) *because, since, although, when, whenever*

cum . . . tum *both . . . and*

cumulus, -ī *mass*

cūnctus, -a, -um *all, whole*

Cupencus, -ī *Cupencus*

cupīdō, cupīdinis (f.) *love, desire*

Cupīdō, Cupīdinis (m.) *Cupid*

cupidus, -a, -um *greedy; desirous*

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus *to desire*

cupressus, -ī (f.) *cypress*

cūr *why*

cūra, -ae *care, concern*

cūriōsus, -a, -um *curious*

cūrō (1) *to care for*

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus *to run*

currus, -ī *chariot*

cursus, -ūs *course*

curvus, -a, -um *curved*

cuspis, cuspidis (f.) *point of spear*

custōs, custōdis (m.) *guard*

Cyclōpius, -a, -um *of the Cyclops*

cycnus, -ī *swan*

Cȳmothoē, -ēs (f.) *Cymothoe (a nymph)*

Cynthus, -ī *Mount Cynthus*

Cyprus, -ī *Cyprus*

Cyrēnae, -ārum *Cyrene (a North African city)*

Cythēra, -ōrum *Cythera (an island)*

Cytherēa, -ae *epithet for Venus*

Danaus, -a, -um *Greek*

daps, dapis (f.) *feast*

Dardanis, Dardanidis (f.) *Trojan woman*

Dardanius, -a, -um *Trojan, Dardanian*

dator, datōris (m.) *giver*

dē [+ abl.] *down from; about, concerning; during*

dea, -ae *goddess*

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus *should, ought*

dēbitor, dēbitōris (m.) *debtor*

decem *ten*

decōrus, -a, -um *beautiful*

dēcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus *to run down*

decus, decoris (nt.) *ornament; glory*

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus *to launch*

dēfatīgō (1) *to grow weary*

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus *to defend*

dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris (m.) *defender*

dēfessus, -a, -um *tired*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus *to fail; desert*

dēfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus *to fasten*

dēfīxus *see* **dēfīgō**

dēfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus *to flow down*

dēgener, dēgeneris *degenerate, unworthy*

dehinc *then*

dehīscō, -ere, -hīvī *to split open*

deinde *then*

Dēiopēa, -ae *Deiopea*

Dēiphobus, -ī *Deiphobus (a Trojan)*

dēlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum *to fall into*

dēleō, -ēre, -lēvī, -lētus *to destroy*

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus *to choose*

dēlinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus *to offend*

dēlitēscō, -ere, -lituī *to hide, lurk*

dēlūbrum, -ī *shrine*

dēmēns, dēmentis *mad*

dēmiss- see **dēmittō**

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to send down; derive; lower*

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptus *to take away*

dēmoror (1) *to linger*

dēmum *finally*

dēnī, -ae, -a *ten each*

dēnique *finally*

dēnsus, -a, -um *crowed, thick*

dēnuō *again, once more*

dēpascor, -ī, -pāstus sum *to devour*

dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus *to cast down*

dēpendeō, -ēre *to hang from*

dēperdō, -ere, -perdidī, -perditus *to lose*

dēponō, -ere, -posuī, -positus *to lay down*

dērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus *to direct*

dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus *to descend*

dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus *to desert*

dēsertum, -ī *desert*

dēsertus, -a, -um *isolated; deserted*

dēsīderium, -ī *desire, longing*

dēsipiō, -ere *to play the fool*

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus *to stop*

dēspectō (1) *to look down*

dēstinō (1) *to mark, appoint; resolve*

dēsuētus, -a, -um *unused, unaccustomed*

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī *to be missing*

dēsuper *from above*

dēterreō, -ēre, dēterruī, dēterritus *to deter, prevent*

dētineō, -ēre, -tenuī, -tentus *to detain*

dētrūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trūsus *to thrust off*

deus, -ī *god*

dēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus *to arrive*

dēvolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus *to roll down*

dēvōveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus *to dedicate; doom*

dexter, dextra, dextrum *right; favorable*

diāconus, -ī *deacon*

Dīāna, -ae *Diana*

diciō, diciōnis (f.) *power*

dicō (1) *to consecrate*

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus *to say, speak*

dictum, -ī *word*

Dīdō, Dīdōnis (f.) *Dido*

diēs, -ēī (m.) *day*

difficilis, difficile *difficult*

diffugiō, -ere, -fūgī *to disperse*

diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus *to scatter*

dīgerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestus *to explain*

dignitās, dignitātis (f.) *dignity*

dignor (1) [+ abl.] *to think worthy of*

dignus, -a, -um *worthy; deserved*

dīgredior, -ī, -gressus sum *to depart*

dīlēct- see **dīligō**

dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus *to esteem; love*

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to send away*

Diomēdēs, Diomēdis (m.) *Diomedes (a Greek)*

Dionȳsius, -ī *Dionysius*

dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus *to tear off; plunder*

dīrus, -a, -um *terrible*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus *to depart*

discipulus, -ī *student*

discō, -ere, didicī *to learn*

discors, discordis *discordant*

discrīmen, discrīminis (nt.) *crisis; difference*

discumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus *to recline*

disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus *to scatter; break up*

disiect- see **disiciō**

disiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus *to separate*

dispellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus *to scatter*

dispiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus *to see*

dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus *to arrange, station*

disputō (1) *to discuss*

dissimulō (1) *to hide*

distendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus *to stretch*

diū   *for a long time*
dīvellō, -ere, -vulsī, -vulsus   *to tear apart*
dīversus, -a, -um   *diverse*
dīves, dīvitis   *wealthy*
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus   *to divide*
dīvīnus, -a, -um   *divine*
dīvus, -a, -um   *divine*
dō, dare, dedī, datus   *to give; allow*
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus   *to teach*
doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitus   *to be angry
   at; suffer*
Dolopes, Dolopum (m.)   *Greeks from
   Thessaly*
dolor, dolōris (m.)   *pain, grief*
dolus, -ī   *deceit*
dominicus, -a, -um   *Lord's*
dominor (1) [+ dat.]   *to rule over*
dominus, -ī   *master*
domō, -āre, domuī, domitus   *to tame*
domus, -ūs (f.)   *home; household*
dōnec   *until; provided that*
dōnō (1)   *to give*
dōnum, -ī   *gift*
Dōricus, -a, -um   *Doric, Greek*
dormiō, -īre, dormīvī, dormītus   *to sleep*
dorsum, -ī   *back*
dōs, dōtis (f.)   *dowry*
dōtō (1)   *to endow*
dracō, dracōnis (m.)   *serpent*
dubitō (1)   *to doubt; hesitate*
dubium, -ī   *doubt*
dubius, -a, -um   *doubtful*
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus   *to lead;
   construct; draw; marry*
ductor, ductōris (m.)   *leader*
dūdum   *a little while ago*
dulcis, dulce   *sweet*
dum   *until; while; provided that*
dummodo   *provided that*
duo, duae, duo   *two*
duplex, duplicis   *both; double*
dūrō (1)   *to endure*
dūrus, -a, -um   *hard*
dux, ducis (m.)   *leader*
Dymās, Dymantis (m.)   *Dymas*
ē ~ ex [+ abl.]   *out of, from*
ebur, eboris (nt.)   *ivory*
ecce   *behold*

ecclēsia, -ae   *church*
ecf-   see **effodiō**
edāx, edācis   *consuming*
ēdisserō, -ere, -disseruī, -dissertus   *to tell*
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus   *to lead out;
   raise*
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus   *to raise up;
   carry off*
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus   *to form*
effigiēs, -ēī   *image*
efflō (1)   *to blow out;* **animam efflāre**
   to die
effodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus   *to dig out*
effor (1)   *to speak out*
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī   *to escape*
effugium, -ī   *escape*
effulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī, -fulsus   *to shine out*
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus   *to pour out*
egēnus, -a, -um [+ gen.]   *lacking*
egeō, -ēre, eguī [+ abl./gen.]   *to need*
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum   *to step off*
ēgregius, -a, -um   *illustrious*
ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus   to eject, throw
   from
ēlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum   *to slip out*
ēmicō, -āre, -micuī, -micātus   *to dash out*
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to send out*
emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus   *to buy*
ēmōt-   see **ēmoveō**
ēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus   *to move
   from; dislodge*
ēn   *behold*
ēnārrō (1)   *to describe*
enim   *indeed*
ēnormitās, ēnormitātis (f.)   *hugeness*
ēnsis, ēnsis (m.)   *sword*
ēōus, -a, -um   *eastern*
Epēos, Epēī (m.)   *Epeos*
episcopus, -ī   *bishop*
epitomē, epitomēs (f.)   *epitome*
epulae, -ārum   *banquet*
Ēpytus, -ī   *Epytus*
eques, equitis (m.)   *horseman*
equidem   *indeed*
equitātus, -ūs   *cavalry*
equus, -ī   *horse*
ergō   *therefore*
Erīnys, Erīnyos (f.)   *Fury*

ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus *to tear away*
errō (1) *to wander*
error, errōris (m.) *wandering; trick*
ērubēscō, -ere, -rubuī *to blush*
ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus *to break out*
ēruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus *to overthrow*
Eryx, Erycis (m.) *Eryx (mountain in Sicily)*
et *and*
et . . . et *both . . . and*
etiam *even*
etiamsī *although*
etsī *although*
Eurōpa, -ae *Europe*
Eurōtās, Eurōtae (m.) *Eurotas River*
Eurus, -ī *east wind*
Eurypylus, -ī *Eurypylus*
ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus *to climb up; come out*
ēvās- see **ēvādō**
ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus *to occur, happen*
ēvers- see **ēvertō**
ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus *to overturn*
ēvict- see **ēvincō**
ēvincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victus *to surmount*
ēvocō (1) *to call out*
exanimus, -a, -um *breathless*
exardēscō, -ere, -arsī, -arsus *to blaze up*
exaudiō, -īre, -audīvī, -audītus *to hear*
excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus *to depart*
excess- see **excēdō**
excidium, -ī *destruction*
excidō, -ere, -cidī *to fall from*
excīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus *to cut out*
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus *to take up*
excīs- see **excīdō**
excitō (1) *to arouse*
exclāmō (1) *to cry out*
excruciō (1) *to torment*
excūdō, -ere, -cūdī, -cūsus *to strike out*
excussī see **excutiō**
excutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus *to cast off*
exeō, exīre, exīvī, exitus *to go out*
exerceō, -ēre, -ercuī, -ercitus *to keep busy; follow*
exercitus, -ūs *army*
exhālō (1) *to exhale*
exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustus *to exhaust*

exigō, -ere, exēgī, exāctus *to pass; discover; drive out*
eximō, -ere, exēmī, exēmptus *to remove*
exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis (f.) *reputation*
exīstimō (1) *to consider*
exitiālis, exitiāle *deadly*
exitium, -ī *destruction*
exitus, -ūs *exit, end*
exīvī see **exeō**
exoptō (1) *to long for*
exorior, -īrī, -ortus sum *to rise up*
expediō, -īre, -pedīvī, -pedītus *to procure; bring out*
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus *to drive out*
expendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsus *to pay for*
experior, -īrī, -pertus sum *to try; test; experience*
expleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus *to complete; satisfy*
explicō (1) *to explain*
explōrātor, explōrātōris (m.) *scout*
explōrō (1) *to ascertain; explore*
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus *to explain*
exprōmō, -ere, -prōmpsī, prōmptus *to bring out*
exsanguis, exsangue *pale, lifeless*
exscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus *to root out*
exsecō, -āre, -secuī, -sectus *to cut out*
exserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus *to expose*
exsilium, -ī *exile*
exsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus *to emerge*
exspectō (1) *to await*
exspīrō (1) *to exhale; die*
exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus *to extinguish*
exsultō (1) *to exult; jump out*
exsuperō (1) *to overpower*
exsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus *to rise up*
extemplō *immediately*
extrā [+ acc.] *outside*
extrēma, -ōrum *death*
extrēmus, -a, -um *farthest; last*
extul- see **efferō**
exuō, -ere, exuī, exūtus *to shed*
exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus *to burn up*
exūt- see **exuō**
exuviae, -ārum *clothing; spoils; skin*

faber, fabrī   *artisan*

fabricātor, fabricātōris (m.)   *inventor*

fabricō (1)   *to make*

faciēs, -ēī   *face*

facile   *easily*

facilis, facile   *easy*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus   *to make, do*

factum, -ī   *deed; fact*

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus   *to deceive; copy; escape (notice)*

falsus, -a, -um   *false*

fāma, -ae   *fame; rumor*

famēs, famis (f.)   *hunger*

famula, -ae   *female servant*

famulus, -ī   *male servant*

fandus, -a, -um   *right, pious*

fās (nt.)   *right*

fascinō (1)   *to cast a spell*

fastīgium, -ī   *top; point; roof*

fātālis, fātāle   *fatal*

fateor, fatērī, fassus sum   *to confess*

fatīgō (1)   *to tire*

fatīscō, -ere   *to split open*

fātum, -ī   *fate; destiny*

faucēs, faucium (f.)   *jaw*

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus   *to favor* [+ dat.]

fax, facis (f.)   *torch*

fēlīcitās, fēlīcitātis (f.)   *happiness*

fēlīx, fēlīcis   *happy*

fēmina, -ae   *woman*

fēmineus, -a, -um   *feminine*

fenestra, -ae   *window; opening*

fera, -ae   *wild animal*

ferē   *almost*

ferīna, -ae   *venison*

feriō, -īre   *to strike*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus   *to carry, bear; report*

ferōx, ferōcis   *fierce*

ferrum, -ī   *iron; sword*

ferus, -a, -um   *wild*

ferus, -ī   *wild beast*

ferveō, -ēre, ferbuī   *to bustle*

fessus, -a, -um   *tired*

fēstīnō (1)   *to hurry*

fēstus, -a, -um   *festive*

fētus, -a, -um   *pregnant; fat*

fētus, -ūs   *offspring*

fidēlis, fidēle   *faithful*

fīdēs, -eī   *faith; trust; Faith (a goddess)*

fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum [+ dat.]   *to trust*

fīdūcia, -ae   *confidence; faith; hope*

fīdus, -a, -um   *faithful; safe*

fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus   *to fasten*

fīlius, -ī   *son*

fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictus   *to make, mold; feign*

fīnis, fīnis (m.)   *end; border*

fīnitimus, -a, um   *neighboring*

fīō, fierī, factus sum   *to be made, become*

firmō (1)   *to confirm*

firmus, -a, -um   *strong*

fīx-   see **figō**

flāgitō (1)   *to demand*

flagrō (1)   *to burn; glow*

flamma, -ae   *flame*

flammō (1)   *to inflame*

flāvus, -a, -um   *yellow*

flectō, -ere, flexī, flexus   *to guide*

fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētus   *to weep*

flōreō, -ēre, flōruī   *to flower, blossom*

flōreus, -a, -um   *flowery*

flōs, flōris (m.)   *flower*

flūctus, -ūs   *wave*

flūmen, flūminis (nt.)   *river*

fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus   *to flow*

fluvius, -ī   *stream*

flūxī   see **fluō**

foedō (1)   *to mar*

foedus, foederis (nt.)   *agreement*

folium, -ī   *leaf*

fōmes, fōmitis (m.)   *chips of wood*

fōns, fontis (m.)   *spring; water; source*

for (1)   *to speak*

forīs   *outside*

foris, foris (f.)   *gate, door*

forma, -ae   *form, shape*

formīdō, formīdinis (f.)   *fear*

fors, fortis (f.)   *chance*

forsan   *perhaps*

fortasse   *perhaps*

fortis, forte   *strong*

fortūna, -ae   *fortune, chance*

fortūnātus, -a, -um   *fortunate*

fōt-   see **foveō**

foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtus   *to cherish; keep warm*

fragor, fragōris (m.)   *noise, crash*

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus   *to break*

frāter, frātris (m.)   *brother*

fremitus, -ūs   *roar*

fremō, -ere, fremuī, fremitus   *to roar*

frēnō (1)   *to restrain, curb*

frequēns, frequentis   *crowded*

fretum, -ī   *strait*

frīgidus, -a, -um   *cold*

frīgus, frīgoris (nt.)   *cold*

frondeus, -a, -um   *leafy*

frōns, frondis (f.)   *branch*

frōns, frontis (f.)   *face; front*

frūmentum, -ī   *grain*

frūstrā   *in vain*

frustum, -ī   *piece*

frūx, frūgis (f.)   *fruit; grain*

fūcus, -ī   *drone*

fuga, -ae   *flight; haste*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī   *to flee*

fugō (1)   *to put to flight*

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī   *to shine*

fulgur, fulguris (nt.)   *lightning*

fulmen, fulminis (nt.)   *thunderbolt*

fulvus, -a, -um   *tawny; yellow*

fūmō (1)   *to smoke*

fūmus, -ī   *smoke*

fūnāle, fūnālis (nt.)   *lamp*

fundāmentum, -ī   *foundation*

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus   *to pour; lay; rout*

fundus, -ī   *bottom*

fūnis, fūnis (m.)   *rope*

fūnus, fūneris (nt.)   *death*

furiae, -ārum   *rage*

furiō (1)   *to infuriate*

furō, -ere, furuī   *to rage*

furor, furōris (m.)   *frenzy; rage*

fūrtim   *secretly*

furtīvus, -a, -um   *stolen*

galea, -ae   *helmet*

Gallī, -ōrum   *Gauls (of modern France)*

Gallia, -ae   *Gaul*

gallīna, -ae   *hen*

Ganymēdēs, -is (m.)   *Ganymede*

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum   *to rejoice*

gaudium, -ī   *joy*

gaza, -ae   *treasure*

gelidus, -a, -um   *cold*

geminus, -a, -um   *twin*

gemitus, -ūs   *groan*

gemma, -ae   *gem*

gemō, -ere, gemuī, gemitus   *to groan, moan*

gener, -ī (m.)   *son-in-law*

genetrīx, genetrīcis (f.)   *mother*

genitor, genitōris (m.)   *father, progenitor*

gēns, gentis (f.)   *race; nation*

genu, -ūs (nt.)   *knee*

genu-   see **gignō**

genus, generis (nt.)   *race*

germānus, -ī   *brother*

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus   *to wage (war); carry; wear*

gess-   see **gerō**

gestō (1)   *to bear, carry; wear*

gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus   *to beget, bear*

gladiātōrēs, gladiātōrum (m.)   *gladiatorial shows*

glaeba, -ae   *soil*

glomerō (1)   *to gather*

glōria, -ae   *glory*

glōriola, -ae   *little glory*

glōrior (1)   *to boast*

Gorgō, Gorgonis (f.)   *Gorgon*

gradior, -ī, gressus sum   *to step, walk*

gradus, -ūs   *step; rung of ladder*

Graecia, -ae   *Greece*

Graecus, -a, -um   *Greek*

Grāius, -a, -um   *Greek*

grāmen, grāminis (nt.)   *grass*

grandaevus, -a, -um   *old*

grātēs, grātium (f.)   *thanks*

grātia, -ae   *thanks*

grātus, -a, -um   *pleasing*

gravidus, -a, -um   *pregnant*

gravis, grave   *heavy, severe*

graviter   *heavily, strongly*

gravō (1)   *to burden*

gremium, -ī   *bosom*

gressus, -ūs   *step; gait*

gurges, gurgitis (m.)   *whirlpool, gulf*

gustō (1)   *to taste*

Gyās, Gyae (m.)   *Gyas*

gȳrus, -ī   *circle*

habēna, -ae   *rein*

habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus   *to have; consider*
habilis, habile   *handy*
habitus, -ūs   *appearance, wardrobe*
hāc   *here*
haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesus   *to cling to*
hālō (1)   *to be fragrant*
harēna, -ae   *sand*
Harpalycē, -ēs (f.)   *Harpalyce*
Harūdēs, Harūdum (m.)   *Harudes*
   [Germanic tribe]
hasta, -ae   *spear*
hastīle, hastīlis (nt.)   *spear-shaft*
haud   *not at all; hardly*
hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus   *to drain*
haus-   see **hauriō**
hebetō (1)   *to dim*
Hebrus, -ī   *Hebrus River*
Hector, Hectoris (m.)   *Hector*
Hectoreus, -a, -um   *of Hector*
Hecuba, -ae   *Hecuba (wife of Priam)*
Helena, -ae   *Helen*
Helvētiī, -ōrum   *Helvetii*
Hēraclius, -ī   *Heraclius*
herba, -ae   *grass*
hercle   *indeed, by Hercules!*
hērōs, hērōis (m.)   *hero*
Hesperia, -ae   *Hesperia; Italy*
heu   *alas*
heus   *hey*
hīberna, -ōrum   *winter (quarters)*
hībernus, -a, -um   *wintry*
hīc   *here*
hic, haec, hoc   *this*
hice, haec, hoce   *[emphatic of **hic,
   haec, hoc**]*
hiems, hiemis (f.)   *winter; storm*
hinc   *from here*
hodiē   *today*
Homērus, -ī   *Homer*
homō, hominis (m.)   *man*
honor, honōris (m.)   *honor; offering*
hora, -ae   *hour*
horreō, -ēre, horruī   *to bristle; tremble*
horrēscō, -ere, horruī   *to shudder*
horridus, -a, -um   *frightening*
horror, horrōris (m.)   *horror*
hortor (1)   *to urge*
hospes, hospitis (m.)   *guest; host*

hospitium, -ī   *hospitality*
hostia, -ae   *sacrifice; victim*
hostis, hostis (m.)   *enemy*
hūc   *to here*
hūmānus, -a, -um   *human*
humus, -ī (f.)   *ground*
Hyades, Hyadum (f.)   *Hyades
   (constellation of the rainy season)*
hymenaeus, -ī   *marriage*
Hypanis, Hypanis (m.)   *Hypanis*
iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, iacitus   *to lie*
iactō (1)   *to toss*
iactūra, -ae   *throwing away*
iaculor (1)   *to hurl*
iaculum, -ī   *javelin*
iam   *now, already*
iamdūdum   *at once; for a long time*
iānua, -ae   *door*
ibi   *then*
ibīdem   *in the same place*
ictus, -ūs   *blow, stroke*
Īda, -ae   *Mt. Ida*
Īdaeus, -a, -um   *of Mt. Ida*
Īdalium, -ī   *Mount Idalium*
idcircō   *for that reason*
īdem, eadem, idem   *same*
ignārus, -a, -um   *ignorant*
ignāvus, -a, -um   *lazy*
ignis, ignis (m.)   *fire*
ignōbilis, ignōbile   *obscure*
ignōrō (1)   *to not know*
ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtus [+ dat.]
   to forgive
ignōtus, -a, -um   *unknown*
Īliacus, -a, -um   *Trojan*
Īlias, Īliadis (f.)   *Trojan woman*
īlicet   *immediately*
Īlionē, Īlionēs (f.)   *Ilione*
Īlioneus, -ī   *Ilioneus*
Īlium, -ī   *Troy*
Īlius, -a, -um   *Trojan*
illīc   *there*
illinc   *from there*
Illyricus, -a, -um   *Illyrian*
imāgō, imāginis (f.)   *image, likeness*
imbēcillus, -a, -um   *weak*
imbellis, imbelle   *harmless*
imber, imbris (m.)   *rain*

immānis, immāne *huge, enormous*

immemor, immemoris *heedless*

immēnsus, -a, -um *vast*

immineō, -ēre *to overhang*

immisceō, -ēre, -miscuī, -mixtus
  to mix with

immītis, immīte *fierce*

immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to let in*

immō *rather*

immortālis, immortāle *immortal*

immōtus, -a, -um *unmoved*

impār, imparis *unequal*

impediō, -īre, impedīvī, impedītus
  to prevent

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus *to force; strike*

imperium, -ī *command; kingdom*

impetrō (1) *to achieve*

impetus, -ūs *violence, attack*

impiger, impigra, impigrum *eager*

impius, -a, -um *disloyal, wicked*

impleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus [+ gen] *to fill*

implicō (1) *to enfold*

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus *to place on*

improbus, -a, -um *wicked*

imprōvidus, -a, -um *thoughtless*

imprōvīsō *unexpectedly*

imprōvīsus, -a, -um *unexpected; sudden*

īmus, -a, -um *lowest*

in [+ abl.] *in, on;* [+ acc.] *into, onto;*
  against

inānis, ināne *empty*

incautus, -a, -um *careless*

incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus *to walk*

incendium, -ī *fire*

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus *to set on*
  fire

incēns- see **incendō**

inceptum, -ī *beginning; plan*

incertus, -a, -um *uncertain*

incessus, -ūs *gait*

incidō, -ere, -cidī *to fall upon*

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus *to begin*

inclēmentia, -ae *severity*

inclīnō (1) *to bend*

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus *to enclose*

inclutus, -a, -um *famous*

incognitus, -a, -um *unknown*

incola, -ae (m.) *inhabitant*

incolumis, incolume *safe*

incomitātus, -a, -um *unaccompanied*

inconcessus, -a, -um *forbidden*

increpitō (1) *to challenge*

incubō, -āre, -cubuī, -cubitus *to lie on*

incultus, -a, -um *uncultivated*

incumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus
  to press on

incurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus *to run into*

incūsō (1) *to reproach*

incutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus *to strike*

inde *thereupon; from there*

indicium, -ī *charge*

indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dīctus *to proclaim*

indignor (1) *to be angry*

indignus, -a, -um *unworthy*

indomitus, -a, -um *untamed*

indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus *to move,*
  persuade

indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultus
  to indulge in

induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtus *to don*

inēluctābilis, inēluctābile *inescapable*

inermis, inerme *unarmed*

iners, inertis *lifeless*

īnfandus, -a, -um *unspeakable*

īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis *unhappy, unlucky*

īnfēnsus, -a, -um *hostile*

īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus *to bring in;*
  install

īnfēstus, -a, -um *threatening*

īnfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus *to impale*

īnfīnītus, -a, -um *endless*

īnfula, -ae *badge of honor*

ingeminō (1) *to redouble*

ingemō, -ere, -gemuī *to groan*

ingenium, -ī *nature*

ingēns, ingentis *huge*

ingrātus, -a, -um *unpleasant*

ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum *to enter*

ingruō, -ere, -gruī *to assail*

inhumātus, -a, -um *unburied*

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus *to throw into*

iniect- see **iniciō**

inimīcus, -a, -um *hostile; enemy*

inīquus, -a, -um *unjust*

initiō (1) *to initiate*

initium, -ī *beginning*

iniūria, -ae *insult, injustice*

inlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum *to glide in*

inlīdō, -ere, -līsī, -līsus *to strike against*

inlūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsus *to mock*

innoxius, -a, -um *harmless*

innūptus, -a, -um *unmarried, unwed*

inquit *s/he says; s/he said*

inrigō (1) *to diffuse*

inritus, -a, -um *ineffective*

inruō, -ere, -ruī *to rush in*

īnsānia, -ae *madness*

īnsānus, -a, -um *insane*

īnscius, -a, -um *unaware*

īnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus *to mark*

īnsēd- see **īnsīdō**

īnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum *to follow*

īnsertō (1) *to insert; slip*

īnsidiae, -ārum *treachery*

īnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus *to settle on*

īnsigne, īnsignis (nt.) *badge; insignia; mark*

īnsignis, īnsigne *distinguished*

īnsinuō (1) *to creep*

īnsolentia, -ae *insolence*

īnsonō, -āre, -sonuī *to resound*

īnsōns, īnsontis *innocent*

īnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus *to inspect*

īnspīrō (1) *to breathe in*

īnstar *in the likeness of*

īnstaurō (1) *to refresh*

īnsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātus *to spread*

īnstō, -āre, īnstitī *to work hard; press hard/on*

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus *to construct; teach*

īnsula, -ae *island*

īnsultō (1) *to insult, taunt*

īnsuper *above*

intāctus, -a, -um *untouched, virgin*

integer, integra, integrum *intact, sound*

integrō (1) *to renew*

intellegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus *to understand*

intemerātus, -a, -um *pure*

intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus *to stretch*

intentō (1) *to threaten*

intentus, -a, -um *intent, eager*

inter [+ acc.] *within, among, between*

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus *to shut off*

interdīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus *to forbid*

interdum *occasionally*

intereā *meanwhile*

interest, interesse, interfuit *to concern, be of interest*

interfor (1) *to interrupt*

interim *meanwhile*

interior, interius *inner*

intexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus *to weave*

intimus, -a, -um *innermost*

intonō, -āre, -tonuī *to thunder*

intorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortus *to hurl at*

intrā [+ acc.] *within*

intractābilis, intractābile *formidable*

intrō *inside*

intrōgredior, -ī, intrōgressus sum *to enter*

intus *within*

inultus, -a, -um *unavenged*

inūtilis, inūtile *futile*

invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus *to get in; invade*

invehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus *to carry in*

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus *to find*

inventor, inventōris (m.) *inventor*

invenustus, -a, -um *unattractive*

invidia, -ae *jealousy*

invīsus, -a, -um *odious*

invītō (1) *to invite*

invītus, -a, -um *unfriendly*

invius, -a, -um *inaccessible*

involvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus *to wrap*

Iōpās, Iōpae (m.) *Iopas*

Īphitus, -ī *Iphitus*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum *self; very*

īra, -ae *anger*

is, ea, id *this, that; he, she, it*

Isrāhēlīticus, -a, -um *Israelite*

iste, ista, istud *that, those*

ita *thus*

Ītalia, -ae *Italy*

Italus, -a, -um *Italian*

itaque *therefore*

item *further, moreover*

iter, itineris (nt.) *journey, trip*

iterum *again*

Ithacus, -a, -um *Ithacan*

iuba, -ae *mane; crest*

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus   *to command*
iūdex, iūdicis (m.)   *judge*
iūdicium, -ī   *judgment*
iūdicō (1)   *to judge*
iugō (1)   *to join*
iugum, -ī   *yoke; mountain summit*
Iūlius, -ī   *Julius*
Iūlus, -ī   *Iulus*
iūnctūra, -ae   *joint*
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus   *to join*
Iūnō, Iūnōnis (f.)   *Juno*
Iūnōnius, -a, -um   *of Juno*
Iuppiter, Iovis (m.)   *Jupiter (king of gods)*
iūrō (1)   *to swear an oath*
iūs iūrandum   *oath*
iūs, iūris (nt.)   *law; court*
iuss-   see **iubeō**
iussum, -ī   *command*
iussus, -ūs   *command*
iūstitia, -ae   *justice*
iūstus, -a, -um   *just, fair*
iuvenālis, iuvenāle   *youthful*
iuvenis, iuvene   *young*
iuventa, -ae   *youth*
iuventūs, iuventūtis (f.)   *youth*
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus   *to help; please*
iuxtā [+ acc.]   *nearby; just as*
Karthāgō, Karthāginis (f.)   *Carthage*
labellum, -ī   *lip*
lābēs, lābis (f.)   *stigma*
labō (1)   *to waver*
lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum   *to slip; fall*
labor, labōris (m.)   *task*
labōrō (1)   *to work; produce*
Lacaena, -ae   *Spartan (woman)*
lacerō (1)   *to wreck, destroy*
lacrima, -ae   *tear*
lacrimō (1)   *to cry*
lacus, -ūs   *lake*
laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus   *to offend; hurt*
laes-   see **laedō**
laetitia, -ae   *joy*
laetor (1)   *to rejoice*
laetus, -a, -um   *happy; fertile*
laevus, -a, -um   *left; stupid*
lambō, -ere, lambī   *to lick*
lāmentābilis, lāmentābile   *pitiable*

lampas, lampadis (f.)   *brightness; torch*
Lāocoōn, Lāocoōntis (m.)   *Laocoön*
lapis, lapidis (m.)   *stone*
lāpsus, -ūs   *gliding*
laquear, laqueāris (nt.)   *ceiling*
largus, -a, -um   *copious*
lāsarpīcifer, lāsarpīcifera, lāsarpīciferum   *silphium-bearing*
lassus, -a, -um   *tired*
lātē   *extensively; far and wide*
latebra, -ae   *hiding place*
latebrōsus, -a, -um   *secret*
lateō, -ēre, latuī   *to hide*
latex, laticis (m.)   *liquid*
Latīnē   *in Latin*
Lātīnus, -a, -um   *of Latium; Latin*
Latium, -ī   *Latium (area around Rome)*
Lātōna, -ae   *Latona (mother of Diana)*
lātus, -a, -um   *broad, wide; widespread*
latus, lateris (nt.)   *side; flank*
laudō (1)   *to praise*
laurus, -ī (f.)   *laurel*
laus, laudis (f.)   *praise*
Lavīnium, -ī   *Lavinium (city in Italy)*
Lāvīnius, -a, -um   *of Lavinium (city on future site of Rome), Lavinian*
laxō (1)   *to loosen*
laxus, -a, -um   *lax, loose*
lectus, -ī   *couch*
Lēda, -ae   *Leda*
lēgātus, -ī   *delegate*
legiō, legiōnis (f.)   *legion*
lēgitimus, -a, -um   *lawful, right*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus   *to choose; read*
lēniō, -īre, lēnīvī, lēnītus   *to soothe*
lēnis, lēne   *slow*
leō, leōnis (m.)   *lion*
Leōnidās, Leōnidae (m.)   *Leonidas*
Lēsbia, -ae   *Lesbia*
lētum, -ī   *death*
levis, leve   *light*
levō (1)   *to lift*
lēx, lēgis (f.)   *law; decree*
līber, lībera, līberum   *free*
liber, librī   *book*
līberātor, līberātōris (m.)   *liberator*
līberī, -ōrum   *children*
lībō (1)   *to pour; touch*

Liburnī, -ōrum *Illyrians*
Libya, -ae *Libya (in North Africa)*
Libycus, -a, -um *Libyan*
Libyssus, -a, -um *North African*
licet *although*
licet, -ēre, licuit *it is permitted*
lignum, -ī *wood*
ligō (1) *to bind*
limbus, -ī *fringe*
līmen, līminis (nt.) *threshold; home; passage*
līmes, līmitis (m.) *path*
līmōsus, -a, -um *muddy*
lingua, -ae *tongue*
linquō, -ere, līquī, lictus *to leave*
linteum, -ī *sail*
līq- see **linquō**
līquēns, līquentis *liquid*
litō (1) *to appease*
litterae, -ārum *letter*
lītus, lītoris (nt.) *shore*
locō (1) *to place*
locus, -ī *place*
longaevus, -a, -um *aged*
longē *far off*
longus, -a, -um *long*
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum *to speak*
lōrum, -ī *rein; strap*
lubet, -ēre, lubuit, lubitum est *it pleases*
lūbricus, -a, -um *slimy*
Lūcifer, -ī *morning star*
luctor (1) *to wrestle*
lūctus, -ūs *grief*
lūcus, -ī *sacred grove*
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus *to ridicule, mock; play*
lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus *to mourn*
lūmen, lūminis (nt.) *light; eye*
lūna, -ae *moon*
lūnātus, -a, -um *moon-shaped*
luō, -ere, luī *to atone for*
lupa, -ae *she-wolf*
Lupus, -ī *Lupus*
lupus, -ī *wolf*
lūstrō (1) *to scan (with eyes)*
lūstrum, -ī *five years*
lūx, lūcis (f.) *light*
luxus, -ūs *luxury*

Lyaeus, -a, -um *of Bacchus (god of wine)*
lychnus, -ī *lamp*
Lycius, -a, -um *Lycian*
Lycus, -ī *Lycus*
Lȳdius, -a, -um *Lydian*
lympha, -ae *water*
lȳnx, lyncis (m.) *lynx*
Machāōn, Machāonis (m.) *Machaon*
māchina, -ae *device*
mactō (1) *to sacrifice*
maculōsus, -a, -um *spotted*
maereō, -ēre *to mourn*
maestus, -a, -um *sad*
māgālia, -ium *huts*
magis *more*
magister, magistrī *master*
magistrātus, -ūs *magistrate*
magnanimus, -a, -um *brave, noble in spirit*
magnus, -a, -um *great*
Māia, -ae *Maia*
māior, māius *greater*
male *badly*
maledīcō, -ere, maledīxī, maledictus *to speak ill*
mālō, mālle, māluī *to prefer*
malum, -ī *evil*
malus, -a, -um *bad*
mamma, -ae *breast*
Mandubracius, -ī *Mandubracius*
māne *in the morning*
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus *to remain; await*
manicae, -ārum *handcuffs*
manifestus, -a, -um *manifest*
mantēle, mantēlis (nt.) *napkin*
manus, -ūs (f.) *hand; force*
mare, maris (nt.) *sea*
Mārs, Mārtis (m.) *Mars (god of war)*
martyrium, -ī *a place where a martyr is buried*
māter, mātris (f.) *mother*
mātūrō (1) *to hasten*
Māvortius, -a, -um *of Mars, Martian*
maximus, -a, -um *greatest*
medeor, medērī [+ dat.] *to heal*
meditor (1) *to plan*
medius, -a, -um *middle (of)*

mel, mellis (nt.)   *honey*
melior, melius   *better*
melius (adverb)   *better*
membrum, -ī   *limb*
meminī, -isse   *to remember*
Memmius, -ī   *Memmius*
Memnōn, Memnonis (m.)   *Memnon*
memor, memoris   *to speak, call*
memorābilis, memorābile   *memorable*
memorō (1)   *to recount*
mendāx, mendācis   *lying*
Menelāus, -ī   *Menelaus*
mēns, mentis (f.)   *mind; intention*
mēnsa, -ae   *table*
mēnsis, mēnsis (m.)   *month*
mentiō, -ōnis (f.)   *mention*
mentior, -īrī, mentītus   *to deceive*
mercor (1)   *to buy; pay*
mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritus   *to deserve; merit*
mereor, -ērī, meritus est   *to earn*
meritum, -ī   *merit*
merum, -ī   *unmixed wine*
-met   *(emphasizes pronoun)*
mēta, -ae   *limit*
metuō, -ere, metuī   *to fear*
metus, -ūs   *fear*
meus, -a, -um   *my*
mī = mihi
micō, -āre, micuī   *to flash*
mīles, mīlitis (m.)   *soldier*
mīlle [indeclinable in singular; pl: mīlia, -um] (nt.)   *thousand*
Minerva, -ae   *Minerva*
minimē   *not at all*
minister, ministrī   *manservant*
ministrō (1)   *to furnish*
minor (1)   *to threaten*
minor, minus   *less*
minōrēs, minōrum (m.)   *descendants*
minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtus   *to lessen*
minus (adverb)   *less*
mīrābilis, mīrābile   *wonderful*
mīrandus, -a, -um   *wonderful*
mīror (1)   *to admire*
mīrus, -a, -um   *wonderful*
misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtus [+ dat.]   *to mix; confuse*

miser, -a, -um   *wretched, unfortunate*
miserābilis, miserābile   *wretched*
misereor, -ērī, miseritus sum [+ gen.]   *to pity*
miserēscō, -ere   *to pity*
miseret, miserēre, miseruit, miseritum   *to pity*
misericordia, -ae   *pity*
miseror (1)   *to pity*
missa, -ae   *mass*
mītēscō, -ere   *to become mild*
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus   *to send*
mixt-   see **misceō**
moderor (1)   *to restrain, check*
modo   *only; provided that*
modus, -ī   *manner*
moenia, -ium   *walls*
mōlēs, mōlis (f.)   *difficulty; mass; size*
mōlior, -īrī, mōlītus   *to construct, build; undertake*
molliō, -īre, mollīvī, mollītus   *to tame*
mollis, molle   *soft*
moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus   *to warn*
monīle, monīlis (nt.)   *collar*
mōns, montis (m.)   *mountain*
mōnstrō (1)   *to show*
mōnstrum, -ī   *marvel; monster*
montānus, -a, -um   *of a mountain*
mora, -ae   *delay*
mōrātus, -a, -um   *well-mannered*
mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsus   *to bite*
morior, -ī, mortuus sum   *to die*
moror (1)   *to delay*
mors, mortis (f.)   *death*
morsus, -ūs   *bit; bite*
mortālis, mortāle   *mortal*
mortifer, -a, -um   *fatal*
mortuus, -a, -um   *dead*
mōs, mōris (m.)   *custom*
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus   *to move*
Mōȳses, Mōȳsī   *Moses*
mūcrō, mūcrōnis (m.)   *edge; blade*
mūgītus, -ūs   *lowing*
mulceō, -ēre, mulsī, mulsus   *to calm*
multitūdō, multitūdinis (f.)   *number, crowd*
multus, -a, -um   *much, many*
mundus, -ī   *world*

mūniō, -īre, mūnīvī, mūnītus   *to fortify*
mūnus, mūneris (nt.)   *gift*
murmur, murmuris (m.)   *rumble*
mūrus, -ī   *city wall*
mūsa, -ae   *muse*
mūtō (1)   *to change*
Mycēnae, -ārum   *Mycenae (city in Greece)*
Mygdonidēs, Mygdonidae (m.)   *son of Mygdon*
Myrina, -ae   *Myrina*
Myrmidones, Myrmidonum (m.)   *Myrmidons (Greeks from Thessaly)*
nam   *indeed*
namque   *indeed*
nārrō (1)   *to tell*
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum   *to be born*
nāta, -ae   *daughter*
nātūra, -ae   *nature*
nātus, -ī   *son*
nauta, -ae (m.)   *sailor*
nāvigō (1)   *to sail*
nāvis, nāvis (f.)   *ship*
-ne   [introduces a question]
nē . . . quidem   *not even*
nebula, -ae   *cloud, fog*
nec   *and not*
necdum   *not yet*
necesse est, necesse esse, necesse fuit   *to be necessary*
necne   *or not*
necō (1)   *to kill*
nectar, nectaris (nt.)   *nectar*
nectō, -ere, nexuī, nexus   *to bind*
nefandus, -a, -um   *wrong, impious*
nefārius, -a, -um   *criminal*
nefās (nt.)   *sin, wrong*
negō (1)   *to deny*
nēmō, nēminis (m/f)   *no one*
nemus, nemoris (nt.)   *grove*
Neoptolemus, -ī   *Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus)*
nepōs, nepōtis (m.)   *grandson; descendant*
Neptūnius, -a, -um   *of Neptune*
Neptūnus, -ī   *Neptune (god of the sea)*
neque   *and not*
nequeō, nequīre, nequīvī, nequītus   *to be unable*
nēquīquam   *in vain*
Nēreus, -ī   *Nereus (a sea god)*

nesciō, -īre, nescīvī, nescītus   *to not know*
nescius, -a, -um   *unaware*
neu   *and not*
neuter, neutra, neutrum [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**]   *neither (of two)*
nex, necis (f.)   *death*
nī   *if not, unless*
niger, nigra, nigrum   *black*
nihil   *nothing*
nimbōsus, -a, -um   *stormy*
nimbus, -ī   *rain cloud; cloud*
ningit, ningere, ninguit   *it snows*
nisī   *if not, unless*
nitēns, nitentis   *shining*
nitidus, -a, -um   *glistening*
nītor, -ī, nīsus sum   *to step; rest on*
niveus, -a, -um   *snowy*
noctū   *at night*
nōdus, -ī   *knot*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī   *to not want*
nōmen, nōminis (nt.)   *name*
nōn   *not*
nōnāgintā   *ninety*
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus   *to know*
noster, nostra, nostrum   *our*
nōtitia, -ae   *acquaintance*
nōtus, -a, -um   *known, famous*
Notus, -ī   *south wind*
novem   *nine*
novitās, novitātis (f.)   *newness*
novus, -a, -um   *new*
nox, noctis (f.)   *night*
noxa, -ae   *harm*
nūbēs, nūbis (f.)   *cloud*
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus   *to marry*
nūdō (1)   *to strip, expose*
nūdus, -a, -um   *nude; exposed*
nūllus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**]   *none, no; not at all*
num   *whether*
nūmen, nūminis (nt.)   *divine power; divine will*
numerus, -ī   *number*
numquam   *never*
nunc   *now*
nūntiō (1)   *to announce*
nūntius, -ī   *messenger*
nūper   *recently*

nurus, -ūs (f.)   *daughter-in-law; young woman*

nūsquam   *nowhere*

nūtō (1)   *to sway*

nūtrimentum, -ī   *food; fuel*

nūtrīx, nūtrīcis (f.)   *nurse*

nympha, -ae   *nymph*

Ō   *O*

ob [+ acc.]   *on account of*

obdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus   *to draw over*

obdūrō (1)   *to stand firm*

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus   *to set before*

obiectō (1)   *to expose to*

obiectus, -ūs   *barrier*

oblāt-   see **offerō**

oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum [+ gen.]   *to forget*

obmūtēscō, -ere, -mūtuī   *to become silent*

obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus   *to crush*

obscūrus, -a, -um   *dark; hidden*

obsecrō (1)   *to implore*

obsēd-   see **obsideō**

observō (1)   *to observe*

obses, obsidis (m/f)   *hostage*

obsess-   see **obsideō**

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus   *to besiege*

obstipēscō, -ere, -stipuī   *to stand agape*

obstō, -stāre, -stitī, -status   *to oppose; hinder*

obtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus   *to conceal*

obtruncō (1)   *to slaughter*

obtul-   see **offerō**

obtundō, -ere, -tudī, -tūnsus   *to dull*

obtūtus, -ūs   *view*

obviam   *against*

obvius, -a, -um [+ dat.]   *in the way*

occāsus, -ūs   *fall*

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus   *to die*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus   *to kill*

occubō (1)   *to lie*

occulō, -ere, -culuī, -cultus   *to conceal*

occultō (1)   *to conceal*

occultum, -ī   *secret*

occultus   see **occulō**

occumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus   *to meet one's death*

occupō (1)   *to seize, occupy*

occurrō, -ere, occurrī, occursus   *to counteract*

Ōceanus, -ī   *ocean*

oculus, -ī   *eye*

ōdī, ōdisse   *to hate*

odium, -ī   *hatred*

odor, odōris (m.)   *smell*

Oedipus, Oedipodis/Oedipī (m.)   *Oedipus*

Oenōtrius, -a, -um   *Oenotrian*

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus   *to offer*

officium, -ī   *service, duty; kindness*

Oīleus, -ī   *Oileus*

olea, -ae   *olive*

ōlim   *once; one day*

Olympus, -ī   *Olympus*

ōmen, ōminis (nt.)   *omen*

omnipotēns, omnipotentis   *almighty*

omnis, omne   *all, every*

onerō (1)   *to load*

onus, oneris (nt.)   *load*

onustus, -a, -um   *loaded*

opācus, -a, -um   *dark*

opīmus, -a, -um   *fertile*

opīnor (1)   *to think*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit   *to be necessary*

opperior, -īrī, -peritus sum   *to wait for*

oppetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītus   *to perish*

oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus   *to expose*

oppositus, -a, -um   *opposing*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus   *to suppress*

ops, opis (f.)   *wealth; power; help*

optimus, -a, -um   *best*

optō (1)   *to desire*

opulentus, -a, -um   *rich*

opus esse [+ gen.]   *to need*

opus, operis (nt.)   *task, work*

ōra, -ae   *coast*

ōrāculum, -ī   *oracle*

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis (f.)   *speech*

orbis, orbis (m.)   *circle; coil; world*

Orcus, -ī   *Hades (the Underworld)*

ordior, -īrī, orsus sum   *to begin*

ōrdō, ōrdinis (m.)   *order, row*

Orēas, Orēadis (f.)   *Oread; mountain nymph*

Oriēns, Orientis (m.)   *Orient*
orīgō, orīginis (f.)   *origin*
Orīōn, Orīōnis (m.)   *Orion
(a constellation)*
orior, -īrī, ortus sum   *to rise*
ōrnāmentum, -ī   *decoration*
ōrnātus, -ūs   *ornament*
ornō (1)   *to honor, adorn*
ornus, -ī (f.)   *ash*
ōrō (1)   *to beseech; pray*
Orontēs, Orontis (m.)   *Orontes*
Orphēūs, Orphēī/Orpheī (m.)   *Orpheus*
ōs, ōris (nt.)   *mouth; face; speech*
os, ossis (nt.)   *bone*
ōsculum, -ī   *lip*
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus   *to show*
ōstium, -ī   *mouth (of river)*
ostrum, -ī   *purple*
Othryadēs, Othryadae (m.)   *son of Othrys*
pābulum, -ī   *fodder*
paene   *almost*
paenitentia, -ae   *repentence*
paenitet, -ēre, paenituit   *it repents*
pāgus, -ī   *district*
palam   *openly*
Palamēdēs, Palamēdis (m.)   *Palamedes*
palla, -ae   *robe*
Palladium, -ī   *statue of Pallas*
Pallas, Palladis (f.)   *Minerva (a goddess)*
pallidus, -a, -um   *pale*
palma, -ae   *palm*
palmula, -ae   *oar blade*
palūs, palūdis (f.)   *marsh*
pānārium, -ī   *breadbasket*
pandō, -ere, pandī, passus   *to spread
out; open; dishevel*
Panthūs, Panthī (m.)   *Panthus*
Paphus, -ī (f.)   *Paphos (a city on Cyprus)*
pār, paris   *equal*
Parcae, -ārum   *Fates*
parcē   *sparingly*
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus [+ dat.]
to spare
parēns, parentis (m/f)   *parent*
pāreō, -ēre, paruī, paritus [+ dat.]   *to obey*
pariēs, parietis (m.)   *wall*
pariō, -ere, peperī, partus   *to produce;
acquire*

Paris, Paridis (m.)   *Paris*
pariter   *equally*
Parius, -a, -um   *of the island Paros; Parian*
parma, -ae   *shield*
parō (1)   *to prepare*
pars, partis (f.)   *part*
part-   see **pariō**
Parthī, -ōrum   *Parthians*
partior, -īrī, partītus sum   *to distribute*
partus, -ūs   *birth*
parvus, -a, -um   *small*
pascō, -ere, pāvī, pāstus   *to graze; feed*
pascor, -ī, pāstus sum   *to feed*
pass-   see **pandō** or **patior**
passim   *all about*
passus, -ūs   *pace*
pāstor, pāstōris (m.)   *shepherd*
Patavium, -ī   *Padua*
patefaciō, -ere, patefēcī, patefactus
to open
pateō, -ēre, patuī   *to extend; be open;
be evident*
pater, patris (m.)   *father*
patera, -ae   *bowl*
patēscō, -ere, patuī   *to lie open*
patior, -ī, passus sum   *to suffer; endure*
patria, -ae   *country, homeland*
patrius, -a, -um   *fatherly, paternal; native*
paucus, -a, -um   *few*
paulātim   *gradually*
pauper, pauperis   *poor*
paveō, -ēre, pāvī   *to dread*
pavidus, -a, -um   *terrified*
pavitō (1)   *to shiver*
pavor, pavōris (m.)   *terror*
pāx, pācis (f.)   *peace*
pectus, pectoris (nt.)   *breast, chest; heart*
pecūnia, -ae   *money*
pecūniōsus, -a, -um   *well off*
pecus, pecoris (nt.)   *herd*
pecus, pecudis (f.)   *sheep; animal*
pelagus, -ī   *sea*
Pelasgus, -a, -um   *Greek, Pelasgian*
Peliās, Peliae (m.)   *Pelias*
Pēlīdēs, Pēlīdae (m.)   *descendant of
Peleus*
pellāx, pellācis   *deceitful*
pellis, pellis (f.)   *hide, skin*

pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus   *to push*
Pelopēus, -a, -um   *of King Pelops*
   (a Greek)
pelta, -ae   *light shield*
penātēs, penātium (m.)   *household gods*
pendeō, -ēre, pependī   *to hang (down)*
Pēneleus, -ī   *Peneleus*
penetrālia, penetrālium   *inner room*
penetrālis, penetrāle   *inner*
penetrō (1)   *to penetrate*
penitus   *(deep) within*
penna, -ae   *wing*
Penthesilēa, -ae   *Penthesilea*
penus, -ūs (f.)   *provisions of food*
peplus, -ī   *gown*
per [+ acc.]   *through*
peragrō (1)   *to travel through*
percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus   *to learn*
percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus   *to strike*
perdīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus   *to finish*
   speaking
perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus   *to destroy,*
   ruin
pereō, perīre, perīvī, peritus   *to die;*
   perish
pererrō (1)   *to wander through*
perferō, -ferre, pertulī, perlātus   *to bear;*
   carry through
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus   *to bring about*
perflō (1)   *to blow through*
perfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus   *to soak*
Pergama, -ōrum   *Pergama (Troy's citadel)*
pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus   *to proceed*
perīculōsus, -a, -um   *dangerous*
perīculum, -ī   *danger*
perincommodē   *very inconveniently*
Periphās, Periphantis (m.)   *Periphas*
perit-   see **pereō**
periūrus, -a, -um   *lying*
perlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum   *to glide along*
permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus
   to remain, persist
permisceō, -ēre, -miscuī, -mixtus
   to mingle
permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to allow*
permultus, -a, -um   *very many*
pernīx, pernīcis   *nimble, swift*
pernumerō (1)   *to count up*

perpetuus, -a, -um   *eternal*
perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus   *to break*
   through
persaepe   *very often*
persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus   *to pay*
personō, -āre, -sonuī, -sonitus   *to play*
perstō, -āre, -stitī, -status   *to persist*
perstrepō, -ere   *to make much noise*
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [+ dat.]
   to persuade
pertaedet, pertaedēre, pertaeduit, pertaesum
   to be sick of
pertemptō (1)   *to pervade, seize*
pertineō, -ēre, -tenuī   *to pertain*
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus   *to arrive*
pervius, -a, -um   *traversable*
pēs, pedis (m.)   *foot*
pestis, pestis (f.)   *plague; destruction*
petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus   *to seek*
phalānx, phalangis (f.)   *phalanx*
pharetra, -ae   *quiver*
Phoebus, -ī   *Apollo*
Phoenissa, -ae   *Phoenician woman*
Phoenīx, Phoenīcis   *Phoenician*
Phoenīx, Phoenīcis (m.)   *Phoenix*
Phrygius, -a, -um   *Phrygian, Trojan*
Phryx, Phrygis   *Trojan, Phrygian*
Phthīa, -ae   *Phthia (city in Greece)*
pictūra, -ae   *picture*
pietās, pietātis (f.)   *duty, loyalty*
piger, pigra, pigrum   *lazy*
piget, pigēre, piguit, pigitum   *to annoy*
pīlum, -ī   *javelin*
pīneus, -a, -um   *of pine*
pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictus   *to paint,*
   embroider
pinguis, pingue   *fat*
piō (1)   *to appease*
piscis, piscis (m.)   *fish*
pius, -a, -um   *pious*
placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus [+ dat.]
   to please
placidus, -a, -um   *peaceful*
plācō (1)   *to appease, calm*
plānē   *plainly, clearly*
plangor, plangōris (m.)   *loud wailing*
plausus, -ūs   *applause*
plēbs, plēbis (f.)   *people*

plēnus, -a, -um *full*

pluit, pluere, pluit *it rains*

plūrimum *very much;* **plūrimum posse**
  to be most powerful

plūrimus, -a, -um *most*

plūs, plūris *more*

pluvius, -a, -um *rainy*

pōculum, -ī *cup*

poena, -ae *punishment, penalty*

Poenus, -a, -um *Phoenician; Carthaginian*

poēta, -ae (m.) *poet*

Polītēs, Polītae (m.) *Polites*

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum *to promise*

polus, -ī *sky*

Pompeius, -ī *Pompey*

pondus, ponderis (nt.) *weight*

pōne [+ acc.] *behind*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus *to put, place*

pontus, -ī *sea*

populō (1) *to plunder*

populor (1) *to ravage, plunder*

populus, -ī *people*

porta, -ae *gate*

porticus, -ūs *corridor; portico*

portō (1) *to carry*

portus, -ūs *harbor*

poscō, -ere, poposcī *to demand; ask*

possum, posse, potuī *to be able, can*

post *afterwards*

posterus, -a, -um *next*

posthabeō, -ēre, -habuī, -habitus *to hold
  after*

postis, postis (m.) *doorpost*

postmodum *afterwards*

postquam *after*

postulō (1) *to demand*

potēns, potentis *master; powerful*

potentia, -ae *power*

potior, -īrī, potītus sum [+ abl.] *to gain
  possession of*

potius *rather*

praeceps, praecipitis *head first*

praeceps, praecipitis (nt.) *precipice*

praeceptum, -ī *advice*

praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -cēptus *to get in
  advance*

praecipitō (1) *to rush headlong*

praecipuē *especially*

praeclārus, -a, -um *very bright*

praecordia, -ōrum (nt.) *heart*

praeda, -ae *booty*

praedicō (1) *to proclaim; preach*

praefectus, -ī *commander*

praeferō, -ferre, praetulī, praelātus
  to prefer

praemetuō, -ere *to fear (the future)*

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus *to send
  forth*

praemium, -ī *reward*

praeruptus, -a, -um *towering*

praesēns, praesentis *present*

praesēpe, praesēpis (nt.) *hive*

praesidium, -ī *defense*

praestāns, praestantis *surpassing*

praestō *ready*

praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus *to be better*

praeter [+ acc.] *except for; aside from*

praetereā *henceforth; besides;
  in addition*

praetereō, praeterīre, praeterīvī, praeteritus
  to pass over

praetor, praetōris (m.) *praetor*

praevertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus *to outstrip*

praevertor, -ī, -versus sum *to surpass*

precor (1) *to pray*

prehendō, -ere, prehendī, prehēnsus
  to take

prehēns- see **prehendō**

prehēnsō (1) *to grasp*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus *to control;
  press*

presbyter, -ī *priest*

prex, precis (f.) *prayer*

Priamēius, -a, -um *of Priam*

Priamus, -ī *Priam*

prīdem *long ago*

prīmārius, -a, -um *first-rate*

prīmum *at first*

prīmus, -a, -um *first; chief*

prīnceps, prīncipis (m.) *leader*

principiō *at first*

prior, prius *first*

Priscus, -ī *Priscus*

prius *before*

priusquam *before*

prīvātim *privately*

prō [+ abl.]   *for; in front of*

probitās, probitātis (f.)   *honesty*

procāx, procācis   *insolent*

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus   *to go forward*

procella, -ae   *gust*

procer, proceris (m.)   *noble*

prōcub-   see **prōcumbō**

procul   *far; from far off*

prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus   *to sink down*

prōcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus   *to run forward*

prōditiō, prōditiōnis (f.)   *treason*

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus   *to betray*

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus   *to prolong*

proelium, -ī   *battle*

prōferō, -ferre, prōtulī, prōlātus   *to bring forward*

prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus   *to profit*

proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum   *to set out*

profor (1)   *to speak*

profugus, -a, -um   *fugitive*

profundus, -a, -um   *deep*

prōgeniēs, -ēī   *offspring*

prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus   *to keep off; prohibit*

prōlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum   *to sink into ruin*

prōlēs, prōlis (f.)   *offspring*

prōluō, -ere, -luī, -lūtus   *to drench*

prōmissum, -ī   *promise*

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to promise*

prōmō, -ere, prōmpsī, prōmptus   *to bring out*

prōnus, -a, -um   *leaning forward*

properō (1)   *to hurry, hasten*

propinquō (1) [+ dat.]   *to approach*

propinquus, -a, -um   *near*

propius   *nearer*

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus   *to display; state*

proprius, -a, -um   *one's own*

proptereā quod   *because*

prōra, -ae   *prow*

prōruptus, -a, -um   *bursting forth*

prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum   *to follow; continue*

prōspectus, -ūs   *view*

prosperus, -a, -um   *favorable*

prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus   *to look out*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī [+ dat.]   *to benefit*

prōtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus   *to protect*

prōtinus   *immediately*

prōtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus   *to drag forward*

prōvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus   *to convey*

prōveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus   *to appear; succeed*

prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus   *to provide for; foresee*

prōvincia, -ae   *province*

proximus, -a, -um   *nearest; neighbor*

pūbēs, pūbis (f.)   *youth*

pūblicē   *all together; publicly*

pūblicus, -a, -um   *public*

Publius, -ī   *Publius*

pudet, pudēre, puduit, puditum   *to shame*

puella, -ae   *girl*

puer, -ī   *boy*

pugna, -ae   *fight*

pugnō (1)   *to fight*

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum   *pretty*

pullus, -ī   *chicken*

puls-   see **pellō**

pulvis, pulveris (m.)   *dust*

Pūnicus, -a, -um   *Phoenician; Punic*

puppis, puppis (f.)   *ship*

purgō (1)   *to clear*

purpureus, -a, -um   *purple; radiant*

pūrus, -a, -um   *pure, bright*

putō (1)   *to think*

Pygmaliōn, Pygmaliōnis (m.)   *Pygmalion*

Pȳramus, -ī   *Pyramus*

Pyrrhus, -ī   *Pyrrhus (a Greek, son of Achilles)*

quā   *where*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus   *to ask, seek*

quālis, quāle   *such, such a kind as, what kind of*

quam   *how? as; until*

quam ob rem   *how? why?*

quamdiū   *while, as long as*

quamquam *although*

quamvīs *although; however much;*
  as you wish

quandō *when; since*

quandōquidem *since*

quantus, -a, -um *how great; how much*

quārē *therefore; why*

quasi *of sorts*

quassō (1) *to shake*

quātenus *how far*

quater *four times*

quatiō, -ere, quassus sum *to shake*

-que *and*

queō, quire, quīvī, quitus *to be able, can*

queror, -ī, questus sum *to complain*

quī, quae, quod *who, what*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
  whoever, whatever

quid *what? why?*

quidem *in fact*

quiēs, quiētis (f.) *quiet; rest*

quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quietus *to rest*

quiētus, -a, -um *calm, quiet*

quīn *even; that*

quīnī, -ae, -a *five each*

quīnquāgintā *fifty*

quīnque *five*

Quintus Atrius, -ī -ī *Quintus Atrius*

quippe *indeed*

Quirīnus, -ī *Romulus*

quis *who?*

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam *anyone,*
  anything

quisque, quaeque, quidque *each one,*
  each thing

quisquis, quaeque, quidquid *whoever,*
  whatever

quō *whither? to where? why?*

quoad *while, as long as*

quōcircā *therefore*

quōcumque *wherever*

quod *because*

quōmodo *just as*

quōnam *where to?*

quondam *once; at one time*

quoniam *since*

quōquam *anywhere*

quoque *also*

quot *as many; how many*

rabiēs, -ēī (f.) *rage*

rapidus, -a, -um *swift, rapid*

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus *to snatch*

raptō (1) *to drag*

raptor, raptōris (m.) *plunderer*

rārus, -a, -um *scattered*

ratiō, ratiōnis (f.) *reason*

ratis, ratis (f.) *ship*

raucus, -a, -um *hoarse*

recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus *to withdraw*

recēns, recentis *recent; fresh*

recēp- see **recipiō**

recess- see **recēdō**

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus *to recover;*
  accept

reclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus *to reveal*

recondō, -ere, -condidī, -conditus
  to hide

recordor (1) *to remember*

rēctē *correctly*

rēctum, -ī *right*

recursō (1) *to return*

recūsō (1) *to refuse*

recutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus *to strike*

reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus *to reply;*
  return

redeō, redīre, redīvī, reditus *to return*

reditus, -ūs *return*

redoleō, -ēre, -doluī *to smell of*

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus *to lead back*

redux, reducis *restored*

referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus *to say; report;*
  carry off/back; answer

rēfert, rēferre, rētulit *to concern, be of*
  importance

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus *to restore*

reflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexus *to turn back*

refugiō, -ere, -fūgī *to flee*

refulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī *to glisten*

refuls- see **refulgeō**

refundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus *to pour back*

rēgālis, rēgāle *royal*

rēgīna, -ae *queen*

regiō, regiōnis (f.) *region*

rēgius, -a, -um *royal*

rēgnātor, rēgnātōris (m.) *ruler*

rēgnō (1) *to reign*

rēgnum, -ī   *kingdom*
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus   *to rule*
relātus, -a, -um   *brought back*
rēligiō, rēligiōnis (f.)   *offering; religion*
rēligiōsus, -a, -um   *religious*
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus   *to leave*
reliquiae, -ārum   *remains*
reliquum esse   *to remain*
relūceō, -ēre, -lūxī   *to reflect*
remeō (1)   *to return*
remētior, -īrī, -mēnsus sum   *to go back over; cross again*
rēmigium, -ī   *rowing; oars*
remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus   *to send back*
remordeō, -ēre, -mordī, -morsus   *to gnaw*
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus   *to remove*
rēmus, -ī   *oar*
Remus, -ī   *Remus*
renovō (1)   *to renew*
reor, rērī, ratus sum   *to think*
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus   *to repel*
rependō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsus   *to compensate*
repentē   *suddenly*
repetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītus   *to retrace*
repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus   *to fill*
repōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus   *to (re)store*
reportō (1)   *to carry back*
reposcō, -ere   *to demand*
reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus   *to check, restrain*
requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētus   *to rest*
requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus   *to seek, ask*
rēs, reī (f.)   *thing; state; happening*
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae   *republic*
resēd-   see **resīdō**
reservō (1)   *to preserve; save*
reses, residis   *inactive*
resīdō, -ere, -sēdī   *to sit down*
resistō, -ere, -stitī   *to halt; resist*
resolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus   *to free*
respectō (1)   *to gaze at*
respendō, -ere, -spendī, -spēnsus   *to repay*
respex-   see **respiciō**
respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus   *to look back*
respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsus   *to respond; correspond*

respōnsum, -ī   *response*
restinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus   *to extinguish*
restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus   *to restore*
restō, -āre, -stitī   *to survive; remain*
resupīnus, -a, -um   *lying down on one's back*
resurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus   *to rise again*
retegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus   *to uncover*
retentus, -a, -um   *slackened*
retrō   *back*
revertor, -ī, -versus sum   *to return*
revinciō, -īre, -vīnxī, -vīnctus   *to bind tight*
revīviscō, -ere, revīxī   *to live again*
revīsō, -ere   *to revisit; see again*
revīx-   see **revīviscō**
revocō (1)   *to recall; restore*
revolvō, -ere, revolvī, revolūtus   *to tell*
rēx, rēgis (m.)   *king*
Rhēsus, -ī   *Rhesus (ally of the Trojans)*
Rhīpeus, -ī   *Rhipeus*
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus   *to laugh*
rigēns, rigentis   *rigid*
rīma, -ae   *fissure*
rīpa, -ae   *riverbank*
rōbur, rōboris (nt.)   *oak; strength*
rogātiō, rogātiōnis (f.)   *proposal*
rogitō (1)   *to ask eagerly, inquire eagerly*
rogō (1)   *to ask*
Rōma, -ae   *Rome*
Rōmānus, -a, -um   *Roman*
Rōmulus, -ī   *Romulus*
Roscius, -ī   *Roscius*
roseus, -a, -um   *rosy*
rota, -ae   *wheel*
rudēns, rudentis (m.)   *rope*
ruīna, -ae   *ruin*
rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus   *to break; utter*
ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus   *to rush; plow*
rūpēs, rūpis (f.)   *cliff*
rupt-   see **rumpō**
rūrsus   *back*
rūs, rūris (nt.)   *countryside*
Rutenī, -ōrum   *Ruteni*
Rutulus, -a, -um   *Rutulian (people of Italy)*

Sabaeus, -a, -um *Sabaean*

sacer, sacra, sacrum *holy, consecrated*

sacerdōs, sacerdōtis (m/f) *priest, priestess*

sacrō (1) *to consecrate*

saeculum, -ī *generation; century*

saepe *often*

saepiō, -īre, saepsī, saeptus *to enclose; fence in*

saeviō, -īre, saeviī, saevītus *to rage*

saevus, -a, -um *cruel*

sagitta, -ae *arrow*

sal, salis (nt.) *salt*

salsus, -a, -um *salty*

saltem *at least*

saltō (1) *to dance*

saltus, -ūs *jumping*

salum, -ī *salt sea*

salūs, salūtis (f.) *safety; security*

salvus, -a, -um *intact*

Samos, Samī (f.) *Island of Samos*

sānctus, -a, -um *holy*

sanguineus, -a, -um *bloody*

sanguis, sanguinis (m.) *blood*

saniēs, -ēī *blood*

sapiēns, sapientis *wise*

sapientia, -ae *wisdom*

Sarpēdōn, Sarpēdōnis (m.) *Sarpedon*

sat *sufficient, enough*

sata, -ōrum *crops*

satiō (1) *to satiate*

satis *enough, sufficient*

sator, satōris (m.) *sower; father*

Sāturnius, -a, -um *of Saturn; of Italy*

saucius, -a, -um *wounded*

saxum, -ī *rock*

scaena, -ae *background*

Scaeus, -a, -um *Scaean (of a gate of Troy)*

scālae, -ārum *ladder*

scandō, -ere, scandī, scānsus *to climb*

scelerātus, -a, -um *wicked*

scelestus, -a, -um *wicked, wretched*

scelus, sceleris (nt.) *crime*

scēptrum, -ī *scepter; power*

scīlicet *of course*

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus *to split*

scintilla, -ae *spark*

sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus *to know*

Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis (m.) *Scipio*

scītor (1) *to inquire*

scopulus, -ī *rock*

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus *to write*

scrīptiō, scrīptiōnis (f.) *writing*

scūtum, -ī *shield*

Scyllaeus, -a, -um *of Scylla*

Scȳrius, -a, -um *of Scyros, Scyrian (island of Pyrrhus' birth)*

sēcessus, -ūs *inlet*

sēclūdō, -ere, sēclūsī, sēclūsus *to shut out*

secō, -āre, secuī, sectus *to cut*

sēcrētō *in private*

sēcrētus, -a, -um *remote*

sect- see **secō**

secundus, -a, -um *following; obedient; second*

secūris, secūris (f.) *ax*

sēcūrus, -a, -um [+ gen.] *unconcerned (by); carefree*

secus *otherwise*

sed *but*

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus *to sit*

sēdēs, sēdis (f.) *seat, home*

sedīle, sedīlis (nt.) *seat*

sēditiō, sēditiōnis (f.) *riot*

seges, segetis (f.) *crop*

sēgnitiēs, -ēī *laziness*

semel *once*

sēmen, sēminis (nt.) *seed*

Semīramis, Semīramidis (f.) *Semiramis (queen of Babylon)*

sēmita, -ae *path*

semper *always*

sempiternus, -a, -um *eternal*

senātus, -ūs *senate*

senectūs, senectūtis (f.) *old age*

sēnī, -ae, -a *six each*

senior, seniōris (m.) *old man*

sēnsus, -ūs *sense*

sententia, -ae *opinion*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus *to sense, feel; hear*

sentis, sentis (m.) *thorn, bramble*

sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī, sepultus *to bury*

septem *seven*

septimus, -a, -um *seventh*

sepulcrum, -ī *tomb; burial*

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum   *to follow*
serēnō (1)   *to calm*
serēnus, -a, -um   *serene*
Serestus, -ī   *Serestus*
Sergestus, -ī   *Sergestus*
seriēs, -ēī   *series*
sermō, sermōnis (m.)   *talking, conversation*
serō, -ere, sēvī, satus   *to beget; plant*
serpēns, serpentis (m.)   *snake*
serpō, -ere, serpsī, serptus   *to crawl*
serrātus, -a, -um   *serrated*
sertum, -ī   *wreath*
sērus, -a, -um   *late*
servāns, servantis   *mindful*
serviō, -īre, servīvī, servītus [+ dat.]
   to serve
servitium, -ī   *slavery*
servitūs, servitūtis (f.)   *slavery*
servō (1)   *to guard, keep; save*
servus, -ī   *slave*
sēstertius, -ī   *sesterce (small silver coin)*
seu   *whether; or*
sī   *if*
sībilus, -a, -um   *hissing*
sīc   *in this way*
Sīcania, -ae   *Sicily*
siccus, -a, -um   *dry; thirsty*
Sicilia, -ae   *Sicily*
Siculus, -a, -um   *Sicilian*
sīcut   *as*
Sīdōn, Sīdōnis (f.)   *Sidon (Phoenician city)*
Sīdōnius, -a, -um   *Phoenician, Sidonian*
sīdus, sīderis (nt.)   *star*
Sīgēus, -a, -um   *of Sigeum (a promontory)*
signō (1)   *to observe; mark*
signum, -ī   *sign*
silentium, -ī   *silence*
sileō, -ēre, siluī   *to be silent*
silex, silicis (m.)   *flint*
silva, -ae   *forest*
similis, simile   *similar*
Simoīs, Simoëntis (m.)   *Simois River*
simul   *at the same time*
simulāc   *as soon as*
simulācrum, -ī   *image, statue*
simulō (1)   *to feign*
sīn   *but if*

Sinai [nominative and accusative form]   *Sinai*
sine [+ abl.]   *without*
singulī, -ae, -a   *single; each*
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum   *left*
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs   *to allow*
Sinōn, Sinōnis (m.)   *Sinon*
sinuō (1)   *to fold, twist*
sinus, -ūs   *bay; fold*
sistō, -ere, stetī, status   *to stop; settle*
situs, -a, -um   *situated*
sīve   *whether; or*
socer, -ī   *father-in-law; (pl.) parents-in-law*
societās, societātis (f.)   *association*
sociō (1)   *to ally, welcome*
socius, -a, -um   *allied*
socius, -ī   *ally; comrade*
sodālis, sodālis (m/f)   *companion*
sōl, sōlis (m.)   *sun*
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum   *to be accustomed*
solidus, -a, -um   *solid*
solium, -ī   *throne*
sollemnis, sollemne   *solemn*
sōlor (1)   *to console*
solum, -ī   *ground, soil*
sōlus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**]   *alone;*
   nōn sōlum *not only*
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus   *to loosen*
somnus, -ī   *sleep, dream*
sonitus, -ūs   *sound*
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus   *to resound*
sonōrus, -a, -um   *roaring*
sonus, -ī   *sound*
sōpītus, -a, -um   *sleeping*
sopor, sopōris (m.)   *sleep*
sordidus, -a, -um   *dirty*
soror, sorōris (f.)   *sister*
sors, sortis (f.)   *fate, lot*
sortior, -īrī, sortītus sum   *to draw by lots*
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus   *to scatter*
Sparta, -ae   *Sparta*
Spartānus, -a, -um   *Spartan*
spatium, -ī   *space*
speciēs, -ēī   *sight*
speculor (1)   *to watch*
speculum, -ī   *mirror*
spēlunca, -ae   *cave*

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus *to reject*
spērō (1) *to hope; expect*
spēs, -eī *hope*
spīra, -ae *fold, coil*
spīrō (1) *to emit; breathe*
spissus, -a, -um *thick*
splendidus, -a, -um *brilliant*
spoliō (1) *to rob*
spolium, -ī *spoils*
sponda, -ae *couch*
spōnsa, -ae *bride*
sponte (f.) *of one's own accord*
spūma, -ae *foam*
spūmeus, -a, -um *foamy*
spūmō (1) *to foam*
squāleō, -ēre, squāluī *to be filthy*
squāmeus, -a, -um *scaly*
stabilis, stabile *stable*
stabulum, -ī *stable*
stāgnum, -ī *standing water*
statim *immediately*
statiō, statiōnis (f.) *station; anchorage*
statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtus *to build*
stēlla, -ae *star*
sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus *to spread,
  lay low*
Stēsagorās, -ae (m.) *Stesagoras*
Sthenelus, -ī *Sthenelus*
stīpō (1) *to pack together, store*
stirps, stirpis (f.) *stock; lineage*
stō, stāre, stetī, status *to stand*
strāt- see **sternō**
strātum, -ī *pavement*
strepitus, -ūs *noise*
strict- see **stringō**
strīdeō, -ēre, strīdī *to rustle*
strīdor, strīdōris (m.) *rattling*
stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus *to trim*
struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus *to arrange*
studium, -ī *zeal; inclination*
stultitia, -ae *folly*
stupeō, -ēre, stupuī *to be astonished*
stuppeus, -a, -um *of hemp*
suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus *to urge*
sub [+ acc.] *to under*; [+ abl.] *under*
subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus *to pull up*
subeō, subīre, subīvī, subitus
  to bear (under); enter

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus *to throw
  under; lower*
subigō, -ere, subēgī, subāctus *to subdue*
subitō *suddenly*
subitus, -a, -um *sudden*
sublābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum *to slip down*
sublātus see **tollō**
sublīmis, sublīme *high; uplifted*
subnectō, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus *to fasten
  under*
subnixus, -a, -um *resting on*
subrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī *to smile at*
subsidium, -ī *reserve, assistance*
subsistō, -ere, -stitī *to stop*
substit- see **subsistō**
subvolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus *to roll
  uphill*
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus *to enter*
successus, -ūs *success*
succingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus *to gird up*
succurrō, -ere, succurrī, succursus
  to help [+ dat.]
sūdō (1) *to sweat*
sūdor, sūdōris (m.) *sweat*
suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus *to be accustomed*
sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātus
  to endure
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus *to supply*
suffīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus *to nail on*
suffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus *to fill*
sulcus, -ī *furrow*
sulphur, sulphuris (nt.) *sulfur*
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus *to be*
summergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersus *to sink*
summus, -a, -um *highest; chief; last*
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus *to take up;
  exact*
super [+ acc.] *onto;* [+ abl.] *above;
  concerning*
superbia, -ae *haughtiness*
superbus, -a, -um *haughty*
superēmineō, -ēre *to tower over*
superō (1) *to conquer; kill; survive*
supersum, -esse, -fuī *to remain; survive*
superus, -a, -um *above, upper*
supplex, supplicis *humble; suppliant*
suppliciter *humbly*
suprēmus, -a, -um *last*

sūra, -ae   *calf (of leg)*
surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus   *to rise*
sūs, suis (m/f)   *pig*
suscēnseō, -ēre, -cēnsuī   *to be angry*
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus   *to take up*
suscitō (1)   *to arouse*
suspendō, -ere, suspendī, suspēnsus
   to hang
suspēnsus, -a, -um   *anxious*
suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus   *to look
   at; suspect*
suspīrō (1)   *to sigh*
sustineō, -ēre, sustinuī, sustentus
   to sustain
sustlit   see **tollō**
suus, -a, -um   *his/her/its/their own*
Sȳchaeus, -ī   *Sychaeus*
syrtis, syrtis (f.)   *sandbank*
tābeō, -ēre   *to soak*
tabula, -ae   *plank*
tabulātum, -ī   *floor*
taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitus   *to be silent*
tacitus, -a, -um   *silent*
tāctus, -ūs   *touch*
taeda, -ae   *pine torch; marriage*
taedet, taedēre, taeduit, taesum   *to bore;
   disgust*
tālis, tāle   *such*
tam   *so*
tam . . . quam   *as well as*
tamen   *nevertheless*
tandem   *finally*
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus   *to touch*
tantopere   *so much*
tantum   *only; so much*
tantus, -a, -um   *so great*
tardus, -a, -um   *slow*
taurīnus, -a, -um   *of a bull*
taurus, -ī   *bull*
tēctum, -ī   *house; hall*
tegmen, tegminis (nt.)   *skin*
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus   *to cover; hide;
   protect*
tellūs, tellūris (f.)   *land*
tēlum, -ī   *spear; weapon*
temerō (1)   *to defile; disgrace*
temnō, -ere   *to scorn*
temperō (1)   *to regulate; restrain*

tempestās, tempestātis (f.)   *storm*
templum, -ī   *temple*
temptō (1)   *to try; examine*
tempus, temporis (nt.)   *time; temple
   (of head)*
tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus   *to extend; aim*
tenebrae, -ārum   *darkness*
Tenedos, Tenedī (f.)   *Tenedos (island)*
teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus   *to hold; keep
   from*
tener, -a, -um   *tender*
tentōrium, -ī   *tent*
tenuis, tenue   *fine, thin; poor*
tenus [+ abl.]   *up to*
ter   *thrice, three times*
terebrō (1)   *to drill into*
tergum, -ī   *back*
tergus, tergōris (nt.)   *hide*
terminō (1)   *to limit*
ternī, -ae, -a   *three each*
terra, -ae   *land*
terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus   *to frighten*
tertius, -a, -um   *third*
testis, testis (m/f)   *witness*
testor (1)   *to testify*
testūdō, testūdinis (f.)   *dome*
Teucer, Teucrī   *Teucer (a banished
   Greek)*
Teucer, Teucrī   *Teucer (former king of
   Troy)*
Teucria, -ae   *Troy*
Teucrus, -a, -um   *Trojan*
texō, -ere, texuī, textus   *to weave*
thalamus, -ī   *bedroom*
Thalēs, Thalis/Thalētis (m.)   *Thales*
theātrum, -ī   *theater*
thēsaurus, -ī   *treasure*
Thessandrus, -ī   *Thessandrus*
Thisbē, Thisbēs (f.)   *Thisbe*
Thoās, Thoantis (m.)   *Thoas*
Thrēissa, -ae   *Thracian woman*
Thybris, Thybridis (m.)   *Tiber River*
Thymoetēs, Thymoētae (m.)   *Thymoetes*
thymum, -ī   *thyme*
Tiberīnus, -a, -um   *of the Tiber River*
Tiberius, -ī   *Tiberius*
Timāvus, -ī   *Timavus River*
timeō, -ēre, timuī   *to fear*

timor, timōris (m.) *fear*
tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus *to dip*
Tītyrus, -ī *Tityrus*
togātus, -a, -um *wearing a toga*
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus *to lift*
tonat, tonāre, tonuit *it thunders*
tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsus *to shear*
tonitrua, -ōrum *thunder*
tōnsor, tōnsōris (m.) *barber*
torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortus *to twist*
torrēns, torrentis (m.) *torrent*
torreō, -ēre, torruī, tostus *to roast*
torus, -ī *couch*
tot *so many*
totidem *as many*
totiēns *so often*
tōtus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**] *all, entire*
trabs, trabis (f.) *beam*
tractābilis, tractābile *manageable*
trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditus *to hand over*
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus *to draw, drag*
trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus *to pierce*
tranquillus, -a, -um *tranquil*
trāns [+ acc.] *through, across*
Trānsaplinus, -a, -um *Transalpine;*
    across the Alps
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsīvī, trānsitus
    to cross over; pass
trānsferō, -ferre, trānstulī, trānslātus
    to transfer
trānsfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus *to pierce*
trānsitus, -ūs *passage*
trānsportō (1) *to carry across*
trānstul- see **trānsferō**
trāx- see **trahō**
tremefaciō, -ere, tremefēcī, tremefactus
    to alarm
tremō, -ere, tremuī *to tremble*
tremor, tremōris (m.) *tremble*
trepidō (1) *to tremble*
trepidus, -a, -um *alarmed, anxious*
trēs, tria *three*
tribūnus, -ī *tribune*
tridēns, tridentis (m.) *trident*
trīgintā *thirty*
Trīnacrius, -a, -um *Sicilian*
Triōnēs, Triōnum (m.) *Little Bear*
    constellation

trīstis, trīste *sad*
tristitia, -ae *sadness*
trisulcus, -a, -um *three-forked*
Trītōn, Trītonis (m.) *Triton (a god)*
Trītōnia, -ae *Minerva*
Trītōnis, Trītōnidis (f.) *Minerva*
triumphus, -ī *triumph*
Trōia, -ae *Troy*
Trōiānus, -a, -um *Trojan*
Trōilus, -ī *Troilus*
Trōs, Trōis (m.) *Trojan*
trucīdō (1) *to slaughter*
trumphō (1) *to celebrate a triumph*
truncus, -ī *body; torso*
tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum *to watch, guard*
tul- see **ferō**
tum *then*
tumeō, -ēre, tumuī *to swell*
tumidus, -a, -um *swelling*
tumultuō (1) *to make a commotion*
tumultus, -ūs *tumult*
tumulus, -ī *mound*
tunc *then*
tundō, -ere, tutudī, tūnsus *to beat*
tunica, -ae *tunic*
turba, -ae *crowd*
turbō (1) *to confuse, throw into confusion*
turbō, turbinis (m.) *whirlpool*
turpis, turpe *shameful*
turris, turris (f.) *tower*
tūs, tūris (nt.) *incense*
tūtor (1) *to watch, protect*
tūtus, -a, -um *safe*
tuus, -a, -um *your* (sg.)
Tȳdīdēs, Tȳdīdae (m.) *Diomedes*
Tyndaris, Tyndaridis (f.) *Helen*
Typhōeus, -a, -um *Typhoean*
tyrannus, -ī *tyrant*
Tyrius, -a, -um *Tyrian, Carthaginian*
Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um *Tyrrhenian*
Tyrus, -ī (f.) *Tyre*
ūber, ūberis (nt.) *fertility*
ubi *when; where*
ubīque *everywhere, anywhere*
Ūcalegōn, Ūcalegontis (m.) *Ucalegon*
ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum *to avenge*
Ulixēs, Ulixeī (m.) *Ulysses*
ūllus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**] *any*

ultimus, -a, -um *last, final*
ultor, ultōris (m.) *avenger*
ultrā modum *exceedingly, very much*
ultrīx, ultrīcis *vengeful*
ultrō *voluntarily; furthermore*
ululō (1) *to howl*
ulva, -ae *sedge*
umbō, umbōnis (m.) *knob*
umbra, -ae *shadow; shade*
ūmectō (1) *to wet*
umerus, -ī *shoulder*
ūmidus, -a, -um *damp*
umquam *ever*
ūnā (cum) *together with*
uncus, -a, -um *curved*
unda, -ae *wave*
unde *from where*
undique *from all sides*
undō (1) *to undulate*
ūnus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**]
  one; single; alone
ūnusquisque *each one*
urbs, urbis (f.) *city*
urgeō, -ēre, ursī *to force*
ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustus *to burn*
ūsquam *at all*
usque *constantly; even*
ūsus, -ūs *use*
ut *how, as; in order to; with the result
  that; that; when*
uter, utra, utrum [gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**]
  which (of two)
uterque, utraque, utrumque *each, both*
uterus, -ī *womb; belly*
utī *as, when; how*
utinam *if only*
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum [+ abl.] *to use*
utrimque *on both sides*
utrum *whether*
utrum . . . an *whether . . . or*
uxor, uxōris (f.) *wife*
vacō (1) *to have time*
vacuus, -a, -um *vacant*
vādō, -ere *to go on, advance*
vadum, -ī *shallow; depths*
vae *woe*
vagor (1) *to wander*
valeō, -ēre, valuī *to be strong*

Valerius, -ī *Valerius*
valētūdō, valētūdinis (f.) *health*
validus, -a, -um *mighty*
vallis, vallis (f.) *valley*
vānus, -a, -um *empty; vain*
varius, -a, -um *varied*
vastō (1) *to ravage, lay waste*
vastus, -a, -um *vast*
vātēs, vātis (m/f) *soothsayer*
-ve *or*
vehementer *violently; very much*
vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectus *to carry*
vel *or; even*
vēla dare *to set sail*
vēlāmen, vēlāminis (nt.) *garment*
vēlivolus, -a, -um *canvassed*
vellō, -ere, vulsī, vulsus *to tear up*
vēlō (1) *to cover*
vēlum, -ī *sail*
velut *as, like*
velutī *as, like*
vēnātrīx, vēnātrīcis (f.) *huntress*
vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditus *to sell*
venēnum, -ī *poison*
venia, -ae *grace*
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus *to come*
vēnor (1) *to hunt*
venter, ventris (m.) *belly*
ventus, -ī *wind*
Venus, Veneris (f.) *Venus*
verbum, -ī *word*
vērē *truly*
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum *to fear*
vērō *truly*
verrō, -ere, verrī, versus *to sweep*
versō (1) *to twist; ponder; keep using*
vertex, verticis (m.) *summit; head;
  whirlpool*
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus *to turn, overturn*
verū, -ūs (nt.) *spit*
vērum, -ī *truth*
vērus, -a, -um *true*
vēsānus, -a, -um *demented*
vēscor, -ī [+ abl.] *to feed (on)*
Vesper, Vesperis (m.) *evening star;
  god of evening*
Vesta, -ae *Vesta (goddess of the hearth)*
vester, vestra, vestrum *your (pl.)*

vestibulum, -ī *entrance*
vestīgium, -ī *footstep, track*
vestis, vestis (f.) *clothing; tapestry*
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus *to forbid; oppose*
vetus, veteris *old*
vetustus, -a, -um *ancient*
vexō (1) *to attack, trouble*
via, -ae *way; journey*
vibrō (1) *to vibrate*
vīcīnia, -ae *nearness*
vicis [gen. sg] *changing fortune*
victor, victōris (m.) *victor*
victōria, -ae *victory*
vīctus, -ūs *food*
vīcus, -ī *village*
videlicet *namely*
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus *to see; [passive] seem*
vigeō, -ēre *to be strong; flourish*
vigil, vigilis (m/f) *watchman, sentinel*
vigilia, -ae *(night)watch*
vīgintī *twenty*
villus, -ī *hair; bristle*
vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctus *to bind; chain*
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus *to conquer*
vinculum, -ī *chain*
vīnum, -ī *wine*
violābilis, violābile *vulnerable*
violō (1) *to violate*
vīr- see **vīs**
vir, -ī *man*
virgineus, -a, -um *virgin*
virgō, virginis (f.) *virgin, young girl*
virtūs, virtūtis (f.) *courage*
vīs [pl: vīrēs] *force; (pl.) strength*

vīscus, vīsceris (nt.) *flesh*
vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsus *to look at, gaze*
vīsus, -ūs *view, sight*
vīta, -ae *life*
vītālis, vītāle *vital*
vītis, vītis (f.) *vine*
vītō (1) *to avoid*
vitta, -ae *garland*
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus *to live*
vīvus, -a, -um *living*
vix *hardly; with difficulty*
vīx- see **vīvō**
vōciferor (1) *to shout*
vocō (1) *to call; invoke*
volāticus, -a, -um *fleeting*
Volcānus, ī *Vulcan (god of fire)*
Volerō, Volerōnis (m.) *Volero*
volō (1) *to fly*
volō, velle, voluī *to want*
volucer, volucris, volucre *swift*
volūmen, volūminis (nt.) *fold, coil*
voluptās, voluptātis (f.) *pleasure*
volūtō (1) *to roll; ponder*
volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtus *to undergo; roll*
vorō (1) *to swallow*
vōtum, -ī *prayer; offering*
vōx, vōcis (f.) *voice; word*
vulgō (1) *to spread*
vulgus, -ī (nt.) *crowd*
vulnus, vulneris (nt.) *wound*
vulturius, -ī *vulture*
vultus, -ūs *face; feature*
Xanthus, -ī *Xanthus River*
Zephyrus, -ī *west wind*

English–Latin

accompany comitō (1)
(be) accustomed soleō, -ēre, solitus sum
advance vādō, -ere
Aeolus Aeolus, -ī
after postquam
alarmed trepidus, -a, -um
all omnis, omne
allow permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus
almighty omnipotēns, omnipotentis

although cum, quamquam
anchor ancora, -ae
and et
annoy piget, pigēre, piguit, pigitum
appear appāreō, -ēre, appāruī, appāritus
appearance habitus, -ūs
appease piō (1)
applause plausus, -ūs
Apollo Phoebus, -ī

army   exercitus, -ūs
around   circum [+ acc.]
arrive   perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus
arouse   excitō (1)
ask   ōrō (1), rogō (1), petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus
assail   ingruō, -ere, -gruī
avoid   vītō (1)
ax   secūris, secūris (f.)
Bacchus   Bacchus, -ī
basket   canistrum, -ī
battle   [noun] bellum, -ī
battle   [verb] bellō (1)
battle line   aciēs, -ēī
be   sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
be able   possum, posse, potuī
because   cum, quod
beg   precor (1), ōrō (1)
begin   incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus
believe   crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus
belt   cingulum, -ī
be accustomed   soleō, -ēre, solitus sum
be astonished   stupeō, -ēre, stupuī
be necessary   necesse est, esse, fuit; oportet, -ēre, oportuit
be permitted   licet, licēre, licuit, licitum
be silent   taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitus
because   cum, quod, quia
before   antequam, priusquam
(be) born   nāscor, -ī, nātus sum
beseech   ōrō (1)
besiege   obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus
bind tight   revinciō, -īre, -vīnxī, -vīnctus
bird   āles, ālitis (m/f)
bitter   acerbus, -a, -um
blade   mūcrō, mūcrōnis (m.)
blame   culpō (1)
blind   caecus, -a, -um
body   corpus, corporis (nt.)
book   liber, librī
bore   taedet, taedēre, taeduit, taesum
bowl   patera, -ae
branch   frōns, frondis (f.)
break   frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus
break through   perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus
breathless   exanimus, -a, -um
bring about   efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

bristle   villus, -ī
build   aedificō (1)
burn   ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustus
bursting forth   prōruptus, -a, -um
bury   sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī, sepultus
by   ā, ab [+ abl.]
camp   castra, -ōrum
can   possum, posse, potuī
carry   ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus
carry away   āvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus
carry back   reportō (1)
Carthage   Karthāgō, Karthāginis (f.)
Cassandra   Cassandra, -ae
ceiling   laquear, laqueāris (nt.)
celebrate   celebrō (1)
chain   vinculum, -ī
charge   indicium, -ī
chariot   currus, -ī
charioteer   agitātor, agitātōris (m.)
chips of wood   fōmes, fōmitis (m.)
citizen   cīvis, cīvis (m/f)
city   urbs, urbis (f.)
cliff   rūpēs, rūpis (f.)
climb up   ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus
cloud   nūbēs, nūbis (f.)
coil   spīra, -ae
cold   frīgus, frīgoris (nt.)
come   veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus
command   imperō (1) [+ dat.]
companion   comes, comitis (m.)
complain   queror, -ī, questus sum
comrade   socius, -ī
conceal   occultō (1)
concern   interest, interesse, interfuī; rēfert, rēferre, rētulit
confess   fateor, fatērī, fassus sum
confuse   turbō (1)
conquer   superō (1)
construct   contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus
cow   bōs, bovis (m/f)
creator   auctor, auctōris (m.)
crime   crīmen, crīminis (nt.)
crop   seges, segetis (f.)
crowd   caterva, -ae
cruel   crūdēlis, crūdēle
crush   obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus
cub   catulus, -ī
cup   pōculum, -ī

curtain aulaeum, -ī
dancer chorus, -ī
dark āter, ātra, ātrum
darken cālīgō (1)
darkness tenebrae, -ārum
daughter-in-law nurus, -ūs (f.)
death mors, mortis (f.)
deceitful pellāx, pellācis
deceive fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus
decide cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus
defend dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus
deity caelicola, -ae (m/f)
delay moror (1)
demand flāgitō (1)
depart discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus
deprived of cassus, -a, -um [+ abl.]
descendants minōrēs, minōrum (m.)
destroy dēleō, -ēre, -lēvī, -lētus
destruction excidium, -ī
device māchina, -ae
Diana Dīāna, -ae
die morior, -ī, mortuus sum
difficult difficilis, difficile
Diomedes Diomēdēs, Diomēdis (m.)
dip tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus
discover exigō, -ere, exēgī, exāctus
disperse diffugiō, -ere, -fūgī
divide dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus
do faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus
don induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtus
door iānua, -ae
doorpost postis, postis (m.)
doubt dubitō (1)
doubtful dubius, -a, -um
down from dē [+ abl.]
drag raptō (1)
draw over obdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus
dream somnus, -ī
dust pulvis, pulveris (m.)
eastern ēōus, -a, -um
empty inānis, ināne
encircle amplector, -ī, amplexus sum
enclose inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus
end fīnis, fīnis (m.)
endure sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātus
enemy inimīcus, -ī
engage in battle cōnserō, -ere, -seruī,
    -sertus

entrance vestibulum, -ī
entrust commendō (1)
escape effugiō, -ere, -fūgī
especially praecipuē
explain explicō (1)
expose exserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus
exult exsultō (1)
eye oculus, -ī
face vultus, -ūs
fail dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus
fall cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus
fall into dēlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum
fall upon incidō, -ere, -cidī
farmer agricola, -ae (m.)
fasten fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus
fear [noun] formīdō, formīdinis (f.)
fear [verb] vereor, -ērī, veritus sum;
    metuō, -ere, -metuī; timeō, -ēre, timuī
feed on vēscor, -ī [+ abl.]
feel sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus
female servant famula, -ae
female warrior bellātrīx, bellātrīcis (f.)
few paucus, -a, -um
fill impleō, -ēre, implēvī, implētus
finally dēnique
find inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus
fir abiēs, abietis (f.)
flee refugiō, -ere, -fūgī
follow sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
force cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus
forest silva, -ae
forget oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum
    [+ gen.]
fortify mūniō, -īre, mūnīvī, mūnītus
frighten terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus
frightening horridus, -a, -um
Fury Erīnys, Erīnyos (f.)
gain possession of potior, -īrī, potītus
    sum [+ abl.]
gate of Troy Scaea porta, Scaeae portae
gather glomerō (1)
gilded aurātus, -a, -um
gird up succingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus
girl puella, -ae
give dō, dare, dedī, datus
glistening coruscus, -a, -um
glory glōria, -ae
glow flagrō (1)

go   eō, īre, īvī/iī, itus
god   deus, -ī
grain   frūx, frūgis (f.); Cerēs, Cereris (f.)
grandson   nepōs, nepōtis (m.)
grass   grāmen, grāminis (nt.)
Greek   Grāius, -a, -um
groan   gemitus, -ūs
guard   custōs, custōdis (m.)
hair   coma, -ae
halt   resistō, -ere, -stitī
hand   manus, -ūs (f.)
handy   habilis, habile
hang from   dēpendeō, -ēre
happen   accidit, -ere, accidit *to happen*
happy   beātus, -a, -um
hard   dūrus, -a, -um
harp   cithara, -ae
hasten   properō (1); mātūrō (1)
hate   ōdī, ōdisse
haughtiness   superbia, -ae
hear   audiō, -īre, audīvī, audītus
heart   cor, cordis (nt.)
heavenly   caelestis, caeleste
help   auxilium, -ī
(to) here   hūc
hesitate   dubitō (1)
hiding place   latebra, -ae
high   altus, -a, -um
hill   collis, collis (m.)
his   eius [gen. sg. of **is**, **ea**, **id**]
his own   suus, -a, -um
hold   teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus
home   aedēs, aedium (f.)
honor   adoleō, -ēre, adoluī, adultus
hope [noun]   spēs, -eī
hope [verb]   spērō (1)
horn   cornū, -ūs
horror   horror, horrōris (m.)
huge   immānis, immāne
human   hūmānus, -a, -um
humbly   suppliciter
huntress   vēnātrīx, vēnātrīcis (f.)
hurry   fēstīnō (1)
if   sī
if not   nisī
image   effigiēs, -ēī; simulācrum, -ī
immediately   īlicet
impious   nefandus, -a, -um

in order to   ut [+ purpose clause]; ad [+ acc. of gerund/gerundive]; [genitive of gerund/gerundive] + causā; [genitive of gerund/gerundive] + gratiā
in the presence of   cōram [+ abl.]
in this way   sīc
indeed   namque
ineffective   inritus, -a, -um
inflict   īnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus
innocent   īnsōns, īnsontis
insolent   procāx, procācis
inventor   fabricātor, fabricātōris (m.)
Italy   Ītalia, -ae
Ithacan   Ithacus, -a, -um
jealousy   invidia, -ae
join together   coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus
joint   iūnctūra, -ae
joy   laetitia, -ae, gaudium, -ī
jump out   exsultō (1)
Juno's   Iūnōnius, -a, -um
Jupiter   Iuppiter, Iovis (m.)
just   iūstus, -a, -um
justice   aequum, -ī
keep off   prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus
king   rēx, rēgis (m.)
kingdom   imperium, -ī
know   nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus
lack   careō, -ēre, caruī, caritus [+ abl.]
lake   lacus, -ūs
law   lēx, lēgis (f.)
lead back   redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus
leader   prīnceps, prīncipis (m.)
leave   linquō, -ere, līquī, lictus
let in   immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus
lifeless   exsanguis, exsangue
linger   dēmoror (1)
Little Bear constellation   Triōnēs, Triōnum (m.)
long for   exoptō (1)
look around   circumspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus
loosen   laxō (1)
love   amō (1)
loyalty   pietās, pietātis (f.)
lurk   dēlitēscō, -ere, -lituī
lying down on one's back   resupīnus, -a, -um

mad dēmēns, dēmentis
magistrate magistrātus, -ūs
make (passive) fīō, fierī, factus sum
male servant famulus, -ī
many multus, -a, -um
(of) maple acernus, -a, -um
mindful servāns, servantis
mingle permisceō, -ēre, -miscuī, -mixtus
mixing bowl crātēr, crātēris (m.)
mock inlūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsus
month mēnsis, mēnsis (m.)
moon lūna, -ae
more plūs, plūris
mourn maereō, -ēre
move from ēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus
muddy līmōsus, -a, -um
napkin mantēle, mantēlis (nt.)
neighbor proximus, -a, -um
Neoptolemus Neoptolemus, -ī
Neptune Neptūnus, -ī
nevertheless tamen
new novus, -a, -um
no, none nūllus, -a, -um [gen. **-īus**,
    dat. **-ī**]
no one nēmō, nēminis (m/f)
noble procer, proceris (m.)
noise clangor, clangōris (m.)
not nōn
not want nōlō, nōlle, nōluī
nothing nihil, nīl
now nunc
oak rōbur, rōboris (nt.)
oar rēmus, -ī
obey pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritus [+ dat.]
observe signō (1)
occasionally interdum
often saepe
one hundred centum
oppose obstō, -stāre, -stitī, -status
opposing oppositus, -a, -um
ought dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus
our noster, nostra, nostrum
overthrow ēruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus
pain dolor, dolōris (m.)
paint pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictus
parent parēns, parentis (m/f)
parents-in-law socerī, -ōrum
Peneleus Pēneleus, -ī

phalanx phalānx, phalangis (f.)
pierce trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus
pious fandus, -a, -um
pity misereor, -ērī, miseritus sum [+ gen.]
plunder populō (1)
plunderer raptor, raptōris (m.)
pour lībō (1)
power potentia, -ae
pray ōrō (1)
prayer prex, precis (f.)
precipice praeceps, praecipitis (nt.)
prefer mālō, mālle, māluī
prisoner captus, -ī
promise prōmissum, -ī
provided that dum, dummodo, modo
pure intemerātus, -a, -um
pursue agitō (1)
queen rēgīna, -ae
quiver pharetra, -ae
race gēns, gentis (f.)
rainy pluvius, -a, -um
raise attollō, -ere
read legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus
reason ratiō, ratiōnis (f.)
redouble ingeminō (1)
refuse recūsō (1)
rejoice gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum
religious rēligiōsus, -a, -um
remain restō, -āre, -stitī
remember meminī, meminisse [+ gen.]
remove aboleō, -ēre, abolēvī, abolitus
renew renovō (1)
repent paenitet, -ēre, paenuit
repress comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus
respond respondeō, -ēre, respondī,
    respōnsus
restrain temperō (1); contineō, -ēre,
    -tinuī, -tentus
return remeō (1)
rise orior, -īrī, ortus sum
river flūmen, flūminis (nt.)
riverbank rīpa, -ae
roaring sonōrus, -a, -um
roll up subvolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus
Rome Rōma, -ae
root out exscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus
rope fūnis, fūnis (m.)
rout fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus

rumor   fāma, -ae
rush in   inruō, -ere, -ruī
safety   salūs, salūtis (f.)
sailor   nauta, -ae (m.)
salt sea   salum, -ī
sanctuary   adytum, -ī
save   servō (1)
say   dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus
scaly   squāmeus, -a, -um
scatter   diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus;
   disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus
sea   aequor, aequoris (nt.)
sedge   ulva, -ae
see   videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus
seize   capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus
sell   vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditus
serene   serēnus, -a, -um
shake   quassō (1)
shame   pudet, pudēre, puduit, puditum
shameful   turpis, turpe
shear   tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsus
sheep   pecus, pecudis (f.)
shepherd   pāstor, pāstōris (m.)
shrine   dēlūbrum, -ī
shut off   interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus
sight   speciēs, -ēī; vīsus, -ūs
silence   silentium, -ī
(be) silent   sileō, -ēre, siluī
sit down   resīdō, -ere, -sēdī
sky   caelum, -ī
slaughter   clādēs, clādis (f.)
sleep   sopor, sopōris (m.)
slimy   lūbricus, -a, -um
slow   tardus, -a, -um
smoke   fūmus, -ī
snake   anguis, anguis (m.)
so   tam, ita, adeō
soak   tābeō, -ēre
so great   tantus, -a, -um
soil   glaeba, -ae
soldier   mīles, mīlitis (m.)
solemn   sollemnis, sollemne
someone, something   aliquis, aliquid
son-in-law   gener, -ī (m.)
soothsayer   vātēs, vātis (m/f)
spare   parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus [+ dat.]
Sparta   Sparta, -ae
Spartan (woman)   Lacaena, -ae

speak   for (1)
speak to   adfor (1)
spoils   exuviae, -ārum
stag   cervus, -ī
stand   stō, stāre, stetī, status
stand agape   obstipēscō, -ere, -stipuī
stand firm   cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -status
statue of Pallas   Palladium, -ī
step [noun]   gradus, -ūs
step [verb]   nītor, -ī, nīsus sum
stigma   lābēs, lābis (f.)
stop   sistō, -ere, stetī, status
stories   annālēs, annālium (m.)
storm   tempestās, tempestātis (f.)
stream   amnis, amnis (m.)
strip   nūdō (1)
strike   percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus
strong   fortis, forte
strong in battle   armipotēns, armipotentis
subdue   subigō, -ere, subēgī, subāctus
suffer   patior, patī, passus sum
sufficient   satis
summer   aestās, aestātis (f.)
sun   sōl, sōlis (m.)
supply   cōpia, -ae
surpass   praevertor, -ī, -versus sum
surround   circumstō, -āre, -stetī
swan   cycnus, -ī
sweat   sūdor, sūdōris (m.)
sweet   dulcis, dulce
sword   gladius, -ī; ēnsis, ēnsis (m.)
taste   gustō (1)
teach   discō, -ere, didicī
tear up   vellō, -ere, vulsī, vulsus
tell   nārrō (1)
temple   templum, -ī
tent   tentōrium, -ī
terrified   pavidus, -a, -um
terrify   perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus
terror   pavor, pavōris (m.)
testify   testor (1)
thick   dēnsus, -a, -um; spissus, -a, -um
think   abritror (1); cōgitō (1); putō (1)
thorn   sentis, sentis (m.)
threaten   intentō (1)
throne   solium, -ī
through   per [+ acc.]
thus   sīc, ita

thyme thymum, -ī

touch tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus; attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus

tower over superēmineō, -ēre

town oppidum, -ī

traversable pervius, -a, -um

treason prōditiō, prōditiōnis (f.)

Trojan woman Īlias, Īliadis (f.)

Troy Teucria, -ae

trust fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum [+ dat.]

truth vērum, -ī

try temptō (1)

twist sinuō (1)

two-horse chariot bīgae, -ārum

unaccompanied incomitātus, -a, -um

unaccustomed dēsuētus, -a, -um

undulate undō (1)

unless nisī

unlucky īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis

unmarried innūptus, -a, -um

unmoved immōtus, -a, -um

unpleasant ingrātus, -a, -um

until dum, dōnec, quoad

unworthy indignus, -a, -um

urge hortor (1)

use ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum [+ abl.]

(in) vain nēquīquam

voluntarily ultrō

vulnerable violābilis, violābile

wait for opperior, -īrī, -peritus sum

wall pariēs, parietis (m.)

wander errō (1)

want volō, velle, voluī

war bellum, -ī

warn moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus

watch speculor (1)

watchman vigil, vigilis (m/f)

water aqua, -ae; lympha, -ae

wave unda, -ae

wealthy dīves, dīvitis

weary aeger, aegra, aegrum

what quid

wheel rota, -ae

when cum, quandō, ubi, ut

whether num, an, utrum

while dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū

who quis

wild animal fera, -ae

wind ventus, -ī

window fenestra, -ae

wisdom sapientia, -ae

with cum [+ abl.]

withdraw concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus

without sine [+ abl.]

where to quō

why quam ob rem, quid, cūr

wicked improbus, -a, -um

wild beast ferus, -ī

wintry hībernus, -a, -um

wolf lupus, -ī

wonderful mīrandus, -a, -um

wood lignum, -ī

word verbum, -ī

work labor, labōris (m.)

world orbis (m.) terrārum, orbis terrārum

wound vulnerō (1)

wrestle luctor (1)

wretched miser, -a, -um

year annus, -ī

zeal studium, -ī